

МВД России
Санкт-Петербургский университет

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN RUSSIA AND ABROAD

ПРАВОПРИМЕНЕНИЕ В РОССИИ И ЗА РУБЕЖОМ

Учебное пособие

*Под общей редакцией
кандидата педагогических наук, доцента Н.А. Беломытцевой*

Санкт-Петербург
2017

УДК 372.881.111.1
ББК 81.1Англ-923
П 68

П 68 Law enforcement in Russia and Abroad. Правоприменение в России и за рубежом: учебное пособие / под общ. ред. Н.А. Беломытцевой. СПб.: Изд-во СПб ун-та МВД России, 2017. — 472 с.

Авторский коллектив:

Баркова Альвина Ивановна (module 2, 7, 8);
Лукова Татьяна Григорьевна, *канд. пед. наук, доцент* (module 1, 9);
Парнюк Наталия Витальевна, *канд. псих. наук, доцент* (module 3, 4, 6);
Шарая Валентина Васильевна, *канд. пед. наук, профессор* (module 5)

Учебное пособие подготовлено в соответствии с программой учебной дисциплины «Иностранный язык» (английский). Цель пособия — формирование профессиональной иноязычной коммуникативной компетенции и применение ее при осуществлении профессиональной деятельности.

Состоит из 9 модулей: «Система уголовного правосудия», «Правоприменение в России и за рубежом», «Классификация преступлений», «Преступление и наказание», «Антитерроризм», «Предотвращение преступлений», «Расследование преступлений», «Злоупотребление наркотиками», «Преступления несовершеннолетних».

Каждый модуль содержит аудио / видеоматериалы, соответствующие профессиональной тематике; задания, направленные на развитие профессионально-коммуникативных компетенций; тесты, обеспечивающие контроль усвоенного материала.

Предназначено для обучающихся в образовательных организациях системы МВД России.

УДК 372.881.111.1
ББК 81.1Англ-923

Рецензенты:

Анохина Л.И., кандидат филологических наук, доцент
(Орловский юридический институт МВД России);
Кравчук Л.С., доцент
(Белгородский юридический институт МВД России)

© Санкт-Петербургский университет
МВД России, 2017

CONTENTS

Module I. CRIMINAL JUSTICE SYSTEM

Part A	5
Part B.....	23

Module II. LAW ENFORCEMENT

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN THE UNITED KINGDOM

Part A	36
Part B.....	56

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN THE USA

Part A	73
Part B.....	92

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN RUSSIA

Part A	110
Part B.....	132

Module III. CRIME CLASSIFICATION

Part A	150
Part B.....	170

Module IV. CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

Part A	187
Part B.....	211

Module V. ANTI-TERRORISM

TERRORIST CRIME

Part A	225
Part B.....	236

ANTI-TERRORISM

Part A	245
Part B.....	255

HOSTAGE TAKING AND LAW ENFORCEMENT

Part A	264
Part B.....	275

Module VI. CRIME PREVENTION

Part A	289
Part B.....	307

Module VII. CRIMINAL INVESTIGATION
Part A 325
Part B..... 346
INTERVIEW AND INTERROGATION
Part A 362
Part B..... 383

Module VIII. DRUG ABUSE AND LAW ENFORCEMENT
Part A 398
Part B..... 421

Module IX. JUVENILE DELINQUENCY
Part A 439
Part B..... 457

LITERATURE..... 470

Module I

CRIMINAL JUSTICE SYSTEM

Part A

Lead-in

- You are going to read the text dealing with the criminal justice system of the USA. Think and say. What is the criminal justice system?

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

The Criminal Justice System of The USA

Criminal justice is the system of practices and instrument of governments directed at upholding social control, deterring and mitigating crime, or sanctioning those who violate laws with criminal penalties and rehabilitation efforts. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even confined. It is the task of the agencies of justice to prevent or deter outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating, and sentencing lawbreakers. By arresting, prosecuting and punishing wrongdoers, the criminal justice system attempts to control crime. Only **the criminal justice system** maintains the power to control crime and punish outlawed behavior through the arm of the criminal law.



The contemporary criminal justice system in the United States is monumental in size. It consists of over fifty-five thousand public agencies. Today the system can be divided into three main components: **law enforcement agencies**, which are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects; **the court system**, where determination is made whether a criminal suspect is guilty as charged; and **the correctional system**, which is charged with both treating and **rehabilitating** offenders and with incarcerating them so that they may not repeat their crimes.

Police. **Police departments** are those public agencies created to maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency services, keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely, and create a sense of community safety.

Courts. **The criminal courthouse** is the scene of the trial process. Here the criminal responsibility of defendants accused of violating the law is determined. The court is expected to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes while ensuring that the innocent are freed without any consequences.

Corrections. In the broadest sense, **correctional agencies** include community supervision or probation, various types of incarceration (including jails, houses of correction, and state prisons), and parole programs for both juvenile and adult offenders.

The system is so big because it must process, treat, and care for millions of people each year. Although the crime rate has declined substantially, about 14 million people are still being arrested each year, including more than 2 million for serious felony offences. In addition, about 1.5 million juveniles are handled by the juvenile courts.

Criminal justice is both a system and a process. As a system, it ideally functions as a cooperative effort among primary agencies — police, courts, and corrections. The process, on the other hand, consists of the actual steps the offender takes from the initial investigation through trial, sentencing, and appeal.

The public relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system to provide solutions to the crime problem. These agencies are charged with protecting the public, maintaining order, enforcing the law, identifying criminals, bringing the guilty to justice, and treating criminal behavior.



Note:

The arm of law — сила закона

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The criminal justice system attempts to control:
 - a) society
 - b) crime
 - c) traffic
2. The criminal justice system maintains the power by means of the criminal law:
 - a) to control crime and punish outlawed behavior
 - b) to interfere into people's business
 - c) to control government's activity
3. Law enforcement agencies are charged with:
 - a) treating and rehabilitating offenders
 - b) determining whether a criminal suspect is guilty
 - c) investigating crimes and apprehending suspects
4. Public agencies responsible for determination of a criminal suspect's guilt are:
 - a) police
 - b) courts
 - c) corrections
5. The task of the correctional system is:
 - a) to prevent and deter outlawed behavior
 - b) to arrest and prosecute wrongdoers
 - c) to treat and rehabilitate offenders

6. The public relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system:
 - a) to provide solutions to the finance problem
 - b) to provide solutions to the health problem
 - c) to provide solutions to the crime problem
7. The criminal justice system is so big:
 - a) because the crime rate has declined substantially
 - b) because about 1.5 million juveniles are handled by the juvenile courts
 - c) because it must process, treat, and care for millions of people each year
8. Only the criminal justice system maintains the power:
 - a) to control crime and punish outlawed behavior through the arm of the criminal law
 - b) to solve financial problems of the public
 - c) to enable police around the world to work together to make the world a safer place

Study Skills

3. Learn the vocabulary.

accuse v	обвинять, выдвинуть обвинение
adjudicate v	судить, выносить решение
adult n	взрослый человек
attempt v	пытаться
behavior n	поведение
bring to justice v	привлечь к суду
charge n, v	обвинение; обвинять
charge with v	нести ответственность
community n	местное сообщество, население
confine v	заключать в тюрьму
convict v	осудить, признать виновным
deter v	удерживать, не допускать
defendant n	ответчик, обвиняемый, подсудимый
felony n	тяжкое уголовное преступление
guilty a	виновный
incarcerate v	заклучить в тюрьму
innocent a	невиновный
jail n	тюрьма, тюремное заключение (до года)
justice n	правосудие; справедливость
juvenile a	несовершеннолетний, малолетний
mitigate v	уменьшать
offence n	преступление, правонарушение
outlaw v	объявлять вне закона
parole n	досрочно условное освобождение из тюрьмы
prison n	тюрьма, заключение более года

probation <i>n</i>	пробация (вид условного освобождения)
prosecute <i>v</i>	преследовать в судебном порядке, обвинять
provide <i>v</i>	обеспечивать
punish <i>v</i>	наказывать, карать
rate <i>n</i>	уровень, величина, процент
rely on <i>v</i>	полагаться (на)
sentence <i>n v</i>	приговор, выносить приговор
treat <i>v</i>	воздействовать (на преступника), перевоспитывать

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	adjudicate	a	правосудие; справедливость
2	probation	b	тюрьма, тюремное заключение (до года)
3	treat	c	нести ответственность
4	justice	d	преследовать в судебном порядке, обвинять
5	guilty	e	обвинять, выдвинуть обвинение
6	charge	f	судить, выносить решение
7	charge with	g	заклЮчить в тюрьму
8	prison	h	виновный
9	jail	i	воздействовать (на преступника), перевоспитывать
10	bring to justice	j	обеспечивать
11	accuse	k	обвинение; обвинять
12	incarcerate	l	привлечь к суду
13	punish	m	пробация (вид условного освобождения)
14	provide	n	наказывать, карать
15	prosecute	o	тюрьма, заключение более года

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	поддерживать социальный контроль	a	to mitigate crime
2	нарушать законы	b	a cooperative effort
3	предупреждать или сдерживать	c	the arm of the criminal law
4	совместные усилия	d	to convict and sentence
5	уменьшать кол-во преступлений	e	to provide emergency services
6	уровень преступности	f	serious felony offences
7	сила уголовного закона	g	a sense of community safety
8	органы правоприменения	h	the crime rate
9	обеспечивать неотложную помощь	i	various types of incarceration
10	чувство безопасности в обществе	j	to uphold social control
11	уголовная ответственность	k	the initial investigation

	подсудимых		
12	осуждать и выносить приговор	l	to prevent or deter
13	различные виды тюремного заключения	m	the criminal responsibility of defendants
14	первоначальный этап расследования	n	to violate laws
15	особо тяжкие преступления	o	law enforcement agencies

6. Match the antonyms.

1	adult	a	law-abiding
2	apprehend	b	unite
3	guilty	c	rise
4	outlawed	d	release
5	punish	e	narrow
6	divide	f	reward
7	broad	g	individual
8	decline	h	juvenile
9	safety	i	innocent
10	cooperative	j	danger

7. Translate the following words and word combinations.

a) The system of practices and instrument of governments; a cooperative effort among primary agencies; directed at upholding social control; criminal penalties and rehabilitation efforts; on the other hand; public agencies created to maintain order; the task of the agencies of justice; to prevent or deter outlawed behavior; the arm of the criminal law; they must be monitored or even confined; keep traffic on streets and highways freely; in the broadest sense; the actual steps the offender takes; to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes; be charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders; to create a sense of community safety; to rely on the agencies of the criminal justice system; the scene of the trial process; from the initial investigation through trial, sentencing, and appeal.

b) Сдерживание и уменьшение преступности; привлекать виновных к суду; воздействовать на уголовное поведение; уменьшиться значительно; общественный надзор и probation; освобождаться без каких-либо последствий; включая тюрьмы до года, исправительные заведения и тюрьмы на уровне штата на срок более года; исправительные органы; зал уголовного суда; фактические шаги, которые предпринимает правонарушитель; возбуждать процесс, воздействовать на преступников и интересоваться многими миллионами людей; решать проблему преступности; уголовные наказания и усилия по реабилитации; расследование преступлений и задержание преступников.

8. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Современная система уголовного правосудия в США — огромных размеров.
2. Сегодня эту систему можно подразделить на три основных компонента.
3. Зал уголовного суда — это место, где происходит судебный процесс.
4. Система такая большая, потому что возбуждает дела, перевоспитывает и осуществляет надзор за миллионами людей каждый год.
5. Кроме того, около полутора миллионов дел о подростках разбираются в судах по делам несовершеннолетних.
6. Система уголовного правосудия является как системой, так и процессом.
7. Общество полагается на органы системы уголовного правосудия, чтобы решить проблему преступности.
8. Арестовывая, преследуя в судебном порядке и наказывая правонарушителей, система уголовного правосудия пытается контролировать преступность.
9. Здесь определяется уголовная ответственность подсудимого, обвиняемого в нарушении закона.
10. Полицейские департаменты — это такие общественные организации, которые созданы для поддержания порядка, приведения в исполнение закона, обеспечения беспрепятственного движения транспорта по улицам и шоссе, и создания чувства безопасности в обществе.

9. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 the system which is charged with incarcerating, treating and rehabilitating offenders
- 2 the system which determines the guilt or innocence of charged
- 3 the system which controls crime and punish outlawed behavior
- 4 the agencies which are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects
- 5 the agencies which include community supervision, various types of incarceration and parole programs
- 6 the agencies which maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency services etc.
- 7 the place where the criminal responsibility of defendants is determined
- 8 making able to live in ordinary life

10. Use the words / phrases in the box to make sentences with the following.

police, courts, and corrections; through the arm of the criminal law; with criminal penalties and rehabilitation efforts; guilty as charged; be monitored or even confined; without any consequences; they may not repeat their crimes; apprehending suspects; to control crime; the scene of the trial process

1. Some people are so destructive that they must
2. Criminal justice is the system of practices and instrument of governments directed at upholding social control, deterring and mitigating crime, or sanctioning those who violate laws
3. Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and
4. The court system determines whether a criminal suspect is
5. Only the criminal justice system maintains power to control crime and punish outlawed behavior
6. The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them so
7. By arresting, prosecuting and punishing wrongdoers, the criminal justice system attempts
8. As a system, it ideally functions as a cooperative effort among primary agencies —
9. The criminal courthouse is
10. The court is expected to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes while ensuring that the innocent are freed

11. Choose the correct word / words.

1. The criminal justice system sanctions those who **violate / abide** laws with **rewards / criminal penalties** and rehabilitation efforts.
2. The court is expected to convict and sentence those found **guilty / innocent** of crimes.
3. The **ancient / contemporary** criminal justice system in the United States is **monumental / small** in size.
4. As a system, it ideally functions as a **cooperative / individual** effort among primary agencies.
5. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even **freed without any consequences / confined**.
6. In the **broadest / narrowest** sense, correctional agencies **include / exclude** community **lack of supervision / supervision** or probation, various types of incarceration, and parole programs.
7. It is the task of the agencies of justice **to encourage and stimulate / to prevent or deter** outlawed behavior.
8. Although the crime rate has **declined / increased** substantially, about 14 million people are **still being released / still being arrested** each year.
9. The process, **on the one hand / on the other hand**, consists of the actual steps the offender takes from the **initial / final** investigation through trial, sentencing, and appeal.
10. The court is expected to convict and sentence those found **guilty / innocent** of crimes while ensuring that **the guilty / innocent** are **confined / freed** without any consequences.

12. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

place; modern; illegal; huge; offenders; criminals; supervised; supervision; lessening; authorizing; confining; arresting; punishments; parts; imprisoned; organized; are responsible for; to support; principle; common; to operate

1. It is the task of the agencies of justice to prevent or deter outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating, and sentencing lawbreakers.
2. The criminal courthouse is the scene of the trial process.
3. The contemporary criminal justice system in the United States is monumental in size.
4. Criminal justice is the system of practices and instrument of governments directed at upholding social control, deterring and mitigating crime, or sanctioning those who violating laws with criminal penalties and rehabilitation efforts.
5. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even confined.
6. Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects.
7. Police departments are those public agencies created to maintain order.
8. Today the system can be divided into three main components.
9. As a system, it ideally functions as a cooperative effort among primary agencies — police, courts, and corrections.
10. The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them.

13. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
	directed	
investigation		
		correct
punishment		
	cooperative	
		treat
		enforce
apprehension		
control		
	supervised	
	maintaining	
		prevent

14. Read the text. Use the words at the end of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

If after a criminal trial the (0) **accused** has been found guilty as charged, he will be (1) ... to court for sentencing. Possible dispositions may (2) ... a fine, probation, a period of (3) ... in a penal Institution, or some combination of these. In case of (4) ... first-degree murder, (5) ... than thirty-five

states and the federal government now (6) ... the death penalty. Sentencing is a key decision (7) ... in the (8) ... justice system because , in many jurisdictions, judicial discretion can result in people (9) ... vast different sentences even though they have (10) ... the same crime. Some may (11) ...

in community supervision whereas others committing the same crime can (12) ... long prison sentences

(0) **accuse**
(1) **return**
(2) **to include**
(3) **incarcerate**

(4) **involve**
(5) **many**
(6) **to allow**
(7) **to point**
(8) **crime**

(9) **receive**
(10) **commit**
(11) **result**

(12) **to receive**

15. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

are charged with; responsibility; wrongdoers; deterring and mitigating; the public; adult; destructive; traffic; be divided; Criminal justice

1. Criminal justice is the system of practices and instrument of governments directed at upholding social control, ... crime.

2. By arresting, prosecuting and punishing ..., the criminal justice system attempts to control crime.

3. ... relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system to provide solutions to the crime problem.

4. Some people are so ... that they must be monitored or even confined.

5. Today the system can ... into three main components: law enforcement agencies, the court system, and the correctional system.

6. The criminal ... of defendants accused of violating the law is determined in the court.

7. Police departments maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency services, keep ... on streets and highways freely, and create a sense of community safety.

8. Correctional agencies include community supervision or probation, various types of incarceration, and parole programs for both juvenile and ... offenders.

9. ... is both a system and a process.

10. These agencies ... protecting the public, maintaining order, enforcing the law, identifying criminals, bringing the guilty to justice, and treating criminal behavior.

16. Choose the correct form of the word.

1. Law enforcement system is charged with **investigated** / **investigating** crimes and **apprehending** / **apprehend** suspects.

2. The correctional system is charged with both **treating** / **treated** and **rehabilitating** / **rehabilitated** offenders and with **incarcerated** / **incarcerating** them.

3. The criminal responsibility of defendants accused of **violating** / **being violated** the law is determined.

4. The court system **is determined** / **determines** whether a criminal suspect is guilty as charged.

5. The system is so big because it must **process** / **to process**, **to treat** / **treat**, and **care** / **to care** for millions of people each year.

6. It is the task of the agencies of justice **to prevent** / **preventing** or **detering** / **deter** outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating, and sanctioning lawbreakers.

7. By **arresting** / **being arrested**, **being prosecuted** / **prosecuting** and **punishing** / **being punished** wrongdoers, the criminal justice system attempts to control crime.

8. The system ideally **functions** / **is functioned** as a cooperative effort among primary agencies — police, courts, and corrections.

9. The criminal justice system maintains the power **to control** / **be controlled** crime and **be punished** / **punish** outlawed behavior through the arm of the criminal law.

10. Police departments are those public agencies **created** / **creating** to maintain order.

17. Translate the sentences paying attention to conjunction “both ... and”.

1. Criminal justice is both a system and a process.

2. The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders.

3. The task of the agencies of justice is both prevention and deterrence of outlawed behavior.

4. Law enforcement agencies are charged with both investigating crimes and apprehending suspects.

5. The criminal justice system carries out both crime control and punishment outlawed behavior by means of the criminal law.

6. Police departments are responsible for both public order and keeping traffic on streets and highways moving freely.

7. Parole programs intend for both juvenile and adult offenders.

18. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Criminal** / justice / governments / and / of / instrument; / of / practices / is / the system.
2. **Today** / three / be / the / can / divided / main / into / components / the.
3. **The criminal** / the / the / courthouse / process / scene / of / trial / is.
4. **Has** / declined / the / rate / substantially / crime?
5. **About** / people / are / arrested / year / 14 / each / million.
6. **About** / by / the / courts / are / 1.5 / handled / juvenile / million / juveniles.
7. **Not** / people / all / even / be / confined / must / monitored / or.
8. **Police** / agencies / departments / the / are / to / order / maintain / created / public.
9. **The correctional** / is / with / and / rehabilitating / treating / offenders / charge / system.
10. **Criminal** / a / a / and / is / both / system / process / justice.

19. Fill in: take; maintain; create; enforce; be charged with; consist of; rely on; attempt; be freed; violate; keep; prevent or deter; be; convict and sentence; punish; must process, treat, and care for; include; be freed; provide; be handled. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ... over fifty-five thousand public agencies	11 ... the actual steps
2 ... emergency services	12 ... a sense of community safety
3 ... by the juvenile courts	13 ... investigating crimes and apprehending suspects
4 ... the criminal law	14 ... of the trial process
5 ... traffic on streets and highways freely	15 ... community supervision or probation
6 ... outlawed behavior	16 ... those found guilty of crimes
7 ... to control crime	17 ... without any consequences
8 ... outlawed behavior	18 ... the power to control crime
9 ... three main components	19 ... millions of people each year
10 ... laws	20 ... the agencies of the criminal justice system

20. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Some people are so destructive that they must be
2. Only the criminal justice system maintains the power to control crime and punish outlawed behavior
3. Criminal justice is directed at upholding social control, deterring and mitigating crime, or sanctioning those
4. Today the system can be divided into three main components:
5. Law enforcement agencies are charged with

6. The court system determines whether a criminal suspect
7. The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them so that
8. Police departments are created to maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency services, keep traffic on streets and highways freely, and
9. Criminal justice is both
10. The public relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

21. Watch a video and be ready to do the task. Before watching the video, try to remember the following word combinations:

senior deputy sheriff	старший помощник шерифа
endeavor	стараться, стремиться
witness	быть свидетелем чего-либо
abuse	жестoko обращаться
bailiff	бейлиф, судебный пристав, помощник шерифа
promote	повышать (в должности, звании)
be responsible to	быть ответственным перед
be responsible for	быть ответственным за
courtroom order	порядок в зале суда
courtroom security	безопасность в зале суда
maintain rules	поддерживать правила
custody	лишение свободы
take into a custody	арестовать
lower court	суд низшей инстанции
jury trial	суд присяжных
judge	судья
bench office	комната судьи
make decision	выносить приговор
be observant	быть внимательным, старательным, исполнительным
be patient	быть терпеливым
communicational skills	умение общаться с людьми
solve problems	разрешать проблемы
feel comfortable and safe	чувствовать себя спокойно и безопасно
disturb	тревожить, беспокоить
painful incident	тягостный, неприятный случай
sufficient	достаточный, обоснованный
attract	привлекать

22. Study the questions to be answered in the video.

1. What is your name and current position?
2. What was your start in Criminal Justice?
3. What attracted you to your profession?
4. What is your background and / or degree that qualifies you for your current position? What were the job requirements?
5. Describe your standard job responsibilities.
6. What skills are most important for your job?
7. What is the hardest part of your job?
8. What is the most fulfilling about the work you do?
9. Tell a story about a job-related situation or an event that stands out in your mind or has had a great impact on your professional development.
10. Tell a story about your profession that you feel is uniquely indicative of the types of situations you encounter on your job.
11. What advice would you give to job-seekers looking for employment in your area of expertise?



Notes:

current position — нынешнее служебное положение

background — происхождение, биографические данные

job requirements — профессиональные требования

fulfilling — удовлетворяющий

job-related situations — ситуации, связанные с работой

stand out in one's mind — возникать в памяти

impact — влияние

professional development — профессиональное развитие

uniquely indicative — особенно показательный

encounter — сталкиваться

job-seeker — человек, ищущий работу

give advice — давать совет

area of expertise — область компетенции, квалификации

23. Read the statements (1–11) and the choices (a, b, c) attentively. Make sure that you understand them.

1. Emmy Shard is:
 - a) a deputy sheriff of San Francisco Sheriff Department
 - b) a senior deputy sheriff of San Francisco Sheriff Department
 - c) a senior deputy sheriff of New York Sheriff Department
2. Emmy Shard started in Criminal Justice System as:
 - a) a secretary of San Francisco Narcotics Bureau
 - b) a secretary of Federal Bureau of Investigation
 - c) a secretary of San Francisco Investigative Bureau

3. In her endeavor to require the position Emmy Shard:
 - a) took Sheriff Department test
 - b) did not take any tests
 - c) took special exam
4. Emmy Shard became a part of the system because she could:
 - a) help to stop some theft
 - b) help to stop some crime
 - c) help to stop some abuse
5. To enter the Sheriff Department you need:
 - a) a Police Academy diploma
 - b) a diploma of FBI Academy
 - c) a High School diploma
6. As a bailiff you are responsible for:
 - a) court room security
 - b) court room cleaning
 - c) court room disorder
7. The Family Law Court is very unique because:
 - a) they have jury trials
 - b) they don't have jury trials
 - c) they don't have any trials
8. As a sheriff you need to be able to be:
 - a) very observant and patient
 - b) very clever and well-dressed
 - c) very strong and healthy
9. The hardest part of Emmy Shard's job is:
 - a) the frustration of not being able to solve all her problems
 - b) the frustration of not being able to prevent crime
 - c) the frustration of not being able to result everybody's problems as she sees them
10. She really likes the fact that she helps her judge:
 - a) to be patient and observant
 - b) to be comfortable and feel safe
 - c) to be attentive and careful
11. Emmy Shard advised job-seekers:
 - a) to get as much education as they could
 - b) to get a High School diploma
 - c) to take a special course of education at a Police Academy

24. Watch the video and do exercise 23.

25. Watch the video for the second time to make sure that your answers are correct.

25. Match the questions on the text to their answers.

1 What is the criminal justice system directed at as the instrument of government?	a The US criminal justice system consists of fifty-five thousand public agencies
2 What is the task of the agencies of justice?	b Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects
3 What power does the criminal justice system maintain?	c The criminal courthouse is the scene of the trial process
4 How can you prove that the contemporary criminal justice system of the USA is monumental in size?	d The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders
5 How can the criminal justice system be divided today?	e The public relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system to provide solutions to the crime problem
6 What are the responsibilities of law enforcement agencies?	f As a system it ideally functions as cooperative effort of police, courts and corrections. As a process, criminal justice consists of actual steps the offender takes from initial investigation through trial, sentencing, and appeal
7 Where is the determination made whether a criminal suspect is guilty as charged?	g The criminal justice system maintains the power to control crime and punish outlawed behavior through the arm of the criminal law
8 What component of the criminal justice system is charged with treating and rehabilitating offenders?	h The court is expected to convict and sentence those found guilty of crime while ensuring that the innocent are free without any consequence
9 Why were police departments created?	i Correctional agencies include community supervision or probation, various types of incarceration and parole programs for both juvenile and adult offenders
10 What is the scene of the trial process?	j These agencies are charged with protecting the public, maintaining order, enforcing the law, identifying criminals, bringing the guilty to justice, and treating criminal behavior
11 What is the court expected to do?	k The criminal justice system directed at upholding social control, deterring and

		mitigating crime, or sanctioning those who violating laws
12	What do correctional agencies include?	l It is in the court system where the determination is made whether a criminal suspect is guilty as charged
13	Is criminal justice only a system?	m Police departments were created to maintain public order, enforce criminal law, provide emergency services, keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely, and create the sense of community Safety
14	How can you prove that criminal justice is not only a system but also a process?	n The agencies of justice prevent and deter outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating and sanctioning lawbreakers
15	Why does the public rely on the agencies of the criminal justice system?	o Criminal justice is both a system and a process
16	What are responsibilities of the agencies of the criminal justice system?	p Today the system can be divided into three main components: law enforcement agencies, the court system and the correctional system

27. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 26.

Cadet A: You are a correspondent interviewing a police officer. Ask cadet B about the main components of the criminal justice system and their purposes.

Cadet B: You are a juvenile officer. Answer the questions of cadet A, using the information from the text.

28. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Criminal justice as the system of practices and instruments of governments
- Three main components of the criminal justice system
- The responsibilities of police
- The responsibilities of courts
- The responsibilities of corrections
- Criminal justice as a system and a pocess

29. Speak on the purposes, main components and their responsibilities of the criminal justice system.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. By arresting, prosecuting and punishing ..., the criminal justice system attempts to control crime.
 - a) juveniles
 - b) citizens
 - c) wrongdoers
2. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even
 - a) confined
 - b) arrested
 - c) interrogated
3. Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and ... suspects.
 - a) incarcerating
 - b) sentencing
 - c) apprehending
4. The correctional system is charged with both treating and ... offenders and with incarcerating them.
 - a) interrogating
 - b) rehabilitating
 - c) apprehending
5. Offenders are incarcerated so that they may not repeat their
 - a) fighting
 - b) crimes
 - c) escape
6. The criminal ... of defendants accused of violating the law is determined in the court.
 - a) responsibility
 - b) actions
 - c) behavior

2. **Fill in:** order; process; moving freely; components; law; laws; behavior; lawbreakers; services; safety.

1	three main ...
2	the trial ...
3	to punish outlawed ...
4	to apprehend, adjudicate, and sentence ...
5	to maintain public ...
6	to enforce criminal ...
7	to provide emergency ...
8	to keep traffic on streets and highways ...
9	to create the sense of community ...
10	to sanction those who violate ...

3. Choose the correct word / word).

1. By arresting, prosecuting and punishing wrongdoers, the criminal justice system attempts **to be controlled / to control** crime.
2. Here the criminal responsibility of defendants **accused / accusing** of violating the law **determines / is determined**.
3. The court **is expected / expects** to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes.
4. The system is so big because it **must / may** process, treat, and care for millions of people each year.
5. Although the crime rate **declined / has declined** substantially, about 14 million people **are still being arrested / arrested** each year.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. The criminal ... is the scene of the trial process.
2. Police departments are those public agencies ... to maintain order.
3. Law enforcement agencies ... investigating crimes and apprehending suspects.
4. Today the system can be divided into ... components.
5. ... programs intend for both juvenile and adult offenders.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. What is criminal justice system directed at?
 - a) maintaining order, enforcing the criminal law, providing emergency services
 - b) upholding social control, deterring and mitigating crime, or sanctioning those who violating laws
 - c) keeping traffic on streets and highways moving freely, and creating a sense of community safety
2. What does criminal justice system attempt to do by arresting, prosecuting and punishing wrongdoers?
 - a) to control crime
 - b) to keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely
 - c) to determine the criminal responsibility of defendants
3. Where is the criminal responsibility of defendants accused of violating the law determined?
 - a) houses of correction
 - b) the criminal courthouse
 - c) state prisons
4. Why does the public rely on the agencies of the criminal justice system?
 - a) to provide solutions to the crime problem
 - b) to treat and rehabilitate offenders
 - c) to be monitored or even confined
5. What are law enforcement agencies charged with?
 - a) convicting and sentencing those found guilty of crimes
 - b) treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them
 - c) investigating crimes and apprehending suspects

Lead-in

- You are going to read the text dealing with the criminal justice system. What is the criminal justice system? What are the main components of the criminal justice system?

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

The US Criminal Justice System

The criminal justice system is society's instrument of social control: some behaviors are considered so dangerous that they must either be strictly controlled or outlawed outright; some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even confined. It is the task of the agencies of justice to prevent or deter outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating, and sanctioning lawbreakers. The criminal justice system maintains the power to control crime and punish outlawed behavior by means of the criminal law.



The purpose of modern criminal justice system can be separated into 3 general goals:

- 1) to control crime;
- 2) to prevent crime;
- 3) to provide and maintain justice.

Today the system can be divided into three main components: **law enforcement agencies**, which are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects; **the court system**, where the determination is made whether a criminal suspect is guilty as charged; and **the correctional system**, which is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them so that they may not repeat their crimes.

Police. Police departments are those public agencies created to maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency services, keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely, and create the sense of community safety.

Courts. The criminal courthouse is the scene of the trial process. Here the criminal responsibility of defendants accused of violating the law is determined. Ideally, the court is expected to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes while ensuring that the innocent are freed without of any consequence. The court system is formally required to seek the truth, to obtain justice for the individual brought before its tribunals, and to maintain the integrity of the government's rule of law.

Corrections. In the broadest sense, correctional agencies include community supervision or probation, various types of incarceration (including jails, houses of correction, and state prisons), and parole programs for both juvenile and adult offenders.

Criminal justice is both a system and a process. As a system, it ideally functions as cooperative effort among the primary agencies – police, courts, and corrections. The process, on the other hand, consists of the actual steps the offender takes from the initial investigation through trial, sentencing, and appeal.

The public relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system to provide solutions to the crime problem. These agencies are charged with protecting the public, maintaining order, enforcing the law, identifying wrongdoers, bringing the guilty to justice, and treating criminal behavior. The public depends on this vast system, employing more than two million people, to protect them from evil-doers and to bring justice in their lives.

Note:

rule of law — норма права

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Whose task is to prevent or deter outlawed behavior?

- a) It is the task of community
- b) It is the task of the agencies of justice
- c) It is the task of every law-abiding citizen

2. Why does the criminal justice system maintain the power by means of the criminal law?

- a) To control crime and punish outlawed behavior
- b) To interfere into people's business
- c) To control government's activity

3. Law enforcement agencies are charged with:

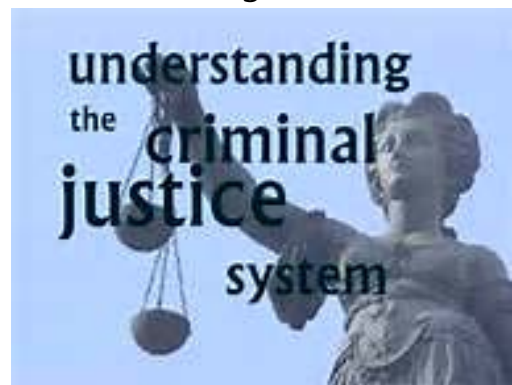
- a) Treating and rehabilitating offenders
- b) Determining whether a criminal suspect is guilt
- c) Investigating crimes and apprehending suspects

4. What public agencies are responsible for determination of a criminal suspect's guilt?

- a) Police
- b) Courts
- c) Corrections

5. Why does the public rely on the agencies of the criminal justice system?

- a) To provide solutions to the finance problem
- b) To provide solutions to the health problem
- c) To provide solutions to the crime problem



Study Skills

3. Learn the vocabulary.

accuse v	обвинять, выдвинуть обвинение
adjudicate v	судить, выносить решение
adult n	взрослый человек
apprehend v	арестовать, задержать
behavior n	поведение
bring before a court (tribunal) v	возбуждать уголовное дело
charge n v	обвинение; обвинять
charge with v	поручать, нести ответственность
community n	местное сообщество, население
confine v	заключать в тюрьму
convict v	осудить, признать виновным
deter v	удерживать, не допускать
defendant n	ответчик, обвиняемый, подсудимый
evil-doer n	преступник
guilty a	виновный
incarcerate v	заключить в тюрьму
innocent a	невиновный
jail n	тюрьма, тюремное заключение (до года)
justice n	правосудие, справедливость
juvenile a	несовершеннолетний, малолетний
offence n	преступление, правонарушение
outlaw v	объявлять вне закона
parole n	досрочно условное освобождение из тюрьмы
prison n	тюрьма, заключение более года
probation n	пробация (вид условного осуждения)
provide v	обеспечивать
punish v	наказывать, карать
rely (on) v	полагаться (на)
sentence n v	приговор; выносить приговор
society n	общество
treat v	воздействовать, перевоспитывать
trial n	судебный процесс, суд
violate v	нарушать
wrongdoer n	преступник, правонарушитель

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

- 1 adjudicate
- 2 accuse
- 3 trial

- a заключать в тюрьму
- b приговор
- c ответчик, обвиняемый

4	charge with	d	пробация
5	confine	e	поручать, отвечать за
6	violate	f	судить, выносить решение
7	sentence	g	невиновный
8	convict	h	наказывать, карать
9	defendant	i	объявлять вне закона
10	guilty	j	обвинять
11	justice	k	досрочно условное освобождение из тюрьмы
12	innocent	l	правосудие
13	parole	m	виновный
14	outlaw	n	осудить
15	probation	o	судебный процесс, суд
16	punish	p	нарушать

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	современная система уголовного правосудия	a	society's instrument of social control
2	задача органов правосудия	b	the scene of the trial process
3	применение санкций против тех, кто нарушает законы	c	to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes
4	претворять в жизнь уголовное право	d	without of any consequence
5	общественный надзор или пробация	e	both the system and process
6	место проведения судебного процесса	f	to sanction lawbreakers
7	обеспечивать беспрепятственное движение транспорта на улицах и шоссе	g	to prevent or deter outlawed behavior
8	осуждать и выносить приговор тем, кого признали виновным в совершении преступления	h	the task of the agencies of justice
9	в самом широком смысле	i	to seek the truth
10	и система и процесс	j	in the broadest sense
11	без каких-либо последствий	k	cooperative effort among the primary agencies
12	совместные усилия основных органов	l	modern criminal justice system
13	инструмент общества социального контроля	m	to enforce the criminal law
14	предупреждать и сдерживать поведение, объявленное вне закона	n	to keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely
15	добиваться истины	o	community supervision or probation

6. Translate the following words and word combinations.

a) The criminal justice system; public agencies; to ensure that the innocent are freed; the criminal courthouse; to be charged with investigating crimes; to be strictly controlled; by means of the criminal law; to apprehend, adjudicate, and sanction lawbreakers; to apprehend suspects; the individual brought before tribunal; the criminal responsibility of defendants; to consist of the actual steps; to treat and rehabilitate offenders; rule of law; to incarcerate offenders; to provide solutions to the crime problem.

b) Осуждать и выносить приговор; задача органов правосудия; полиция, суды и исправительные учреждения; различные виды тюремного заключения; осуждать и приговаривать; программы по условно досрочному освобождению из тюрьмы; уголовная ответственность подсудимого; власть, которая контролирует преступность; совместные усилия; огромная система; защищать людей от преступников; привносить правосудие в жизнь общества; с другой стороны.

7. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Цель современной системы уголовного правосудия может быть подразделена на три части.

2. Полицейские департаменты — это такие общественные органы, которые созданы для поддержания порядка.

3. Зал уголовного суда — это место проведения судебного разбирательства.

4. В самом широком смысле, коррекционные органы включают общественный надзор или пробацию.

5. Система уголовного правосудия поддерживает власть по контролю и наказанию поведения, объявленного вне закона, при помощи уголовного права.

6. Общество полагается на органы системы уголовного правосудия, чтобы решить проблему преступности.

7. Сегодня эту систему можно подразделить на три основных компонента.

8. Система уголовного правосудия является как системой, так и процессом.

9. Здесь определяется уголовная ответственность подсудимого, обвиняемого в нарушении закона.

10. Арестовывая, преследуя в судебном порядке и наказывая правонарушителей, система уголовного правосудия пытается контролировать преступность.

8. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 the system which is charged with incarcerating, treating and rehabilitating offenders
- 2 the system which determines the guilt or innocence of charged
- 3 the system which controls crime and punish outlawed behavior
- 4 the agencies which are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects
- 5 the agencies which include community supervision, various types of incarceration and parole programs

- 6 the agencies which maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency services etc.
- 7 the place where the criminal responsibility of defendants is determined
- 8 making able to live in ordinary life

9. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following.

police, courts, and corrections; guilty as charged; without any consequences; they may not repeat their crimes; apprehending suspects; the scene of the trial process; be monitored or even confined

1. Some people are so destructive that they must
2. Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and
3. The court system determines whether a criminal suspect is
4. The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them so
5. As a system, it ideally functions as a cooperative effort among primary agencies —
6. The criminal courthouse is
7. The court is expected to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes while ensuring that the innocent are freed

10. Choose the correct words.

1. The court is expected to convict and sentence those found **guilty / innocent** of crimes.
2. As a system, it ideally functions as a **cooperative / individual** effort among primary agencies.
3. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even **freed without any consequences / confined**.
4. In the **broadest / narrowest** sense, correctional agencies **include / exclude** community supervision or probation, various types of incarceration, and parole programs.
5. It is the task of the agencies of justice **to encourage or stimulate / to prevent or deter** outlawed behavior.
6. The process, **on the one hand / on the other hand**, consists of the actual steps the offender takes from the **initial / final** investigation through trial, sentencing, and appeal.
7. The court system is **formally / informally** required to seek the truth.

11. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

place; illegal; offenders; criminals; to supervise; confining; arresting; parts; imprisoned; organized; are responsible for; to operate; community; supervised; organs

1. It is the task of the agencies of justice to prevent or deter outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating, and sentencing lawbreakers.
2. The criminal courthouse is the scene of the trial process.
3. The criminal justice system maintains the power to control crime and punish outlawed behavior by means of the criminal law.
4. The criminal justice system is society's instrument of social control.
5. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even confined.
6. Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects.
7. Police departments are those public agencies created to maintain order.
8. Today the system can be divided into three main components.
9. As a system, it ideally functions as a cooperative effort among primary agencies — police, courts, and corrections.
10. The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them.

12. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
	directed	
investigation		
		correct
punishment		
	cooperative	
		treat
		enforce
apprehension		
control		
	supervised	
	maintaining	
		prevent

13. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

responsibility; wrongdoers; The public; adult; destructive; traffic; be divided; Criminal justice

1. By arresting, prosecuting and punishing ... , the criminal justice system attempts to control crime.
2. ... relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system to provide solutions to the crime problem.
3. Some people are so ... that they must be monitored or even confined.
4. Today the system can ... into three main components: law enforcement agencies, the court system, and the correctional system.
5. The criminal ... of defendants accused of violating the law is determined in the court.
6. Police departments maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency services, keep ... on streets and highways freely, and create a sense of community safety.
7. Correctional agencies include community supervision or probation, various types of incarceration, and parole programs for both juvenile and ... offenders.
8. ... is both a system and a process.

14. Read and translate sentences paying attention to Passive Voice.

1. Some behaviors are considered so dangerous that they must be strictly controlled or outlawed.
2. The purpose of modern criminal justice system can be separated into 3 general goals.
3. Police departments are created to maintain order, enforce the criminal law, provide emergency service, keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely, and create the sense of community safety.
4. The court system is formally required to seek the truth, to obtain justice for the individual brought before its tribunals.
5. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even confined.
6. The innocent are freed without any consequence.
7. The agencies of the criminal justice system are relied on by the public to provide solutions to the crime problem.

15. Translate the sentences paying attention to conjunction “both ... and”.

1. Criminal justice is both a system and a process.
2. The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders.
3. The task of the agencies of justice is both prevention and deterrence of outlawed behavior.
4. Law enforcement agencies are charged with both investigating crimes and apprehending suspects.
5. The criminal justice system carries out both crime control and punishment outlawed behavior by means of the criminal law.
6. Police departments are responsible for both public order and keeping traffic on streets and highways moving freely.
7. Parole programs intend for both juvenile and adult offenders.

16. Make up sentences from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Today** / three / be / the / can / divided / main / into / components: the.
2. **Criminal** / a / a / and / is / both / system / process / justice.
3. **Law** / are / with / agencies / enforcement / charged / crimes / investigating.
4. **Correctional** / or / include / agencies / supervision / probation / community.
5. **The criminal** / trial / courthouse / of / the / the / is / scene / process.
6. **The public** / system / justice / on / the / criminal / depends.

17. Find in the text equivalents to the following.

1. Инструмент социального контроля общества.
2. Контролировать преступность и наказывать поведение, нарушающее закон.
3. Обеспечивать и поддерживать правосудие.
4. Претворять в жизнь уголовное право.
5. Обеспечивать беспрепятственное движение транспорта на улицах и шоссе.
6. Осуждать и выносить приговор тем, кого признают виновным в совершении преступления.
7. Выяснять истину.
8. Поддерживать неприкосновенность правительственных правовых норм.
9. В самом широком смысле.
10. И система и процесс.
11. Фактические шаги, которые преступник предпринимает.

18. Find in the text the information dealing with:

- The task of the agencies of justice
- The three main components of the criminal justice system
- The responsibilities of law enforcement agencies
- The purpose of modern criminal justice system
- The reasons why the public relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system
- The responsibility of the court system
- The system which is charged with treating and rehabilitating offenders
- Police departments
- The system which includes community supervision and various types of incarceration
- The scene of the trial process

19. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1	What system does the society use as an instrument of social control?	a	3 general goals of the modern criminal justice system are crime control, crime prevention, provision and maintenance of justice
2	What is the task of the agencies of justice?	b	The correctional system is charged with both treating and rehabilitating offenders
3	What measures are used to lawbreakers?	c	The public employs more than two million people
4	What are the general goals of the modern criminal justice system?	d	Police departments were created to maintain order, enforce criminal law, provide emergency services, keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely, and create the sense of community safety
5	How can the criminal justice system be divided today?	e	The court system is formally required to seek the truth, to obtain justice for the individual brought before its tribunals, and to maintain the integrity of the government's rule of law
6	What are the responsibilities of law enforcement agencies?	f	The task of the agencies of justice is to prevent or deter outlawed behavior
7	Where is the determination made whether a criminal suspect is guilty as charged?	g	Today the system can be divided into three main components: law enforcement agencies, the court system and the correctional system
8	What component of the criminal justice system is charged with treating and rehabilitating offenders?	h	Correctional agencies include community supervision or probation, various types of incarceration and parole programs for both juvenile and adult offenders
9	Why were police departments created?	i	As a process, criminal justice consists of the actual steps the offender takes from the initial investigation through trial, sentencing, and appeal
10	What is the scene of the trial process?	j	Criminal justice is both a system and a process
11	What is the court system formally required for?	k	Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and apprehending suspects
12	What do correctional agencies include?	l	The criminal justice system is society's instrument of social control

13 Is criminal justice only a system? 14 How can you prove that criminal justice is not only a system but also a process? 15 Why does the public rely on the agencies of the criminal justice system? 16 How many people are employed by the public to protect them from evil-does and to bring justice in their lives?	m The public relies on the agencies of the criminal justice system to provide solutions to the crime problem n The agencies of justice prevent and deter outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating and sanctioning lawbreakers o The criminal courthouse is the scene of the trial process p It is in the court system where the determination is made whether a criminal suspect is guilty as charged

20. Work in pairs. Ask your partner questions from exercise 14. If the answer is correct, approve the answer by saying: "Yes, you are right; it's true; quite so; etc." If the answer is wrong, say: "I'm afraid, you are wrong; that's not quite right; you are mistaken" and say the right answer.

21. Speak on the US Criminal Justice System.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The agencies of justice prevent or deter outlawed behavior by apprehending, adjudicating, and sanctioning
 - a) juveniles
 - b) citizens
 - c) wrongdoers
2. Some people are so destructive that they must be monitored or even
 - a) confined
 - b) arrested
 - c) interrogated
3. Law enforcement agencies are charged with investigating crimes and ... suspects.
 - a) incarcerating
 - b) sentencing
 - c) apprehending
4. The correctional system is charged with both treating and ... offenders and with incarcerating them.
 - a) interrogating
 - b) rehabilitating
 - c) apprehending
5. Offenders are incarcerated so that they may not repeat their
 - a) fighting

- b) crimes
 - c) escape
6. The criminal ... of defendants accused of violating the law is determined in the court.
- a) responsibility
 - b) actions
 - c) behavior

2. Fill in: order; process; moving freely; components; law; laws; behavior; lawbreakers; services; safety.

- 1 three main ...
- 2 the trial ...
- 3 to punish outlawed ...
- 4 to apprehend, adjudicate, and sentence ...
- 5 to maintain public ...
- 6 to enforce criminal ...
- 7 to provide emergency ...
- 8 to keep traffic on streets and highways ...
- 9 to create the sense of community ...
- 10 to sanction those who violating ...

3. Choose the correct word (words).

1. The criminal justice system ***maintains / is maintained*** the power to control crime and punish outlawed behavior by means of the criminal law.
2. Here the criminal responsibility of defendants ***accused / accusing*** of violating the law ***determines / is determined***.
3. The court ***is expected / expects*** to convict and sentence those found guilty of crimes.
4. Police departments are those public agencies ***creating / created*** to maintain order, enforce the criminal law.
5. These agencies are charged with ***protecting / to protect*** the public, ***to maintain / maintaining*** order, enforcing the law.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. The criminal ... is the scene of the trial process.
2. Police departments are those public agencies ... to maintain order.
3. Law enforcement agencies ... investigating crimes and apprehending suspects.
4. Today the system can be divided into ... components.
5. ... programs intend for both juvenile and adult offenders.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. What is criminal justice system?
 - a) It is society's instrument of administrative control
 - b) It is society's instrument of social control
 - c) It is society's instrument of legislative control
2. What is the task of the agencies of justice?
 - a) to prevent or deter outlawed behavior
 - b) to keep traffic on streets and highways moving freely
 - c) to determine the criminal responsibility of defendants
3. Where is the criminal responsibility of defendants accused of violating the law determined?
 - a) houses of correction
 - b) the criminal courthouse
 - c) state prisons
4. Why does the public rely on the agencies of the criminal justice system?
 - a) to provide solutions to the crime problem
 - b) to treat and rehabilitate offenders
 - c) to be monitored or even confined
5. What are law enforcement agencies charged with?
 - a) convicting and sentencing those found guilty of crimes
 - b) treating and rehabilitating offenders and with incarcerating them
 - c) investigating crimes and apprehending suspects

Module II LAW ENFORCEMENT

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN THE UNITED KINGDOM

Part A

Lead-in

- You are going to read a text dealing with British police. Do you know when and by whom British police were founded and what the tasks of the Metropolitan Police Force were?



Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Law Enforcement in the United Kingdom

Law enforcement in the United Kingdom is organized separately in each of the legal systems of the United Kingdom: England and Wales, Northern Ireland and Scotland.

In England and Wales, the vast majority of attested constables enjoy full powers of arrest and search as granted by the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984. All police officers are “constables” in law, irrespective of rank. Although police officers have wide ranging powers, they are still civilians and subject to the same laws as members of the public. However, there are certain legal restrictions on police officers such as the illegality of taking industrial action and the ban on taking part in active politics.

Under Sir Robert Peel’s (*the founder of the Metropolitan Police Force*) direction the police had such powers:

- To prevent crime without using repressive force
- To maintain public order by non-violent means
- To reduce conflict between the police and the public.
- To show efficiency through the absence of crime and disorder rather than through visible police actions.

They have been still valid though their number has increased since then.



Notes:

irrespective — *безотносительно*

subject to — подчинятьсяtaking industrial action - принимать участие в забастовке

ban — запрещать

miscellaneous — разные

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Law enforcement in the United Kingdom is organized:
 - a) in the same way as in the USA
 - b) in the same way in each of the legal systems of the United Kingdom
 - c) separately in England and Wales, Northern Ireland and Scotland
2. Police officers in the UK have wide ranging powers and:
 - a) have a lot of privileges
 - b) subject to the same laws as members of the public
 - c) are not civilians
3. There are certain legal restrictions on police officers such as:
 - a) patrolling the streets on foot
 - b) the illegality of taking industrial action and the ban on taking part in active politics
 - c) going abroad in full uniform
4. Under Sir Robert Peel's direction the police had such powers:
 - a) to prevent crime without using repressive force; to maintain public order by non-violent means; to show efficiency through the absence of crime
 - b) to use repressive force when preventing crime
 - c) to use violent means while maintaining public order

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do the tasks after the text.

Police Constables and Community Support Officers

Within the British Police, constable is the starting **rank** in all police forces. All police officers hold the office of a **constable**. Upon being sworn in, each officer starts at the rank of constable and is required to undergo a two-year probationary period. Upon successful completion, constables can remain at their current rank, specialize in criminal investigations, or apply for promotion to Sergeant. The beat is the smallest division of a police area. Each constable is personally responsible for his beat.

Responsibilities of a constable

1. Working in partnership with communities
2. Maintaining law and order when patrolling
3. Attending calls to assist the public



4. Investigating crimes and incidents fairly, objectively and in a timely manner
5. Detaining or arresting offenders
6. Conducting suspect and **witness** interviews
7. Taking appropriate action at accidents and incidents
8. Providing crime prevention advice where necessary
9. Enforcing road traffic **legislation**
10. Dealing with lost or found property
11. Keeping the peace at public meetings, events, processions, disputes and demonstrations
12. Giving evidence in criminal and civil courts

Police Community Support Officers are members of support staff employed, directed and managed by their Police Force. Police **community** support officers were introduced in September 2002. Their primary purpose is to **improve** the community and offer greater public reassurance.

Day to day duties usually include patrolling, tackling anti-social behaviour (ASB), dealing with minor offences, reporting vandalism and suspicious activity; providing crime prevention advice, deterring juvenile nuisance and visiting **victims** of crime; gathering criminal intelligence. The Home Office has limited the powers designated to PCSOs to maintain the distinction between them and police officers.



Unlike a **police constable**, a PCSO only has powers when on duty and in full uniform, and within the area policed by their respective force. PCSOs require less **training** because their role is different and more specific to that of a police constable.

The powers that all PCSOs have at present are:

- Require name and address where they have reason to believe a person has committed a road traffic offence, an act of anti-social behaviour or is in possession of a controlled drug
- Issue fixed penalty notices for littering, breach of dog control orders and cycling on a footpath
- Confiscate alcohol from persons in designated places and from under 18s
- Seize tobacco from under 16s
- Seize (controlled) drugs
- Enter and **search** premises to save life or prevent serious damage to property
- Seize vehicles used to cause alarm
- Remove abandoned vehicles
- Stop bicycles
- Control traffic
- Place traffic signs
- Enforce cordoned areas under the Terrorism Act 2000
- Stop and search in an authorized area under the Terrorism Act 2000

The ideal police officer should be quick-witted, intelligent, and observant; he should have a wide knowledge of human nature, should be exceptionally tactful, which means the ability to deal with all types and classes of people, should have a cool unprejudiced mind; should be always ready to act on his own initiative; should also be courageous, strong, and incorruptible.

Study Skills

4. Learn the vocabulary.

accident <i>n</i>	случай, несчастный случай
action <i>n</i> take an action	действие принять меры; возбудить уголовное дело
apply (for) <i>v</i>	обратиться с просьбой; подавать заявление (о приеме на работу, учебу)
believe <i>v</i>	полагать
call <i>n</i> attending calls	вызов, звонок прием звонков (вызовов)
cause <i>v</i> cause alarm	быть причиной, вызывать причинять беспокойство
community <i>n</i> Police Community Support Officer (PCSO)	общество офицеры полиции по работе с населением, вспомогательный персонал
completion <i>n</i>	завершение, окончание
courageous <i>a</i>	храбрый
court <i>n</i>	суд
current <i>a</i>	текущий, нынешний
custody <i>n</i>	лишение свободы, содержание под стражей
deal with <i>v</i>	иметь дело (с кем-либо, чем-либо)
detaining <i>n</i>	задержание, арест
detering <i>n</i>	удерживание от совершения действий устрашением
distinction <i>n</i>	различие
employ <i>v</i>	предоставлять работу, нанимать
enforcing <i>n</i>	принуждение к исполнению
evidence <i>n</i>	доказательство, улики
improve <i>v</i>	улучшать, совершенствовать
in accordance with	в соответствии с
incident <i>n</i>	инцидент, случай
intelligence <i>n</i>	информация, разведывательные данные
intelligent... <i>a</i>	умный
interview <i>n</i> conducting interviews	опрос проведение опросов
introduce <i>v</i>	вводить, учреждать
investigation <i>n</i>	расследование
issue <i>v</i>	выдавать, издавать

juvenile <i>n, a</i>	несовершеннолетний
maintain <i>n</i> maintain law and order	поддерживать, сохранять поддерживать правопорядок
manner <i>n</i> timely manner	способ своевременно
notice <i>n</i>	извещение, уведомление, предупреждение
nuisance <i>n</i>	нарушение закона, бескойство, проблема
observant <i>a</i>	наблюдательный
offence <i>n</i> commit an offence	правонарушение, преступление совершать проступок (преступление)
offender <i>n</i>	правонарушитель
offer <i>v</i>	предлагать, предполагать
office <i>n</i> Home Office	ведомство, министерство МВД
peace <i>n</i> keeping the peace	мир, спокойствие поддержание (соблюдение) общественного порядка
power <i>n</i>	право; полномочие; власть
probationary <i>a</i>	пробационный, испытательный
promotion <i>n</i>	повышение в должности
provide <i>v</i>	предоставлять, обеспечивать
quick-witted <i>a</i>	сообразительный
reason <i>n</i>	причина
reassurance <i>n</i> offer greater public reassurance.	уверенность, спокойствие создавать более спокойную обстановку в обществе
receive <i>v</i>	получать
remain <i>v</i>	оставаться
report <i>v</i>	сообщать, докладывать
require <i>v</i>	требовать(ся)
responsible <i>a</i>	ответственный
search <i>n, v</i> search for	обыск, поиск; обыскивать искать
seize <i>v</i>	задерживать; конфисковать
staff <i>n</i>	штат (служащих)
support <i>n, v</i>	поддержка; поддерживать
suspect <i>n</i>	подозреваемый
swear <i>v</i> swear in	клясться; принимать присягу приводить к присяге
tackle <i>v</i>	решать что-либо; заниматься чем-либо
unprejudiced <i>a</i>	беспристрастный
victim <i>n</i>	жертва, пострадавший
witness <i>n</i>	свидетель

5. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	require	a	повышение в должности
2	completion	b	улика, доказательство
3	remain	c	ответственный
4	investigation	d	жертва, пострадавший
5	promotion	e	обеспечивать
6	maintain	f	оставаться
7	provide	g	задержание
8	manner	h	требовать(ся)
9	detaining	i	расследование
10	responsible	j	свидетель
11	custody	k	информация, разведывательные данные
12	witness	l	завершение
13	evidence	m	поддерживать, сохранять
14	victim	n	способ
15	intelligence	o	лишение свободы, содержание под стражей

6. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	занимать должность	a	dealing with lost or found property
2	пройти двухлетний испытательный срок	b	fairly, objectively and in a timely manner
3	специализироваться в расследовании уголовных дел	c	working in partnership with communities
4	подать прошение о повышении звания до сержанта	d	maintaining law and order
5	несет персональную ответственность за свой участок	e	giving evidence in criminal and civil courts
6	совместная работа с населением	f	providing crime prevention advice
7	поддержание правопорядка	g	hold the office
8	прием звонков, чтобы оказать помощь гражданам	h	investigating crimes and incidents
9	расследование преступлений и происшествий	i	taking appropriate action at accidents
10	честно, объективно и своевременно	j	specialize in criminal investigations
11	принятие соответствующих мер при несчастных случаях	k	apply for promotion to sergeant

12	предоставление консультаций по предупреждению преступности	l	attending calls to assist the public
13	применение законодательства о дорожном движении	m	enforcing road traffic legislation
14	иметь дело с потерянной или украденной собственностью	n	personally responsible for his beat
15	дача показаний в уголовных и гражданских судах	o	undergo a two-year probationary period

7. Match the antonyms.

1	start	a	find
2	completion	b	break
3	responsible	c	release
4	detain	d	the same
5	lose	e	dismiss
6	minor (crime)	f	irresponsible
7	maintain	g	serious
8	like	h	beginning
9	different	i	unlike
10	employ	j	finish

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Starting rank; police forces; Police Community Support Officers; members of support staff; employed, directed and managed by; Police Reform Act; purpose; improve the community; offer greater public reassurance; hold the office of a constable; upon being sworn in; upon successful completion; can remain at their current rank; apply for promotion to sergeant; day to day duties; tackling anti-social behaviour; dealing with minor offences; reporting vandalism; reporting suspicious activity; deterring juvenile nuisance; visiting victims of crime; gathering criminal intelligence; the Home Office, the powers designated to PCSOs; only has powers when on duty and in full uniform; PCSOs require less training; beat; is personally responsible for his beat.

b) Поддержание правопорядка; совместная работа с населением; конфисковать (контролируемые) наркотики; честное, своевременное и объективное расследование преступлений; задержание или арест правонарушителей; проведение опросов подозреваемых и свидетелей; причина (основание) полагать, что человек совершил дорожное правонарушение, антисоциальный поступок или хранит контролируемые наркотики; эвакуировать (увозить) оставленные транспортные средства; конфисковать табачные изделия у лиц, не достигших 16 лет; дача свидетельских показаний в уголовных и гражданских судах; осуществле-

ние охраны территорий в соответствии с Законом о Терроризме 2000 г.; входить в здание и производить обыск, чтобы спасти жизнь или предотвратить причинение серьезного имущественного ущерба; размещать дорожные знаки; конфисковать машины, которые причиняли беспокойство; применение законодательства о дорожном движении; регулировать дорожное движение.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. В британской полиции констебль — начальное звание всех полицейских.
2. После принятия присяги каждый офицер начинает службу с констебля и ему необходимо пройти двухлетний испытательный срок.
3. Каждый констебль несет персональную ответственность за свой участок.
4. Полицейские по работе с населением появились в сентябре 2002 г.
5. Их главная цель — улучшать общество и создавать более спокойную обстановку в обществе.
6. Повседневные обязанности обычно включают: патрулирование, решение проблем антисоциального поведения, рассмотрения незначительных правонарушений, сообщение о вандализме и подозрительной деятельности, предоставление консультаций по предупреждению преступности, сдерживание преступности несовершеннолетних и посещение жертв преступлений, сбор информации о преступности.
7. Министерство внутренних дел ограничило полномочия, предписанные офицерам по работе с населением, чтобы показать различие между ними и полицейскими.
8. В отличие от полицейского, офицеры полиции по работе с населением обладают полномочиями, только находясь на службе и в форме, на территории, охраняемой их соответствующим подразделением.

В настоящее время они обладают следующими полномочиями:

- Спросить имя и адрес, когда у них есть причина полагать, что человек совершил дорожное преступление, акт антиобщественного поведения или имеет при себе наркотики.
- Входить и обыскивать помещение, чтобы спасти жизнь или предотвратить серьезный имущественный ущерб.

10. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions:

1	a person present at some event and able to give information about it
2	a person injured or killed as a result of an event or circumstance
3	a position in a hierarchy, grade or advancement
4	the act or process of teaching or learning, a skill discipline, etc.
5	a policeman or policewoman
6	a police officer in the lowest rank
7	make or become better
8	laws collectively
9	all the people living in one place, district or country, considered as a whole
10	look through thoroughly to find something

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following:

A constable is responsible for ...

PCSO has the power (to) ...

stop bicycles; control traffic; place traffic signs; investigating crimes; detaining or arresting offenders; conducting suspect and witness interviews; detaining or arresting offenders; giving evidence in criminal and civil courts; dealing with lost or found property; seize tobacco from under 16s; seize (controlled) drugs; issue fixed penalty notices for littering; seize vehicles used to cause alarm; remove abandoned vehicles; attending calls to assist the public

12. Choose the correct word.

1. Each constable is required to undergo a two-year **training / probationary** period.
2. PCSOs have **limited / wide** powers designated to them by the Home Office.
3. The **station / the beat** is the smallest division of a police area.
4. Constables can give **documents / evidence** in criminal and civil courts.
5. PCSOs are members of **support / attested** staff.
6. Day to day duties of a PCSO include gathering criminal **investigation / intelligence**.
7. Constables work in partnership with **communities / lawyers**.
8. PCSO has the power to enter and **visit / search** the premises.
9. The powers of a PCSO and a constable are **different / the same**.
10. When patrolling, constables maintain law and **traffic / order**.
11. A constable has the **power / evidence** to confiscate alcohol from persons in designated places and from under 18s.
12. Police should **investigate / report** crimes and incidents fairly, objectively and in a timely manner.

13. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms:

regulated, difference, responsibilities, nowadays, statement, offences, begins, confiscate, basic, punishment, apprehending, proper, justly, together, keeping

1. Police seek to work in partnership with communities.
2. One of the responsibilities of a constable is maintaining law and order when patrolling.
3. Constables are also responsible for taking appropriate action at accidents and incidents.
4. Police should investigate crimes and incidents fairly, objectively and in a timely manner.
5. Police constables also give evidence in criminal and civil courts.
6. Constables are also responsible for detaining or arresting offenders.

7. Support staff to which PCSOs belong, is directed and managed by their Police Force.

8. Their primary purpose is to improve the community and offer greater public reassurance.

9. Day to day duties of PCSO usually include a lot of activities.

10. The Home Office has limited the powers designated to PCSOs to maintain the distinction between them and police officers.

11. At present the powers that all PCSOs have differ from those of police constables.

12. Each officer starts at the rank of constable and is required to undergo a two-year probationary period.

13. PCSO can seize tobacco from under 16s.

14. One of PCSO's duties is to issue fixed penalty notices for littering, breach of dog control orders and cycling on a footpath.

14. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
	completed	
		enforce
provider		
	supportive	
		suspect
employment		
	entering	
		differ
activity		
	required	
		respond

15. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

In the 18th century law (0) **enforcement**



British police officers of 1919

and policing was organised by local communities (1) ...
on watchmen and constables. The (2) ... was not

(0) **enforce**



Sir Robert Peel

(1) **base**

(2) **govern**

directly involved in policing. The City of Glasgow Police (3) ... (4) ... police, was established following an

Act of Parliament in 1800. London had a (5) ... of nearly a million and a half people in the early 19th century but was (6) ... by only 450 constables and 4,500 night (7) ...

The concept of professional policing was (8) ... up by Sir Robert Peel when he (9) ... Home Secretary in 1822. Peel's Metropolitan Police Act 1829 (10) ... a full-time, professional and centrally-organised police force for the Greater London area (11) ... as the Metropolitan Police. (12) in the 1830s introduced policing in royal boroughs and many (13) ... and, in the 1850s, policing was established (14) ...

- (3) one
- (4) profession
- (5) populate
- (6) police
- (7) watchman
- (8) take
- (9) become
- (10) establish
- (11) know
- (12) legislate
- (13) county
- (14) national

16. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

less training; on duty; to improve; PCSOs; support; completion; deterring; Constable; responsible; anti-social

1. All police officers hold the office of a....
2. Upon successful ..., constables can remain at their current rank, specialize in criminal investigations, or apply for promotion to Sergeant.
3. Each constable is personally ...for his beat.
4. Police Community Support Officers are members of ... staff.
5. The primary purpose of PCSOs is ...the community.
6. Day to day duties usually include tackling ... behaviour.
7. One of the main duties of a PCSO is ... juvenile nuisance.
8. The Home Office has specifically limited the powers designated to ... to maintain the distinction between them and police officers.
9. Unlike a police constable, a PCSO only has powers when ... and in full uniform, and within the area policed by their respective force.
10. PCSOs require ... because their role is different and more specific to that of a police constable.

17. Choose the correct the correct modal verb.

1. The police **are to / may** maintain order, enforce the law, and prevent crime.
2. Police also **has to / have to** handle other tasks as well dealing with community service.
3. There were injured victims at the scene of crime and police **will have to / had to** provide ambulance service.
4. A policeman **should / may** aid people who are in danger of harm.
5. Police took a lot of measures and **was able / were able** to prevent a bank robbery.
6. Patrol officers **have to / has to** deal mainly with behavior that disturbs the peace.

7. Nowadays policemen **needn't/must not** do much paper work as all departments are equipped with computers.

8. The investigator **were to / was to** come at 9, but he **had to / have to** search a crime scene urgently.

9. In addition to academic knowledge cadets **must/may** obtain necessary professional skills.

10. Police **were able / was able** to identify the criminal thanks to witnesses.

11. **One should / one cannot** realize the importance of quick and fair investigation.

12. **One cannot / one shouldn't** find fingerprints if the criminal was wearing gloves.

18. Find in the text (Reading 2) and translate sentences with modal verbs.

19. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Constable** / all / starting / in / rank / in / police / the / forces / Britain / is.

2. **All** / hold / constable / the / office / police / of / a / officers.

3. **Each** / rank / the / starts / officer / at / of / constable / and / is / to / undergo / probationary / required / period / a / two-year.

4. **Is** / beat / his / personally / constable / responsible / each / for?

5. **Police** / crimes / investigate / incidents / and / fairly / objectively / manner / in / a timely / and / must.

6. **Their** // the community / primary / improve / purpose / to / is.

7. **Why** / designated / has / Office / limited / the Home / the powers / to PCSOs?

8. **When** / powers / has / a PCSO?

9. **PCSOs** / less / than / constables / require / training / police.

10. **Who** / vehicles / has / the power / to remove / abandoned?

20. Fill in: remove, enter and search, undergo, successful, hold, detaining or arresting, responsible for, apply for, maintaining, keeping, giving, primary, gathering, Police Community, issue, tackling, starting, place. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ... rank

2 ... the office

3 ... a two-year probationary period

4 ... completion

5 ... promotion

6 ... his beat

7 ... law and order

8 ... offenders

9 ... the peace

10 ... evidence

11 ... Support Officers

12 ... purpose

13 ... anti-social behaviour

14 ... criminal intelligence

15 ... penalty notices

16 ... premises

17 ... abandoned vehicles

18 ... traffic signs

21. Complete the sentences according to the text (Reading 2).

1. Within the British Police, constable is the starting
2. Upon being sworn in, each officer starts at the rank of constable and is required to undergo
3. Upon successful completion of probationary period, constables can remain at their current rank, specialize in criminal investigations, or
4. Each constable is personally responsible for his beat which is the smallest
5. Main responsibilities of a constable are:
 - Working in partnership with
 - Maintaining law and order....
 - Investigating crimes and incidents....
 - Conducting suspect and witness
 - Providing crime prevention
 - Enforcing road traffic
6. Police Community Support Officers are members of
7. Their primary purpose is
8. Unlike a police constable, a PCSO only has powers
9. The powers that all PCSOs have at present are:
 - Require name and address where they have reason to believe that
 - Issue fixed_penalty notices for littering breach of dog control orders and
 - Confiscate alcohol from persons in designated places and
 - Seize tobacco from
 - Seize (controlled)
 - Enter and search premises
 - Remove abandoned
 - Control
 - Stop and search in an authorized area and enforce cordoned areas under

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and Speaking

22. Listen to a conversation between the police chief and an officer.

1) Before listening: try to remember the words:

argue	спорить
back up	поддержка, поддерживать
be supposed (to do smth)	обязан, должен
consequencece	последствие
draw (drew, drawn)	влечь; вызывать; провоцировать
encounter	(неожиданно) встретить
intense	напряженный
observe	наблюдать
wait (for)	ожидать
weapon	оружие

2) While listening: Listen and complete the conversation.

Chief: So, what happened out there, officer Grimes?

Officer: I 1) I observed a group of people arguing. So I went to see what the problem was.

Chief: You know you're supposed to wait for 2) ... When several people are present.

Officer: I only encountered three at first. And then three more came around from the back.

Chief: Did they 3) ...?

Officer: No. they were fighting each other, three against three.

Chief: Did they 4) ...?

Officer: One of them had a baseball bat, but no guns.

Chief: A 5) ... said you drew your weapon.

Officer: I did. The situation was very 6)

Chief: That's precisely why you should have waited for back up. If this happens again, there will be 7)

Officer: I understand. It won't happen again.

3) After listening: Make the statements as true (T) or false (F).

1. Policeman Grimes was on patrol when he saw a group of people arguing.
2. Officer Grimes was attacked by a group of people.
3. An officer must wait for back up when several people are present.
4. The group of people began fighting each other.
5. The fighting people had weapons.
6. The policeman drew his gun.
7. Officer Grimes used his weapon.

25. With a partner, act out the roles based on the conversation. Use such language as:

- What happened?
- Was on patrol
- Observed group of people arguing
- Went to see what the problem was
- Were fighting each other
- You are supposed to...
- Wait for back up
- They were ... at first, then
- Did they ... you ?
- Did they (he, you) have ...?
- Baseball bat, no guns
- Drew your weapon
- The situation was very intense
- You should have waited for
- If this happens again
- Consequences

Watching a Video and Speaking

26. Watch the video “Interview with PCSO Nwanna Egwuonwu” and be ready to do the tasks.

Before watching the video:

1) Remember the following words:

abuse	оскорбление
experience	опыт, событие, впечатление
expose	выставлять, представлять
feel	чувствовать
make them feel happy	делать их счастливыми
join	вступать (в организацию), присоединяться
involved	вовлеченный
major	главный
occasionally (syn. once in a while)	иногда, изредка (время от времени)
reason	причина
way	способ
while	в то время как

2) Revise the words and word combinations.

anti-social behaviour; bad — worst — the worst; be good — better — the best; proud; enjoy; job; meet the community; minor crimes; PCSO (Police Community Support Officer); reassurance; safe; solve problems.

3) Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the video.

1) Nwanna Egwuonwu’s job is:

- a) a police constable
- b) a PCSO (Police Community Support Officer)
- c) an investigator

2) The major reason Nwanna Egwuonwu decided to join the police is:

- a) to earn much money
- b) he is respected by the community
- c) he likes himself involved in the community and likes solving their problems

3) Nwanna Egwuonwu’s best experience is:

- a) making the community very happy and reassurance in the community
- b) ordering people to obey him
- c) having good money

4) Nwanna Egwuonwu’s worst experience is that:

- a) he doesn’t have much money
- b) people don’t obey him
- c) occasionally members of the public abuse him



- 5) Nwanna Egwuonwu says that:
- a) he will not recommend this career to others
 - b) his family and friends don't like his job
 - c) he will recommend it as career to others

27. With a partner, act out the roles based on the video. Cadet A is a first-year cadet of a Police College, Cadet B is a PCSO.

Then, switch the roles. Use such language as:

Cadet A

What's your job?
 Responsibilities
 Why did you join ...?
 enjoy
 When did you join...?
 best experience
 Have you got a family?
 Would you recommend?
 Effective and visible

Cadet B

involved in the community
 speaking to
 PCSO
 listen to
 solving their problems
 the major reason
 feel safe
 anti-social behaviour
 solve minor crimes (problems)
 2007
 meet the community
 reassurance
 abused
 are proud

28. Match the questions on the text to their answers.

1 What is the lowest rank in British police forces?	a Upon successful completion, Constables can remain at their current rank, specialize in criminal investigations, or apply for promotion to Sergeant
2 What office do all police officers hold in GB?	b The ideal police officer should be quick-witted, intelligent, and observant; he should have a wide knowledge of human nature, be able to deal with all types and classes of people, should also be courageous, strong, and incorruptible
3 How long does probationary period last?	c Unlike a police constable, a PCSO only has powers when on duty and in full uniform, and within the area policed by their respective force
4 What does a constable do after the probationary period?	d Police Community Support Officers are members of support staff. Their primary purpose is to improve the community and offer greater public reassurance

- 5 What is the area of personal responsibility of a constable?
- 6 What are the main responsibilities of a constable?
- 7 What are PCSOs? What is the purpose of their work?
- 8 What are day to day duties of a PCSO?
- 9 What is the main distinction in the powers of a police constable (PC) and a PCSO?



- e Probationary period lasts two years
 - f Day to day duties usually include patrolling; tackling anti-social behaviour; dealing with minor offences, reporting vandalism and suspicious activity; providing crime prevention advice, deterring juvenile nuisance and visiting victims of crime; gathering criminal intelligence
 - g Within the British Police, constable is the starting rank in all police forces
 - h Each constable is personally responsible for his beat
 - i The powers that all PCSOs have at present are: issue fixed penalty notices for littering, breach of dog control orders and cycling on a footpath; confiscate alcohol from persons in designated places and from under 18s; seize tobacco from under 16s; seize controlled drugs; enter and search premises; remove abandoned vehicles; stop bicycles ; control traffic; place traffic signs; enforce cordoned areas under the Terrorism Act 2000, etc.
 - j All police officers hold the office of a Constable
 - k Main responsibilities of a constable: working in partnership with communities; maintaining law and order; investigating crimes and incidents fairly, objectively and in a timely manner; detaining or arresting offenders; interviewing suspect and witness; preventing crime; keeping the peace; giving evidence in criminal and civil courts; enforcing road traffic legislation, etc.
- 10 What are the main powers designated to a PCSO?
 - 11 What are the main characteristics of an ideal policeman?

31. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 30.

Cadet A: You are a Russian policeman. Ask Cadet B about the work of a Constable and PCSO...

Cadet B: You are British police officer. Answer cadet's A questions.

Use such language as:

Cadet A:

- What is (are)...?
- The lowest rank in British police
- Forces
- How long
- Last
- Probationary period
- What does a constable do after...?
- The main responsibilities
- Powers
- The purpose of their work
- Day to day duties of
- The main distinction in the powers of



Cadet B:

- Constable
- The starting rank
- Police forces
- Working in partnership with communities
- Maintaining law and order
- Investigating crimes and incidents
- Fairly objectively
- In a timely manner
- Detaining or arresting offenders
- interviewing suspect and witness, preventing crime,
- Giving evidence in criminal and civil courts
- Enforcing road traffic legislation
- When on duty and in full uniform
- To improve the community
- Patrolling
- Tackling anti-social behaviour
- Dealing with minor offences, reporting vandalism and suspicious behaviour
- Visiting victims of crime
- Gathering criminal intelligence
- Confiscate alcohol from
- Seize tobacco from under
- Seize controlled drugs
- Enter and search premises
- Enforce cordoned areas under the Terrorism Act 2000

32. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Constables
- Probationary period
- Responsibilities of constables

- PCSOs
- Day to day duties of PCSOs
- The powers of PCSOs

33. Speak on constables and police community support officers.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. Within the British Police constable is the starting ... in all police forces.
 - a) point
 - b) rank
 - c) profession
2. The ... is the smallest division of a police area.
 - a) region
 - b) station
 - c) beat
3. Police Community Support Officers are members of ... staff employed
 - a) support
 - b) main
 - c) police
4. ... a police constable, a PCSO only has powers when on duty and in full uniform.
 - a) In addition to
 - b) Unlike
 - c) Like
5. The ... police officer should be quick-witted, intelligent, and observant.
 - a) civil
 - b) new
 - c) ideal

2. Fill in: behaviour; his beat; rank; incorruptible; criminal intelligence; period; law and order; from under 16s; advice; the community.

- 1 starting ...
- 2 probationary ...
- 3 responsible for ...
- 4 maintaining ...
- 5 crime prevention ...
- 6 improve ...
- 7 gathering ...
- 8 an act of anti-social ...
- 9 seize tobacco ...
- 10 should also be courageous, strong, and ...

3. Choose the correct modal word.

1. In addition to academic knowledge cadets **must/may** obtain necessary professional skills.
2. The trial **must / is to** begin at 10 a.m. tomorrow.
3. A policeman **should / may** aid people who are in danger of harm.
4. Our cadets **can / have to** wear a uniform.
5. **One should / one cannot** realize the importance of quick and fair investigation.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s).

1. Constables can remain at their current rank, specialize in criminal investigations, or apply for promotion to
2. Police ... support officers were introduced in September 2002.
3. Unlike a police constable, a PCSO only has powers when ... and in full uniform.
4. PCSOs have the power to enter and search premises to save life or prevent serious damage to....
5. The ideal police officer should have a wide ... of human nature.

5. Choose the correct answer.

1. What is the starting rank in all police forces within the British Police?
 - a) Police Community Support Officer
 - b) Constable
 - c) Sergeant
2. What is the beat?
 - a) The beat is the smallest division of a police area
 - b) The beat is playground
 - c) The beat is a room at a police station
3. What are Police Community Support Officers?
 - a) Police Community Support Officers are former constables
 - b) Police Community Support Officers are volunteers from the community
 - c) Police Community Support Officers are members of support staff
4. What is the primary purpose of PCSOs?
 - a) Their primary purpose is to investigate crimes
 - b) Their primary purpose is to improve the community and offer greater public reassurance
 - c) Their primary purpose is to control traffic
5. Does a PCSO have the same powers as a police constable?
 - a) A PCSO has the same powers as a police constable
 - b) A PCSO has more powers than a police constable
 - c) Unlike a police constable, a PCSO only has powers when on duty and in full uniform, and within the area policed by their respective force

Lead-in

- You are going to read a text dealing with the history of British police. Do you know when and by whom British police were founded?
- What does Metropolitan Police mean?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

From the History of British Police

The word “Police” means, generally, the arrangements made in all civilized countries to ensure that the inhabitants keep the peace and obey the law. The word also denotes the force of peace officers (or police) employed for this purpose. In the early 1800s several attempts were made to create a centralized police force for London. People saw the need for social order, but some feared that a police force would threaten the freedom of citizens and lead to tyranny. In 1829, when Sir Robert Peel was Home Secretary, the first Metropolitan Police Act was passed and the Metropolitan Police Force was established. The City of London Police, which were set up in 1839, remain an independent *City of London Police* force to this day. The City of London Police are responsible for one Square Mile. Two nicknames for British police, ‘*Bobbies*’ and ‘*Peelers*’, come from the founder of the Metropolitan Police, Sir Robert Peel. Under Sir Robert Peel’s direction the police had such powers:



- to prevent crime without using repressive force
- to maintain public order by non-violent means
- to reduce conflict between the police and the public
- to show efficiency through the absence of crime and disorder rather than through visible police actions

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Police are defined as:

- a) people that detain suspects
- b) a group of people that patrol streets
- c) the force of peace officers employed to ensure that the citizens keep the peace and obey the law

2. There are two forces that patrol London:



- a) Scotland Yard and Metropolitan Police
 - b) Metropolitan Police and City of London Police
 - c) the West End Police and the East End Police
3. The name of the founder of the Metropolitan police was:
- a) Sir Robert Peel
 - b) Bob Peeler
 - c) Peel Scott
4. Under Sir Robert Peel's direction the police main powers were:
- a) to prevent crime without using repressive force; to maintain public order by non-violent means
 - b) to use repressive force when preventing crime
 - c) to suppress conflicts between the police and the public

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

The Best Police in the World



The police in Britain enjoy a unique **advantage** over the police of almost every other country in the world because they are helped by the public they serve. The reason for this is that the British public respect and trust their policemen.

In Britain, the basic conception is that the police are **civilians** whose job is to protect and to help their fellow-citizens. The policeman can and should **protect** his fellow-citizens against criminals as well as against the Government or any other **authority** if the Government or that authority acts illegally.

The fact that the policeman is discouraged from using force means that he must do his work by tact and persuasion.

The usefulness of the police depends on the ability of the constable on the beat or in the patrol car. It is to him that the citizen in **trouble** first turns, and it is on his efficiency that the prevention of crime and the arrest of criminals primarily depend.



The primary object of an efficient police is the prevention of crime; the next is that of detection and punishment of offenders if crime is committed, investigating crimes and incidents fairly, objectively and in a timely manner. To these ends all the efforts of police must be directed. The protection of life and property, the preservation of public **tranquility**, and the absence of crime, will prove whether those efforts have been successful and whether the objects for which the police were appointed have been attained. In attaining these objects, much depends on the approval and co-operation of

the public. One of the key principles of modern policing in Britain is that the police seek to work with the community.

The ideal police officer should be quick-witted, intelligent, and observant; he should have a wide knowledge of **human nature**, should be exceptionally tactful, which means the ability to deal with all types and classes of people, should have a cool unprejudiced mind; should be always ready to act on his own initiative; should also be courageous, strong, and incorruptible.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The police in Britain enjoy advantage over police of many countries of the world because they:

- a) are civilians
- b) are helped by the public they serve
- c) are well-armed

2. The British public help their police because:

- a) they are paid money for their help
- b) British people are very courageous
- c) the British public respect and trust their policemen

3. The policeman can and should protect his fellow-citizens against:

- a) burglars
- b) criminals as well as against the Government
- c) violation of public order

4. The usefulness of the police depends on:

- a) police training
- b) good police cars
- c) the ability of the constable on the beat or in the patrol car

5. The ideal police officer should be:

- a) physically fit
- b) well-educated
- c) quick-witted, intelligent, observant, courageous, strong, and incorruptible

6. The main object of an efficient police is:

- a) catching criminals
- b) the prevention of crime
- c) patrolling streets



5. Learn the vocabulary.

ability <i>n</i>	(право)способность, компетенция
act <i>v</i>	поступать, действовать
advantage <i>n</i>	преимущество
enjoy an advantage	пользоваться преимуществом

appoint <i>n</i>	назначать, предназначать
approval <i>n</i>	одобрять
attain <i>v</i>	достигать
authority <i>n</i>	власть, полномочие
beat <i>n</i>	участок полицейского патрулирования
citizen <i>n</i> fellow-citizen <i>n</i>	гражданин согражданин, соотечественник
cool <i>a</i>	спокойный, невозмутимый, холодный
courageous <i>a</i>	мужественный
crime <i>n</i> commit a crime investigate crimes	преступление совершать преступление расследовать преступления
deal with <i>v</i>	иметь дело с чем-либо, сталкиваться, бороться
depend (on) <i>v</i>	зависеть (от)
detection <i>n</i>	обнаружение
discourage <i>v</i>	не поощрять, препятствовать
effort <i>n</i>	усилие, попытка
exceptionally <i>adv</i>	исключительно
fairly <i>adv</i>	справедливо
intelligent <i>a</i>	умный
main <i>a</i>	главный, основной
manner <i>n</i> timely manner	способ своевременно
mean <i>v</i>	значить, означать
mind <i>n</i>	ум
nature <i>n</i> human nature	природа, сущность человеческая природа
object <i>n</i>	цель, объект
observant <i>a</i>	наблюдательный, внимательный
persuasion <i>n</i>	убеждение
preliminary <i>a</i>	предварительный
preservation <i>n</i>	сохранение
prevention <i>n</i>	предотвращение
protect <i>v</i>	защищать
prove <i>v</i>	доказывать
punishment <i>n</i>	наказание
tranquility <i>n</i>	спокойствие
quick-witted <i>a</i>	находчивый, смысленный
reason <i>n</i>	причина
respect <i>v</i>	уважать
tranquility <i>n</i>	спокойствие
trouble <i>n</i>	неприятность, беда
trust <i>v</i>	доверять

turn to v	обращаться к
uniform n, a	форма, единообразный
unprejudiced a	беспристрастный
use n, v	применение, польза; применять, использовать
well adv as well as	хорошо также

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 protect	a предотвращение
2 authority	b наблюдательный, внимательный
3 discourage	c зависеть (от)
4 persuasion	d находчивый
5 use	e цель
6 depend (on)	f стремиться
7 ability	g убеждение
8 prevention	h умный
9 object	i не поощрять
10 attain	j защищать
11 quick-witted	k власть
12 intelligent	l беспристрастный
13 observant	m применение
14 seek	n достигать
15 unprejudiced	o способность

7. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1 пользоваться преимуществом	a absence of crime
2 совершить преступление	b protect and to help their fellow-citizens
3 человеческая природа	c ability to deal with all types and classes of people
4 помогать своим соотечественникам и защищать их	d protection of life and property
5 не поощряется в применении силы	e prevention of crime
6 предупреждение преступления	f preservation of public tranquility
7 защита жизни и собственности	g human nature
8 сохранение спокойствия в обществе	h is discouraged from using force
9 отсутствие преступности	i commit a crime
10 одобрение и сотрудничество общественности	j be always ready to act on his own initiative

- 11** способность общаться всеми типами и классами людей
12 быть всегда готовым действовать самостоятельно (по собственной инициативе)

- k** enjoy an advantage
l approval and co-operation of the public

8. Match the antonyms.

1 protect	a ignorance
2 main	b uselessness
3 discourage	c encourage
4 reason	d prejudiced
5 tranquility	e unobservant
6 ability	f insignificant, minor
7 usefulness	g ancient
8 absence	h disturbance
9 knowledge	i attack
10 observant	j incorruptible
11 modern	k disability
12 corruptible	l consequence
13 unprejudiced	m presence

9. Translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Advantage; serve; reason for this; the British public; respect and trust; basic conception; civilians; job; to protect and to help; fellow-citizens; against criminals; as well as; authority; acts illegally; is discouraged from using force; by tact and persuasion; usefulness of the police; the ability of the constable; the citizen in trouble; the beat; prevention of crime; knowledge of human nature; quick-witted; intelligent; observant; exceptionally tactful; deal with all types and classes of people; cool unprejudiced mind; courageous, strong, and incorruptible, efficient police, protection of life and property, objects for which the police were appointed.

b) Иметь уникальное преимущество над; им помогает общество, которому они служат; общество доверяет своим полицейским; гражданские (лица); помогать и защищать; защищать своих сограждан от преступников; если правительство или другая власть действует незаконно; не поощрять полицейского в применении силы; выполнять свою работу, используя такт и убеждение (при помощи такта и убеждения); компетенция констебля; предотвращение преступления; находчивый; умный; мужественный; наблюдательный; беспристрастный; действовать по собственной инициативе; неподкупный; человеческая сущность; иметь дело со всеми типами и классами людей; главная цель; предотвращение преступления; наказание преступников; если преступление совершилось; сохранение спокойствия в обществе; отсутствие преступности; достижение этих целей; полиция стремится работать с обществом.

10. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Полиции Великобритании помогает общество, которому она служит.
2. Полицейский может и должен защищать своих сограждан от преступников, а также от правительства, если это правительство действует незаконно.
3. Полицейский должен выполнять свою работу тактично и методом убеждения.
4. Эффективность полиции зависит от способности констебля осуществлять деятельность на своем участке.
5. От его эффективности зависит предотвращение преступления и арест преступников.
6. Основная цель эффективной полиции — предотвращение преступления.
7. Отсутствие преступности докажет, были ли эти усилия успешны.
8. Один из основных принципов деятельности современной полиции — это то, что полиция стремится работать с обществом.
9. Идеальный полицейский должен быть сообразительным, умным, и наблюдательным; должен также быть храбрым, сильным, и неподкупным.
10. Идеальный полицейский должен быть очень тактичным, что означает способность общаться со всеми типами и классами людей, обладать холодным непредвзятым умом (рассудком), быть всегда готовым проявить инициативу.

11. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions:

- 1 difficulty or distress
- 2 the power or right to enforce obedience
- 3 better position
- 4 general human characteristics, feeling, etc.
- 5 keep safe, defend
- 6 a person not in the armed services or the police force
- 7 a disposition free from stress or emotion

12. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations with the followings:

ideal police officers
protect

should be courageous, strong, and incorruptible; and help their fellow-citizens; should be quick-witted, intelligent, and observant; their fellow-citizens against criminals; should be exceptionally tactful; their fellow-citizens against the Government or any other authority; should have a unprejudiced mind; seek to work with the community

13. Choose the correct word.

1. The police in Britain enjoy a unique **advantage** / **disadvantage** over the police of almost every other country in the world.
2. The British **public** / **authority** respect and trust their policemen.
3. The police are civilians whose job is to protect and help their **government** / **fellow-citizens**.
4. The primary object of an efficient police is the **prevention** / **protection** of crime.
5. The next task is detection and **trouble** / **punishment** of offenders if crime is committed.
6. British policeman must do his work by tact and **persuasion** / **force**.
7. The **usefulness** / **uselessness** of the police depends on the ability of the constable on the beat or in the patrol car.
8. The primary **reason** / **object** of an efficient police is the prevention of crime.
9. The prevention of crime and the arrest of criminals primarily **depend** / **consist on** the efficiency of the Constable.
10. Efficiency of police work depends on the approval and co-operation of the **suspects** / **public**.
11. One of the key principles of modern policing in Britain is that the police **trust** / **seek** to work with the community.
12. The absence of crime will prove whether those efforts have been successful and whether the objects for which the police were appointed have been **attained** / **used**.
13. The ideal police officer should be quick-witted and **intelligent** / **modern**.
14. He should also have a wide knowledge of human nature, should be exceptionally **corruptible** / **tactful**.
15. Be tactful means the ability to **commit** / **deal with** all types and classes of people.

14. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms.

defend, brave, offenders, peace, detention, watchful, unlawfully, are assisted, clever, carry out, main (2), aim

1. The police in Britain enjoy a unique advantage over the police of almost every other country in the world because they are helped by the public they serve.
2. In Britain, the basic conception is that the police are civilians whose job is to protect and help their fellow-citizens.
3. The policeman can and should protect his fellow-citizens against criminals as well as against the Government or any other authority if the Government or that authority acts illegally.
4. It is on his efficiency that the prevention of crime and the arrest of criminals primarily depend.
5. The primary object of an efficient police is the prevention of crime; the next that of detection and punishment of offenders if crime is committed.

6. One of the key principles of modern policing in Britain is that the police seek to work with the community and as part of the community.
7. The ideal police officer should be quick-witted, intelligent, and observant.
8. He should also be courageous, strong, and incorruptible.
9. The fact that the policeman is discouraged from using force means that he must do his work by tact and persuasion.
10. The protection of life and property, the preservation of public tranquility, and the absence of crime, will prove whether those efforts have been successful.

15. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
	serving	
		protect
prevention		
	dependent	
		know
observation		
	cooperative	
		succeed
activity		
	appointed	

16. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).



In 1829, when Sir Robert Peel was Home Secretary, the first Metropolitan Police Act was **(0) pass**
passed

and the Police Force was (1) This new force replaced the local Watch in the London area but the City of London was not covered. The City of London Police, which was set up in 1839, remains an (2) ... force to this day. The (3) ... of the Metropolitan Police Force by Sir Robert Peel (4) ... on the 29th September 1829. On 20 July he (5) ... the establishment of a force of 895 constables, 88 sergeants, 20 inspectors and 8 superintendents. The principal duty of the police was crime (6) Peel's proposal that senior uniformed ranks should be filled from below and not brought in from the (7) ... social classes has been followed to this day. Peel himself said that he accepted low pay for the men as he

(1) establish

(2) depend

(3) inform

(4) occur

(5) approve

(6) prevent

(7) high

(8) ... not want any policeman feeling superior to the job or his (9)

(8) **do**
(9) **colleague**

17. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

The primary; respect and trust; trouble; co-operation; must do his work; the Government or that authority; public; should be; preservation; is discouraged; fellow-citizens; prevention; key principles; human nature

1. The police in Britain are helped by the ... they serve.
2. The British public ... their policemen.
3. The policeman can and should protect his ... against criminals.
4. The policeman should also protect his fellow-citizens against the Government or any other authority if ... acts illegally.
5. The policeman in Britain ... from using force.
6. The policeman ... by tact and persuasion.
7. It is to the constable that the citizen in ... first turns.
8. The ... of crime is the main task of the uniform police.
9. ... object of an efficient police is the prevention of crime.
10. The protection of life and property, the ... of public tranquility, and the absence of crime, will prove whether those efforts have been successful.
11. In attaining these objects, much depends on the approval and ... of the public.
12. One of the ... of modern policing in Britain is that the police seek to work with the community.
13. The ideal police officer ... quick-witted, intelligent, courageous and incorruptible.
14. The ideal police officer should have a wide knowledge of

18. Choose the correct modal verb.

1. Thinking that he **must** / **can** control himself, the suspect didn't say anything.
2. Police failed to apprehend suspects at the scene if crime, so they **can** / **had to** detect and locate them.
3. Police believe that the witness **can** / **have to** know the victim's name as they are neighbours.
4. Drivers as well as pedestrians **may** / **should** follow traffic regulations.
5. Crime laboratories **may** / **is to be** very helpful during an investigation.
6. One **should** / **cannot** call a suspect "a criminal" until the court's decision.
7. The trial **was to** / **has to** take place at the local court but then it was transferred to another one.
8. If there are some witnesses, each of them **may be** / **should be** interviewed alone.
9. Police believe that the victim **should** / **will be able** to identify the offender.
10. What problems **is** / **are** lawyers to deal with?

11. What **must** / **needn't** an investigator do for quick and accurate investigation of crime?
12. One of the drivers **didn't need** / **must** to be taken to hospital as he was not injured.
13. The witness **could** / **was able** to identify the suspect by photograph.
14. A policeman **should** / **can** be responsible and courageous.

19. Find in the text and translate sentences with Modal verbs.

20. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **British** / they / helped / the public / by / serve / are / police.
2. **The British** / and / respect / policemen / their / trust / public.
3. **The policeman** / against / as / protect / his / as / fellow-citizens / criminals / well / the Government / against / should.
4. **How** / policemen / do / must / work / their?
5. **The primary** / object / police / of an efficient / the prevention / is / of crime.
6. **The purpose** / police of is to the detect and of offenders punish if is crime committed.
7. **Police** investigate should crimes fairly incidents and, and objectively in a manner timely.
8. **Will** the absence crime of prove the police effectiveness of?
9. **The ideal** officer police quick-witted should be, and intelligent, observant.
10. **Policemen** courageous also, and strong, incorruptible be should.

21. Fill in: prevention of; uniform; acts; usefulness of; constable; patrol; be ready to act; arrest of; should be; respect and trust; enjoy; the main; human; using; protect and help; unprejudiced. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ...: advantage	9 ... crime
2 ... their fellow-citizens	10 ... criminals
3 ... their policemen	11 ... task
4 ... illegally	12 ... police
5 ... force	13 ... nature
6 ... the police	14 ... mind
7 ... on the beat	15 ... on his own initiative
8 ... car	16 ...ourageous, strong and incorruptible

22. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The police in Britain enjoy a unique advantage over the police of almost every other country in the world because
2. The police are civilians whose job is to protect and to help their fellow-citizens.

3. The policeman can and should protect his fellow-citizens against criminals as well
4. The fact that the policeman is discouraged from using force means
5. The usefulness of the police depends on the ability of the constable
6. The primary object of an efficient police is
7. Police should detect and punish offenders if
8. The purpose of the police is to investigate crimes and incidents
9. The absence of crime will prove
10. In their work police seek to work with
11. The ideal police officer should be
12. He should also be

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and Speaking

23. British police are always ready to help people in trouble and all who address them. Listen to the conversation between two people.

24. Read the questions, then go through the choices and choose the one that fits best to the conversation.



1. The conversation is between:
 - a) a pedestrian and a police officer
 - b) two pedestrians
 - c) two officers
2. The pedestrian is looking for:
 - a) a train station
 - b) a police station
 - c) the grand Hotel
3. The Grand Hotel is:
 - a) far from pedestrian's location
 - b) a few blocks from pedestrian's location
 - c) just across the street
4. The officer advises the pedestrian:
 - a) to take a bus
 - b) to cross the bridge
 - c) to go to the bus stop and the hotel will be near the bus stop

25. With a partner, act out the roles of a tourist and a police officer in Nevsky Prospect in Saint Petersburg. The tourist wants to get the Hermitage from the Kazan Cathedral; think of other situations.

You may need some more words:

- How can I get to...?
- Is it far from here?
- Can I work there?
- How long will it take me... ?
- (Bus) fare
- Have you got a city map?
- You can't miss it
- It's a magnificent building
- It's only ... blocks
- Cross the street (avenue)
- Go as far as...
- Take pedestrian underpass
- Take a number... bus
- Turn left (right)
- Go straight (ahead)
- It will be on your left (right).
- At (round) the corner
- It's about ... minutes walk from here

26. Watch a video and be ready to do the tasks.

Before watching the video, try to remember the following words and word combinations:

apply	обращаться, подавать заявление
be delighted	радоваться
be integral	являться неотъемлемой частью
important	важный
knock on the door	стучать в дверь
neighbourhood	район, прилегающая территория
community Police Community Support Officer (PCSO)	общество полицейский, работающий с населением
recruit	набирать, вербовать
resident	житель
value	ценность, значение
visible	видимый
vital	жизненно важный
warranted powers	гарантированные законом полномочия

Note:

Sussex [*'sʌks*] — Суссекс (или Сассекс) — историческое графство Юго-Восточной Англии

27. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the video.

1. Residents of Sussex say that what is important to them is:
 - a) absence of police cars in the streets
 - b) apprehending criminals
 - c) effective and visible policing
2. Police Community Support Officers:
 - a) have warranted powers
 - b) don't have warranted powers
 - c) can make arrests
3. Police Community Support Officers' work deals with:
 - a) walking the beat, talking to residents, businesses and organizations
 - b) going to courts
 - c) investigating serious crimes
4. Sussex citizens:
 - a) are not delighted that more PCSOs will be recruited
 - b) think that there are too many PCSOs in the county
 - c) value their local police and know the names of their PCSOs

28. With a partner, act out the roles below based on the video.

Cadet A is a Sussex resident.

Cadet B is a reporter asking a Sussex resident about the work of PCSOs.

Use such language as:

- Sussex Police
- Recruit 60 PCSOs
- Are PCSOs really important?
- What powers ...?
- What do PCSOs do?
- Effective and visible policing
- Don't have warranted powers
- Don't make arrests
- Neighbourhood policing
- Communities
- Walking the beat
- Knocking on doors
- Talking to residents (businesses, organizations)
- A vital part of policing

29. Match the questions on the text to their answers.

1	Why do British police enjoy advantage over the police of any other country of the world?	a	The policeman must do his work by tact and persuasion
2	Why do the British people help their police?	b	The prevention of crime is the main task of the uniform police
3	What is the main conception	c	British police enjoy a unique

	dealing with police in Britain?		advantage over the police of almost every other country in the world because they are helped by the public they serve
4	Who does British policeman protect his fellow-citizens from?	d	The citizen in trouble first turns to a constable on beat
5	How must the policeman do his work?	e	The basic conception is that the police are civilians whose job is to protect and help their fellow-citizens
6	What does the usefulness of the police depend on?	f	The usefulness of the police depends on the ability of the constable on the beat or in the patrol car
7	Who does the citizen in trouble turn to?	g	It is on efficiency of a constable that the prevention of crime and the arrest of criminals primarily depend
8	What is the task of the uniform police?	h	The British people help their police because they respect and trust their police
9	Who does the prevention of crime and the arrest of a criminal primarily depend on?	i	The policeman can and should protect his fellow-citizens against criminals as well as against the Government or any other authority if the Government or that authority acts illegally
10	What should the ideal policeman be like?	j	The ideal police officer should be quick-witted, intelligent, observant, should be exceptionally tactful, should have an unprejudiced mind; should be always ready to act on his own initiative; should also be courageous, strong, and incorruptible

30. With a partner, act out the roles below based on task 29.

Cadet A is a British policeman.

Cadet B is a French Policeman who wants to know more about British Police.

Use the necessary language from the previous task.

31. Make notes under the following headings. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Advantage of British police over police forces of other countries.
- Protection of citizens.
- Discouragement from using force.
- Usefulness of the police.
- Ideal police officer.

32. Speak on British Police.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The police in Britain enjoy a unique advantage over the police of almost every other country in the world because they ... by the public they serve.
 - a) protect
 - b) are helped
 - c) defend
2. The basic conception is that the police are ... whose job is to protect and to help their fellow-citizens.
 - a) civilians
 - b) constables
 - c) guardians
3. The fact that the policeman is ... from using force means that he must do his work by tact and persuasion.
 - a) prevented
 - b) encouraged
 - c) discouraged
4. The primary object of an efficient police is the ... of crime.
 - a) fighting
 - b) prevention
 - c) combating
5. The ... police officer should be quick-witted, intelligent, and observant.
 - a) civil
 - b) new
 - c) ideal

2. **Fill in:** with the community; of the police; their fellow-citizens; mind; conception; crime; public tranquility; advantage; the public; using force.

- 1 a unique ...
- 2 basic ...
- 3 protect and to help ...
- 4 is discouraged from ...
- 5 the usefulness ...
- 6 prevention of ...
- 7 preservation of ...
- 8 co-operation of ...
- 9 police seek to work ...
- 10 unprejudiced ...

3. Choose the correct modal word.

1. The policeman **can / are to** and **should / have** to protect his fellow-citizens against criminals as well as against the Government.
2. The fact that the policeman is discouraged from using force means that he **must / can** do his work by tact and persuasion.
3. Classes at our university **are to / can** begin at 9 a.m.

4. Our cadets **can** / **have to** wear a uniform.
5. The ideal police officer **should** / **may be** exceptionally tactful, which means the ability to deal with all types and classes of people.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the box.

key; depends on; initiative; co-operation; respect

1. The British public ... and trust their policemen.
2. The usefulness of the police ... the ability of the constable on the beat or in the patrol car.
3. Much depends on the approval and ... of the public.
4. One of the ... principles of modern policing in Britain is that the police seek to work with the community.
5. The ideal police officer should be always ready to act on his own

5. Choose the correct answer according to the text “The Best Police in the World” (Reading 2).

1. Why do the police in Britain enjoy a unique advantage over the police of almost every other country in the world?
 - a) The police in Britain enjoy a unique advantage over the police of almost every other country in the world because they are polite with the public.
 - b) The reason for this is that they are helped by the public they serve.
 - c) The police in Britain enjoy this advantage because they act according to the law.
2. Who should the policeman protect his fellow-citizens against?
 - a) The policeman should protect his fellow-citizens against enemies.
 - b) The policeman should protect his fellow-citizens against criminals.
 - c) The policeman can and should protect his fellow-citizens against criminals as well as against the Government or any other authority if the Government or that authority acts illegally.
3. What does the usefulness of the police depend on?
 - a) The usefulness of the police depends on the ability of the constable on the beat or in the patrol car.
 - b) The usefulness of the police depends on police experience.
 - c) The usefulness of the police depends on the number of policemen.
4. What is the primary object of an efficient police?
 - a) The primary object of an efficient police is punishment of offenders.
 - b) The primary object of an efficient police is the prevention of crime.
 - c) The primary object of an efficient police is traffic control.
5. What will prove whether police efforts have been successful and aims have been attained?
 - a) Police authority rewards will prove whether police efforts have been successful and aims have been attained.
 - b) Salary increase will prove whether police efforts have been successful and aims have been attained.
 - c) The protection of life and property, the preservation of public tranquility, and the absence of crime will prove whether police efforts have been successful and aims have been attained.

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN THE USA

Part A

Lead-in

- You are going to read a text about law enforcement agencies in the USA. What do you know about the composition of the US police?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Law Enforcement Agencies in the USA

Most of the USA police agencies at the national, state, county, and municipal levels are responsible for carrying out four functions:

(1) enforcing the law, (2) maintaining order, (3) preventing crime, and (4) providing services to the community.

The FBI

The Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) is an investigative agency within the U.S. Justice Department with the power to investigate all federal crimes not placed under the jurisdiction of other agencies. Established as Bureau of Investigation in 1908, it came to national prominence under J. Edgar Hoover, his direction from 1924 until his death in 1972. Hoover made major changes in the bureau (renamed the Federal



Bureau of Investigation in 1935) to increase its professionalism. Although Hoover was criticized for many things, such as FBI spying on civil rights and antiwar activities during the 1960s, his role in improving police and FBI's effectiveness is widely recognized. The FBI now places greater emphasis on five areas: white-collar crime, organized crime, terrorism, foreign intelligence operations in the United States, and political corruption. The Bureau provides valuable assistance to state and local law enforcement through its crime laboratory, training programs, and databases of fingerprints, stolen vehicles, and missing persons. The United States is a nation of small police forces, each of which is authorized, funded and operated within the limits of its own jurisdiction. This is in direct contrast to the centralized police forces found in many other countries. Because of fragmentation of police agencies in the United States, each jurisdiction develops its own enforcement goals and policies.

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

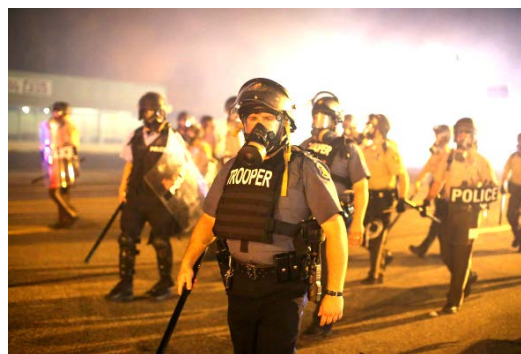
1. The US police agencies at the national, state, county and municipal levels are responsible for:
 - a) maintaining order
 - b) providing services to the community
 - c) enforcing the law, maintaining order, preventing crime, and providing services to the community
2. The Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) is an investigative agency within the U.S. Justice Department with the power:
 - a) to investigate specific crimes defined by Congress
 - b) to investigate all types of crime
 - c) to investigate all federal crimes not placed under the jurisdiction of other agencies
3. Major changes made by Hoover were aimed at:
 - a) renaming the agency the Federal Bureau of Investigation
 - b) increasing professionalism
 - c) spying on civil rights and antiwar activities
4. The FBI now places greater emphasis on five areas:
 - a) regulate traffic on main highways, perform general police duties, assist county police agencies
 - b) white-collar crime, organized crime, terrorism, foreign intelligence operations in the United States, and political corruption
 - c) burglary, shoplifting, theft, speeding, robbery
5. The US police consist of:
 - a) small police forces
 - b) is the oldest police in the world
 - c) employ only sworn officers

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do the tasks after the text.

Police Functions

The police are expected to maintain order, enforce the law, and prevent crime. However, they perform other tasks as well, many of them have little to do with crime and justice and more to do with community service. They direct traffic, handle **accidents** and illnesses, stop noisy parties, find **missing** persons provide **ambulance** services, take disturbed people into protective custody, and so on.



According to the American Bar Association, the list of police goals and functions includes the following:

- Prevent and control conduct considered threatening to life and property (serious crime).
- Aid people who are in danger of harm.
- Protect constitutional rights.
- Facilitate the movement of people and vehicles.
- Aid those who cannot care for themselves: the drunk or **addicted**, the mentally ill, the disabled, the old, and the young.
- Resolve conflict whether between individuals, groups of individuals, or individuals and government.
- Identify the problems that could become more serious for the citizen, for the police, for the government.
- Create the feeling of security in the community.

The functions of the police can be classified into three groups:

- order maintenance
- law enforcement
- service

Order Maintenance

The order maintenance function is to prevent behavior that either disturbs or threatens to disturb the peace or involves the face-to-face conflict among two or more people. A domestic quarrel, a noisy drunk, loud music in the night, a beggar on the street — all are forms of disorder that may require action by the police. Order maintenance requires officers to decide not only whether a law has been broken but also whether any action should be taken and, if so, who should be blamed. Patrol officers deal mainly with behavior that either disturbs or threatens to disturb the peace. Officers often must make judgments in order maintenance situations. They may be required to help people in trouble, manage crowds, supervise various kinds of services, and help people who are not very accountable for what they do.

The officers have a high degree of **discretion** and control over how such situations will develop. They have the power to arrest, but they also may decide not to make an arrest. The patrol officer is normally expected to “handle” a situation rather than to enforce the law. Police officers must make decisions fairly and within the boundaries of their authority.

Law Enforcement

The law enforcement function applies to the situations in which the law has been violated and the offender needs to be identified or located and then apprehended. Police officers who focus on law enforcement serve in specialized branches. Although the patrol officer may be the first officer at the scene of crime, in serious cases a **detective** usually prepares the case for **prosecution** by bringing together all the evidence for the prosecuting attorney. When the offender is identified but not located, the detective conducts the search. If the offender is not identified, the detective must analyze clues to find out who committed a crime.

Service

Police perform a broad range of services, especially for lower-income citizens, that are not related to crime. This service function — providing first aid, rescuing animals, helping disoriented, and so on — has become a major police function. Crime prevention has also become a major component of police services to the community. Through education and community organizing, the police can help the public take steps to prevent crime. Research has shown how important the service function is to the community. Because the police are available 24 hours a day, people turn to them in times of trouble. Many departments provide information, operate ambulance services, locate missing persons, check locks on vacationers' homes, and intervene in suicide attempts.



Through the service function, officers gain knowledge about the community, and citizens come to trust the police. Checking the security of buildings clearly helps prevent crime, but other activities — dealing with runaways, drunks and public quarrels — may help solve problems before they lead to criminal behavior.

Study Skills

4. Learn the vocabulary.

according to <i>prep</i>	в соответствии с
accountable <i>a</i>	ответственный
ambulance <i>n</i>	скорая помощь
apply <i>v</i>	применять
association <i>n</i>	общество, ассоциация
attempt <i>n</i>	попытка
attorney <i>n</i>	атторней, поверенный, юрист
prosecuting attorney	обвинитель
available <i>a</i>	доступный
bailiff <i>n</i>	судебный пристав
Bar Association	коллегия адвокатов
beggar <i>n</i>	нищий
blame <i>n, v</i>	вина, винить
clue <i>n</i>	ключ к разгадке
conduct <i>v</i>	проводить
crowd <i>n</i>	толпа
custody <i>n</i>	опека, хранение, арест
disabled <i>a</i>	искалеченный, инвалид
discretion <i>n</i>	благоразумие, осторожность
disturb <i>v</i>	нарушать, тревожить
disturbed <i>a</i>	взволнованный, обеспокоенный,

	встревоженный
education <i>n</i>	образование
expect <i>v</i>	ожидать
facilitate <i>v</i>	облегчать
fairly <i>adv</i>	честно, справедливо
find out <i>v</i>	выяснять
gain <i>v</i>	приобретать
goal <i>n</i>	цель
handle <i>v</i>	управлять, рассматривать, обращаться с; справляться
have to do with income <i>n</i>	иметь отношение к доход
maintain <i>v</i>	поддерживать, сохранять
missing <i>a</i>	пропавший без вести
noisy <i>a</i>	шумный
prevent <i>v</i>	предотвращать
prosecution <i>n</i>	судебное преследование
provide <i>v</i>	снабжать, обеспечивать
quarrel <i>n</i>	ссора
require <i>v</i>	требовать(ся)
research <i>n, v</i>	исследование, исследовать
resolve <i>v</i>	решать
threaten <i>v</i>	угрожать
turn to <i>v</i>	обращаться к
violate <i>v</i>	нарушать

5. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 threaten	a применять
2 facilitate	b цель
3 disabled	c пропавший без вести
4 resolve	d доступный
5 require	e справедливо
6 crowd	f охрана, взятие под стражу
7 accountable	g угрожать
8 discretion	h толпа
9 fairly	i благоразумие
10 apply	j требовать(ся)
11 available	k искалеченный, инвалид
12 attempt	l ответственный
13 missing	m попытка
14 custody	n облегчать
15 goal	o решать

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	решать проблемы до того, как они приведут к криминальному поведению	a	find missing persons
2	предотвращать и контролировать поведение, которое считается угрожающим	b	provide ambulance services
3	иметь мало общего с преступностью	c	have a high degree of discretion
4	справляться с несчастными случаями и болезнями	d	“handle” a situation rather than to enforce the law
5	находить пропавших без вести людей	e	solve problems before they lead to criminal behavior
6	граждане начинают доверять полиции	f	must analyze clues to find out who committed a crime
7	обеспечивают оказание скорой помощи	g	prevent and control conduct considered threatening
8	брать взволнованных людей под охрану (защиту)	h	make judgments
9	создавать чувство безопасности в обществе	i	officers gain knowledge about the community
10	принимать решения	j	take disturbed people into protective custody
11	помогать тем, кто не может позаботиться о себе	k	aid those who cannot care for themselves
12	обладать высокой степенью благоразумия	l	have little to do with crime
13	разрешить ситуацию, а не применять закон	m	handle accidents and illnesses
14	должен проанализировать улики, чтобы узнать, кто совершил преступление	n	citizen come to trust the police
15	полицейские получают знания об обществе	o	create the feeling of security in the community

7. Match the antonyms.

1	identified	a	maintain
2	protect	b	insecurity
3	create	c	prosecute
4	security	d	release
5	gain	e	ruin
6	violate (the law)	f	safety

7	danger
8	more
9	high
10	arrest

g	low
h	unidentified
i	lose
j	less

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Expect; maintain order; as well; have nothing to do with; community service, stop noisy parties; find missing persons; American Bar Association; the list of police goals and functions; conduct, threatening to life; require action by the police; threaten; who should be blamed; disturb the peace, aid people who are in danger of harm; protect constitutional rights; facilitate the movement of people and vehicles; aid those who cannot care for themselves; the drunk or addicted; the disabled; the mentally ill; resolve conflict whether between individuals or groups of individuals; make judgments; whether the law has been violated; prosecution; the prosecuting attorney; clue; a broad range of services; take steps to prevent crime; police are available 24 hours a day; intervene in suicide attempts; gain knowledge.

b) Обеспечивать скорую медицинскую помощь; брать под охрану встревоженных людей, помогать тем, кто не может позаботиться о себе; разрешать (устранять) конфликты; ссора в семье; поддержание порядка требует от офицера решить; нужно ли предпринимать какие-либо действия; принимать решения честно в пределах своих полномочий; первый, кто прибывает на место преступления; граждане с более низкими доходами; которые не относятся к преступности; начинать доверять полиции.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1) Предполагают, что полиция обеспечивает порядок, применяет закон и предупреждает преступления.

2) Однако полицейские выполняют также другие задачи, которые имеют мало общего с преступностью и правосудием, а больше относятся к оказанию услуг населению.

3) В соответствии с Американской Коллегией Адвокатов, список целей и функций полиции включает следующее:

- Предотвращать и контролировать поведение, которое считается угрожающим жизни и собственности
- Помогать людям, которым грозит опасность причинения вреда
- Облегчать движение людей и транспортных средств
- Помогать тем, кто не может позаботиться о себе
- Разрешать конфликты либо между отдельными людьми, либо...
- Создавать чувство безопасности в обществе

4) Функция поддержания порядка — это предотвращение поведения, которое нарушает или угрожает нарушить спокойствие, или влечет за собой конфликт лицом к лицу между двумя или более людьми.

5) Офицеры часто должны принимать решения во время поддержания порядка.

6) (Они) обладают высокой степенью благоразумия и контролируют, как такие ситуации будут развиваться в дальнейшем.

7) Офицеры полиции должны принимать решения честно и в пределах своих полномочий.

8) Правоприменительная функция относится к ситуациям, в которых был нарушен закон, и правонарушителя необходимо опознать, определить место нахождения, а затем арестовать.

9) Предупреждение преступности также стало главным компонентом работы с обществом.

10) Осуществляя служебную функцию, полицейские получают знания об обществе, а граждане начинают доверять полиции.

10. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 the freedom to act or think as one wishes within legal rights; a court's freedom to decide a sentence, etc.
- 2 the carrying on of legal proceedings against a person
- 3 not yet traced or confirmed as alive but not known to be dead
- 4 a vehicle specially equipped for conveying the sick or injured to and from hospital, esp. in emergencies
- 5 a person, especially a member of police force, employed to investigate crimes
- 6 dependent on as a habit, unable to do without
- 7 an unfortunate event, esp. one causing physical harm or damage

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the followings:

**Police goal is to
The service function deals with**

prevent and control conduct considered threatening to life and property; helping disoriented; protect constitutional rights; providing first aid; facilitate the movement of people and vehicles; resolve conflicts; checking locks on vacationers' homes; create the feeling of security in the community; locating missing persons; rescuing animals; dealing with runaways; aid people who are in danger of harm; aid those who cannot care for themselves; checking the security of buildings

12. Choose the correct word.

1. The police also direct traffic, **solve / handle** accidents, find missing persons.

2. Police should control **conduct / people** considered to be threatening to life or property.

3. The **work / functions** of the police can be classified into three groups.

4. The order maintenance function is *to stop / prevent* behavior that threatens to disturb peace or people.
5. Officers often must make *judgments / agreements* in order maintenance situations.
6. The law enforcement function applies to the situations in which the law has been *enforced / violated* and the offender needs to be identified.
7. Police perform a broad range of *services / investigations*.
8. If the offender is not identified, the *detective / judge* must analyze clues to find out who committed a crime.
9. Crime prevention has also become a major component of police services to the *community / society*.
10. Because the police are available 24 hours a day, people *call / turn* to them in times of trouble.
11. *Research / investigation* has shown how important the service function is to the community.
12. Through the service function, officers gain knowledge about the *suspects / community*.

13. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

keep, deal with, behavior, help, solve, decisions, broken, safety, wide, connected, interfere, supply

1. Police perform a broad range of services, especially for lower-income citizens, that are not related to crime.
2. Many departments provide information, operate ambulance services, locate missing persons, check locks on vacationers' homes, and intervene in suicide attempts.
3. The police are expected to maintain order, enforce the law, and prevent crime.
4. They direct traffic, handle accidents and illnesses, stop noisy parties, find missing persons.
5. Police prevent and control conduct considered threatening to life and property.
6. They aid people who are in danger of harm.
7. Police also resolve conflict whether between individuals of individuals, or individuals and government.
8. By their presence police can create the feeling of security in the community.
9. Officers often must make judgments in order maintenance situations.
10. The law enforcement function applies to the situations in which the law has been violated and the offender needs to be identified or located and then apprehended.

14. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
disturbance	regulated	protect
threat	expected	identify
decision	required	prosecute
appliance	prepared	enforce
prevention		

15. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The United States of America has a federal system of **government** with separate (1) ... and state structures,

(0) **govern**
(1) **nation**

each with authority over certain functions. Federal law (2) ... agencies are part of the (3) ... branch of the

(2) **enforce**
(3) **execute**

national government. They investigate a specific set of crimes (4) ... by Congress. The Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) is an (5) ... agency within the U.S. Justice Department. The Bureau (6) ...

(4) **define**
(5) **investigate**
(6) **provide**

(7) ... assistance to state and local law enforcement.

(7) **value**
(8) **city**

The police departments of (8) ... and towns have general law enforcement authority. City police forces range in size from (9) ... than 40,000 full-time (10) ... officers in the New York City Police Department to only one sworn officer in 1,657 small (11)

(9) **many**
(10) **swear**
(11) **town**

16. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

the case; security; manage; action; to arrest; prevent; to enforce; criminal; to maintain; fairly; major; the service

1. The police are expected to ... order, enforce the law, and prevent crime.

2. The patrol officer is normally expected to “handle” a situation rather than ...the law.
3. Police officers must make decisions ... and within the boundaries of their authority.
4. They may be required to help people in trouble, ... crowds, and supervise various kinds of services.
5. The service function — providing first aid, rescuing animals, helping disoriented — has become a ... police function.
6. Research has shown how important ... function is to the community.
7. A domestic quarrel may require ... by the police.
8. Checking the security of buildings clearly helps ... crime.
9. Police should create the feeling of ... in the community.
10. But other activities — dealing with runaways, drunks and public quarrels — may help solve problems before they lead to ... behavior.
11. They have the power ... but they also may decide not to make an arrest.
12. A detective usually prepares ... for prosecution.

17. Choose the correct item.

1. Witnesses say they haven’t their neighbor **since** / **for** last week.
2. **Has** / **have** the investigator interviewed the suspect yet?
3. Police have already identified suspects but they **haven’t** / **hadn’t** located them yet.
4. The judge has **just** / **yet** read the verdict.
5. Has any crime **been** / **was** reported today?
6. Two burglars **had escaped** / **have escaped** through the window before police arrived.
7. The suspect claims he **hasn’t** / **hadn’t** committed crimes since he left prison.
8. A burglary **has just reported** / **has just been reported**.
9. They **have been** / **will have been** in prison for two years.
10. Police **has** / **have** already apprehended the suspect.
11. Organised crime **has become** / **had become** a big problem nowadays.
12. The rights of defendants **have been** / **has been** expanded.
13. A judge **has been found** / **has found** him guilty of manslaughter in the fatal shooting of his girlfriend, who he mistook for an intruder.
14. Oscar **has been found guilty** / **has found guilty** of manslaughter for killing his girlfriend.
15. All police departments **have equipped** / **have been equipped** with computers which help policemen to process information.
16. An investigator **had taken** / **have taken** disturbed witnesses or victims into protective custody.
17. Witnesses **have been able** / **has been able** to identify a suspect by photograph.
18. Police **has facilitated** / **have facilitated** the movement of people and vehicles.

18. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **The police** / expected / are / maintain / to / order / enforce / the law, / crime / prevent / and.
2. **They** / persons / traffic, / direct / accidents / handle / illnesses, / and / stop / parties, / noisy / missing / find.
3. **Police** / aid / harm / who / in / are / danger of / people.
4. **Policemen** / community / of security / create / the feeling / in / the.
5. **They** / also / aid / themselves / those / for / cannot / care / who.
6. **The police** / available / a day / are / hours / 24.
7. **Officers** / often / situations order / must / make / in / judgments / maintenance.
8. **The officers** / of discretion / degree / a high have.
9. **Police** / must / officers / fairly / decisions / make / and / the boundaries / of authority / their / within.
10. **The service** / to / is / the important / function / community.
11. **Checking** / prevent / crime / of buildings / helps / the security.
12. **A detective** / prosecution / prepares / the case / usually / for.
13. **Through** / function, / the service / gain / officers / about / knowledge / the community.

19. Fill in: an arrest, attorney, conflict, the law, accidents, steps, a situation, action by the police, service, first aid, the police, traffic, people, behavior, order, missing persons, 24 hours a day, crime, noisy parties, goals and functions. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1	maintain ...	11	resolve ...
2	enforce ...	12	require ...
3	prevent ...	13	make ...
4	community ...	14	"handle" ...
5	direct ...	15	providing ...
6	handle ...	16	prosecuting ...
7	stop ...	17	take ...
8	find ...	18	are available ...
9	disturbed ...	19	trust ...
10	police ...	20	criminal ...

20. Complete the sentences according to the text.

- The main functions of the police are:
- Police perform many other tasks as well:
- The functions of the police can be classified
- Order maintenance function is to prevent
- Order maintenance requires officers to decide
- In order maintenance situations officers may be required
- The officers have a high degree of

- Police officers must make decisions
- Police perform a broad range of services, especially
- Crime prevention has also become
- Research has shown
- Through the service function, officers

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL LANGUAGE

Watching a Video and Speaking

21. Watch the video “Police Patrol Officer Job Overview” and be ready to do the tasks.

1. Before watching the video:

a) Revise the vocabulary.

cop on the beat	helping a lost child
police department policy	are better trained and equipped than
on foot	great responsibility
on wheels	every incident must be written in detail
on horseback	serve and protect
enforcing traffic laws	

b) Learn the vocabulary:

backbone	основа
mainstay	главная опора
for decades	на протяжении десятилетий
predecessor	предшественник
be alert	быть бдительным
any threat to public safety	любая угроза общественной безопасности
responding to highly dangerous situation	реагирование на чрезвычайно опасную ситуацию
are licensed to carry guns	имеют разрешение на ношение оружия
must pass vigorous academic and psychological exams	должны сдать серьезный академический и психологический экзамен
life threatening situations	ситуации, угрожающие жизни
stay calm	оставаться спокойным
think clearly	ясно мыслить
judgement	суждение, судебное решение, рассудительность
make good on the spot judgements	быстро принимать правильные решения
exciting	волнующий, захватывающий
police job is more routine	полицейская работа более рутинная

require patience and paper work	требует терпения и бумажной работы (оформления документов)
reports are used in legal actions and investigations	отчеты используются в судебных процессах и расследованиях
are basis for officer's testimony in court	являются основой для показания полицейского в суде
officers are expected to be physically fit	полагают, что офицеры должны быть в хорошей физической форме
applicant	претендент, кандидат
must be drug-free	не употребляющий наркотики
have no felony conviction on their record	без уголовного прошлого
high school diploma is required	требуется документ об образовании средней школы (гимназии)
college degree is preferable	высшее образование предпочтительно
are true public servants	истинные слуги обществу
conscientiously	добросовестно
courageously	отважно, храбро

2. After watching the video:

Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the video.

- A police patrol officer is:
 - a member of the Criminal Investigation Department
 - the backbone of law enforcement
 - a police school graduate
- Patrol officers carry out their duties:
 - in police stations
 - 5 days a week
 - on foot, on wheels, on horseback
- The job of a patrol officer:
 - deals with enforcing traffic laws, helping a lost child, responding highly dangerous situations
 - is interesting and exciting
 - is not very important
- Almost most of police work requires^
 - uniformed officers
 - a lot of personnel
 - patience and paper work
- Officers are expected:
 - to be physically fit
 - to be well-paid
 - to work full time
- Applicants generally must:
 - be drug-free and have no felony conviction on their record

- b) be 21 years old
- c) have college degree

7. Police patrol officers are true public servants who:

- a) spend 24 hours in cars
- b) conscientiously and courageously serve and protect
- c) work hard

22. With a partner, work out the roles based on tasks 3 and 4. Then switched the roles.

Cadet A is a PSO

Cadet B is a citizen who violated an ordinance.

Use such language as:

Cadet A:

- How can officers patrol ...?
- What duties can ...?
- What is the job...?
- Are patrol officers allowed to ...?
- How should they behave ...?
- What does routine work mean?
- Where are police reports ...?
- What are the requirements to ...?
- Why are patrol officers called ...?

Cadet B:

- backbone
- cop on the beat
- on foot, on wheels, on horseback
- be alert
- any threat to public safety
- enforcing traffic laws
- helping a lost child
- are licensed to carry guns
- responding to highly dangerous situation
- stay calm and think clearly
- require patience and paper work
- reports are used in legal actions and investigations
- are basis for officer's testimony in court
- officers are expected to be physically fit
- applicant must be drug-free
- have no felony conviction on their record
- college degree is preferable
- are true public servants
- serve and protect



23. Match the questions on the text to their answers.

1	What are the police expected to do?	a	It came to national prominence under J. Edgar Hoover, his direction from 1924 until his death in 1972
2	What tasks that have little to do with crime and justice do police perform?	b	The patrol officer is normally expected to "handle" a situation rather than to enforce the law
3	How can the functions of the police be classified?	c	They have the power to arrest, but they also may decide not to make an arrest
4	What is order maintenance?	d	Crime prevention has become a major component of police services to the community
5	What does order maintenance require officers to do?	e	Through the service function, officers gain knowledge about the community, and citizen come to trust the police
6	What power do police officers have which they sometime try not to use?	f	When the offender is identified but not located, the detective conducts the search
7	What situations does the law enforcement deal with?	g	However, they perform other tasks as well, many of them have little to do with crime and justice and more to do with community service
8	What is the role of a patrol officer?	h	The law enforcement function applies to the situations in which the law has been violated and the offender needs to be identified or located and then apprehended
9	What should the detective do when the offender is identified but not located?	i	Through education and community organizing, the police can help the public take steps to prevent crime
10	What is the main service function?	j	The functions of the police can be classified into three groups: order maintenance; law enforcement; service
11	What is the purpose of educating and organizing community?	k	The police are expected to maintain order, enforce the law, and prevent crime
12	What helps people come to trust the police?	l	Order maintenance requires officers to decide not only whether a law has been broken but whether any action should be taken and, if so, who should be blamed

24. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 23.

Cadet A: You are a Russian policeman. Ask Cadet B about the work of the US police.

Cadet B: You are the US police officer. Answer cadet's A questions.

Use the language from task 23.

25. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Main functions of the US police
- Other important police functions
- Three groups of police functions:
 - Order maintenance
 - Law enforcement
 - Service

26. Speak on the US police functions.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The police are expected to ... order, enforce the law, and prevent crime.
 - a) protect
 - b) maintain
 - c) fight
2. The order maintenance function is to prevent ... that either disturbs or threatens to disturb the peace.
 - a) crime
 - b) situation
 - c) behavior
3. Police officers must make ... fairly and within the boundaries of their authority.
 - a) decisions
 - b) solutions
 - c) records
4. If the offender is not identified, the detective must analyze ... to find out who committed a crime.
 - a) the area
 - b) clues
 - c) the scene
5. Because the police are... 24 hours a day, people turn to them in times of trouble.
 - a) important
 - b) necessary
 - c) available

2. Fill in: life and property; missing persons; the law; fairly; enforcement; security; ambulance services; order; service; conflict.

- 1 maintain ...
- 2 enforce ...
- 3 community ...
- 4 find ...
- 5 provide ...
- 6 threatening to ...
- 7 resolve ...
- 8 create the feeling of ...
- 9 make decisions ...
- 10 law ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. Organised crime **has become / had become** a big problem nowadays.
2. Research **has shown / have shown** how important the service function is to the community.
3. The offenders had **apprehended / had been apprehended** before they could leave the city.
4. Two witnesses **has already given / have already given** evidence on the case.
5. Have you **ever / never** seen this man before?

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s).

1. Police ... other tasks as well, many of them have little to do with crime and justice and more to do with community service.
2. Patrol officers deal mainly with behavior that either disturbs or ... to disturb the peace.
3. Although the patrol officer may be the first officer at the scene of crime, in serious cases a detective usually prepares the case for
4. Police perform a broad range of services, especially for lower-income citizens, that are not ... crime.
5. Through the service function, officers gain ... about the community and citizen come to trust the police.

5. Choose the correct answer.

1. How can the functions of the police be classified?
 - a) The functions of the police can be classified into two groups:
 - order maintenance
 - law enforcement
 - b) The functions of the police can be classified into three groups:
 - order maintenance
 - law enforcement
 - service

c) The functions of the police can be classified into three groups:

- service
- law enforcement
- crime prevention

2. What does order maintenance require officers to do?

a) Order maintenance requires officers to decide not only whether a law has been broken but also whether any action should be taken and, if so, who should be blamed

b) Order maintenance function requires officers to maintain law and order

c) Order maintenance requires officers to obey the law

3. How must police officers make their decisions?

a) Police officers must make their decisions according to their guidelines

b) Police officers must make decisions fairly and within the boundaries of their authority

c) They must make their decisions very quickly

4. What situations does the law enforcement function apply to?

a) The law enforcement function applies to the situations dealing with punishment of offenders

b) The law enforcement function applies to the situations of crime prevention

c) The law enforcement function applies to the situations in which the law has been violated and the offender needs to be identified or located and then apprehended

5. How can the service function influence the relationship between the police and the community?

a) Through the service function policemen educate the community on crime prevention

b) Through the service function officers gain knowledge about the community, and citizen come to trust the police

c) Through the service function officers gain knowledge about citizens' problems

Lead-in

- You are going to read a text about the FBI.
- What do you know about the FBI?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

The FBI

The Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) is an investigative agency within the U.S. Justice Department with the power to investigate all federal crimes not placed

Under the jurisdiction of other agencies. Established as Bureau of Investigation in 1908, it came to national prominence under J. Edgar Hoover, his direction from 1924 until his death in 1972. Hoover made major changes in the bureau (renamed the Federal Bureau of Investigation in 1935) to increase its professionalism.

Although Hoover was criticized for many things, such as FBI spying on civil rights and antiwar activities during the 1960s, his role in improving police and FBI's effectiveness is widely recognized.

The FBI now places greater emphasis on five areas: white-collar crime, organized crime, terrorism, foreign intelligence operations in the United States, and political corruption. The Bureau provides valuable assistance to state and local law enforcement through its crime laboratory, training programs, and databases of fingerprints, stolen vehicles, and missing persons.



Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The FBI is an investigative agency within the U.S. Justice Department with the power:
 - a) to maintain order
 - b) to investigate all federal crimes
 - c) to investigate all federal crimes not placed under the jurisdiction of other agencies
2. The FBI was established:
 - a) in 1919
 - b) in 1908
 - c) In 1935
3. Major changes made by Hoover were aimed at:

- a) renaming the agency the Federal Bureau of Investigation
 - b) increasing professionalism
 - c) spying on civil rights and antiwar activities
4. In 1935 Bureau of Investigation:
- a) was renamed the Federal Bureau of Investigation
 - b) didn't perform any law enforcement tasks
 - c) changed its Director
5. Hoover was criticized for:
- a) spying on civil rights and antiwar activities during the 1960s
 - b) investigating crimes
 - c) political corruption
6. The FBI deals mainly with:
- a) local crimes
 - b) white-collar crime, organized crime, terrorism, foreign intelligence operations in the United States, and political corruption
 - c) economic crimes
7. The FBI provides valuable assistance to state and local law enforcement through:
- a) small police forces
 - b) crime laboratory, training programs, and databases of fingerprints, stolen vehicles, and missing persons
 - c) intelligence operations

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do the tasks after the text.

US Police: Functions and Responsibilities

Even though we refer to the police as law enforcement officers, the enforcement of criminal law (in other words, investigating crime and apprehending criminals) is only one of several functions that the police perform. Police are to deal with numerous problems and all of them are of great importance. The functions of the American police include providing basic social services, maintaining order, and controlling crime. In the area of *social service*, the police help people who need **emergency** assistance, whether it is giving first aid or finding lost children. Typically, over 50 percent of the telephone calls to the police requesting assistance involve social **service** as compared with less than 20 percent relating to crime.



Among the *order — maintenance* activities are traffic control, crowd control, resolving domestic disputes. The focus of order maintenance is on handling situations to **preserve** the peace rather than enforcing the letter of the law. In the area of *crime control*, the police engage in a range of activities, such as **patrol** and criminal investigation.

Major responsibilities

The American Bar Association's *Standards Relating to the Urban Police Function* lists these responsibilities:

- To **identify** criminal offenders and criminal activity and, when appropriate, to apprehend offenders and participate in later court proceedings.
- To reduce the opportunities for the commission of some crimes through preventive patrol and other measures.
- To aid individuals who are in danger of physical harm.
- To protect constitutional guarantees.
- To facilitate the movement of people and vehicles.
- To assist those who cannot care for themselves.
- To resolve conflict.
- To identify potentially serious law enforcement or government problems.
- To create and maintain the feeling of security in the community.

Factors shaping police work

Several factors shape what the police do. Twenty-four hour availability broadens police contacts with the public. A **disadvantage** is that such availability gives police a heavy workload. **Discretion** leaves an imprint on all areas of policing. Examples of discretionary decision making include decisions involving arrests, traffic tickets, deadly force, and domestic abuse. The authority to use force includes the right to use deadly force, to arrest people, and to use physical force. Policemen routinely rely on their own experience, training, common sense, and judgment to make decisions involving the life and liberty of citizens.

Factors influencing discretionary decisions

The seriousness of the crime and the strength of the evidence affect an officer's decision to arrest. A suspect's demeanor also makes a difference. Police officers should possess great self-control and courage, shouldn't abuse their powers, especially their right to use coercive force.



Notes:

The police engage in a range of activities — Полиция участвует во множестве действий

A suspect's demeanor also makes a difference — Поведение подозреваемого также имеет значение

4. Learn the vocabulary.

abuse <i>n, v</i>	злоупотребление, злоупотреблять
act <i>v</i>	поступать, действовать
activity <i>n</i>	деятельность
aid <i>n</i> giving first aid	помощь оказывать первую помощь
among <i>prep</i>	среди, в числе
apprehending <i>n</i>	задерживать, арестовывать

appropriate <i>a</i>	надлежащий, соответствующий
assistance <i>n</i> emergency assistance request assistance	помощь экстренная помощь обращаться за помощью
availability <i>n</i>	доступность
broaden <i>v</i>	расширять
care for <i>v</i>	заботиться
compare <i>v</i>	сравнивать
control <i>n</i>	контроль, регулирование, сдерживание
crowd <i>n</i>	толпа, скопление людей
danger <i>n</i>	опасность
decision <i>n</i> make decisions decision making	решение принять решение принятие решения
demeanor <i>n</i>	поведение
discretion <i>n</i>	усмотрение, свобода действий; благоразумие
domestic <i>a</i>	домашний, бытовой
experience <i>n</i>	опыт
facilitate <i>v</i>	облегчать
force <i>n, v</i> deadly force coercive force	сила, принуждение, полиция; заставлять, принуждать смертоносное насилие принудительная сила
handle <i>v</i>	рассматривать, регулировать
harm <i>n</i>	вред
identify <i>v</i>	опознавать
imprint <i>n</i>	отпечаток
influence <i>n, v</i>	влияние, влиять
judgment <i>n</i>	суждение
law <i>n</i> law enforcement enforce the letter of the law	закон, право правоприменение применять букву закона
liberty <i>n</i>	свобода
lose (lost, lost) <i>v</i>	терять
maintain <i>v</i> maintain order	поддерживать, сохранять поддерживать порядок
major <i>a</i>	главный, основной
measure <i>n</i>	мера, мероприятие
offender <i>n</i>	правонарушитель, преступник
opportunity <i>n</i>	возможность
participate <i>v</i>	принимать участие
preserve <i>v</i>	сохранять
proceedings <i>n(pl)</i> court proceedings	судебное преследование, иск рассмотрение дела в суде

protect v	защищать
provide v provide basic social services	обеспечивать, предусматривать предоставлять основные социальные услуги
rather (than) adv	а не; вместо того, чтобы
reduce v	уменьшать, сокращать
refer to v	ссылаться, относиться
relate to v	относиться, быть связанным
rely on v	полагаться на
resolve v	решать
responsibility n	обязанность, ответственность
sense n common sense	смысл здравый смысл
shape n,v traffic n traffic ticket training n vehicle n	форма; формировать, создавать транспорт, движение штрафные квитанции обучение транспортное средство
workload n	рабочая нагрузка

5. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 require	a правонарушитель
2 abuse	b защищать
3 proceeding	c ответственность
4 investigation	d судебное преследование
5 rely on	e обеспечивать
6 maintain	f рабочая нагрузка
7 provide	g задержание
8 manner	h требовать(ся)
9 workload	i расследование
10 responsibility	j суждение
11 activity	k полагаться на
12 protect	l злоупотребление
13 judgment	m поддерживать, сохранять
14 apprehension	n способ
15 offender	o деятельность

6. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	поддержание правопорядка	a	law enforcement or government problems
2	сотрудники правоохранительных органов	b	the American Bar Association's Standards Relating to the Urban Police Function
3	область социальных услуг	c	through preventive patrol and other measures
4	решение бытовых споров	d	the area of social service
5	участвовать в дальнейших судебных разбирательствах	e	the feeling of security in the community
6	не могут позаботиться о себе	f	investigating crimes
7	чувство безопасности в обществе	g	reduce the opportunities for the commission of some crimes
8	облегчать движение людей и транспортных средств	h	maintaining law and order
9	расследование преступлений	i	resolving domestic disputes
10	посредством профилактического патрулирования и других мер	j	to preserve the peace rather than enforcing the letter of the law
11	при необходимости арестовать правонарушителей	k	participate in later court proceedings
12	стандарты американской ассоциации адвокатов, касающиеся функций городской полиции	l	law enforcement officers
13	сохранить мир (спокойствие) вместо того, чтобы применить букву закона	m	cannot care for themselves
14	уменьшать возможности для совершения преступлений	n	facilitate the movement of people and vehicles
15	правоприменительные или государственные проблемы	o	when appropriate, to apprehend offenders

7. Match the antonyms.

1	apprehend	a	find
2	major	b	insecurity
3	create	c	violate
4	security	d	safety
5	lose	e	ruin
6	advantage	f	exclude
7	danger	g	minor
8	maintain	h	release
9	include	i	answer
10	request	j	disadvantage

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Law enforcement officers; providing basic social services; investigating crime and apprehending criminals; in the area of social service; emergency assistance, whether it is giving first aid or finding lost children; among the order maintenance activities; handling situations preserve the peace; rather than enforcing the letter of the law; when appropriate, apprehend offenders and participate in later court proceedings; through preventive patrol and other measures; facilitate the movement of people and vehicles; serious law enforcement or government problems; create and maintain the feeling of security in the community.

b) Относиться к; применение уголовного права; поддержание порядка; по сравнению с 20 %, относящимся к преступности; внимание при поддержании порядка сосредотачивается на; в области сдерживания преступности полиция предпринимает множество действий; выявлять уголовных преступников и криминальную деятельность; уменьшить возможности для совершения некоторых преступлений; помогать тем, кто не может позаботиться о себе.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Несколько факторов формируют работу полиции.
2. Двадцати четырех часовая доступность расширяет взаимодействие полиции с обществом.
3. Полномочия применить силу включают: право использовать смертельную силу, арестовывать людей и применять физическую силу.
4. Благоразумие накладывает отпечаток на все области работы полиции.
5. Примеры благоразумного принятия решений включают в себя аресты, квитанции на оплату штрафов, смертельную силу и насилие в быту.
6. Серьезность преступления и сила доказательств влияют на решение полицейского осуществить арест.
7. Поведение подозреваемого также имеет значение.
8. Функции американской полиции включают: предоставление основных полицейских услуг, поддержание порядка и сдерживание преступности.
9. Полиция помогает людям, которым нужна экстренная помощь (будь это оказание первой помощи или нахождение потерянных детей).

10. Обычно 50 % телефонных звонков, с обращением о помощи в полицию, относятся к социальным услугам.

11. Среди деятельности по поддержанию порядка — регулирование движения, сдерживание толпы (большого скопления людей), решение бытовых споров.

12. Основное внимание при поддержании порядка сосредотачивается на урегулировании ситуаций по сохранению спокойствия, а не соблюдении буквы закона.

10. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions:

- a** A sudden state of danger, conflict, etc. requiring immediate action
- b** The act of helping or doing work for another or for a community, etc.
- c** Keep safe or free from harm, decay, etc.
- d** The act of walking or traveling around an area, especially at regular intervals, in order to protect or supervise
- e** Establish the identity of; recognize
- f** An unfavorable circumstance or condition
- g** Being discreet; discreet behavior

11. Choose the correct word.

1. The **enforcement** / **providing** of criminal law is only one of several functions that the police perform.

2. The American police provide basic social services, maintain order, and control **community** / **crime**.

3. The police help people who need emergency **assistance** / **control**.

4. Police are to deal with numerous **crimes** / **problems** and all of them are of great importance.

5. Among the order — maintenance activities are traffic control, crowd control, **resolving** / **investigating** domestic disputes.

6. Several factors **maintain** / **shape** what the police do.

7. **An advantage** / **A disadvantage** is that such availability gives police a heavy workload.

8. **Apprehending** / **Discretion** leaves an imprint on all areas of policing.

9. Police rely on their own experience, training, common sense, and **force** / **judgment** to make decisions.

10. Examples of discretionary decision making include decisions involving arrests, traffic tickets, **deadly** / **serious** force, and domestic abuse.

11. The police perform a range of activities, such as patrol and criminal **identification** / **investigation**.

12. A suspect's demeanor also makes a **difference** / **sense**.

12. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

more than; affecting; people; safety; duties; keeping; apprehend; help; associated with; transport; have

1. Factors influencing discretionary decisions:
 - To aid individuals who are in danger of physical harm.
 - To facilitate the movement of people and vehicles.
 - To assist those who cannot care for themselves.
 - To create and maintain the feeling of security in the community.
2. The seriousness of the crime and the strength of the evidence affect an officer's decision to arrest.
3. Investigating crime and apprehending criminals is only one of several functions that the police perform.
4. The functions of the American police include providing basic social services, maintaining order, and controlling crime.
5. Over 50 percent of the telephone calls to the police requesting assistance involve social service as compared with less than 20 percent relating to crime.
6. Police officers should possess great self-control and courage, shouldn't abuse their powers, especially their right to use coercive force.

13. Complete the chart.

Noun identification	Adjective / Participle	Verb
	creative	
		secure
activity		
	different	
involvement		assist
	preventive	
		compare
protection		
	decisive	
		enforce
maintenance		

14. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Every police are an integral part of the social and
 (0) **political** system for which they work. According
 to Abraham Lincoln "Democracy is the (1)... of the

(0) **policy**
 (1) **govern**

people, by the people and for the people". Thus in modern democratic society law (2) ... officers shall (3) ... observe the principles of legality and to protect the principles and (4) ... of all citizens. Effective law enforcement, educational and (5) ... work are in the centre of the activities of police (6) ... today. One of the main tasks of police is to improve public (7) ..., increase the public's trust and (8) ... of security. Mutual efforts of the police and the public and the (9) ... of the police in all community affairs are absolutely necessary for (10) ... law enforcement. The constant support of all (11) ... is of great help to the police

- (2) **enforce**
- (3) **strict**
- (4) **right**
- (5) **prevent**
- (6) **agency**
- (7) **relation**
- (8) **feel**
- (9) **participate**
- (10) **effect**
- (11) **organize**

15. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

possess; investigation; available; maintaining; reduce; aid; court; assistance; discretion; preserve; apprehending; problems; force

1. The enforcement of criminal law (in other words, investigating crime and ... criminals) is only one of several functions that the police perform.
2. Police deal with numerous ... and all of them are of great importance.
3. Providing basic social services, ... order, and controlling crime have always been the main functions of police.
4. The police help people who need emergency
5. The purpose of order maintenance is to ... the peace rather than enforcing the letter of the law.
6. Through preventive patrol and other measures police can ... the opportunities for the commission of some crimes.
7. Crime control includes such police activities as patrol and criminal
8. Police should ... individuals who are in danger of physical harm.
9. When appropriate, police have powers to apprehend offenders and participate in later ... proceedings.
10. Police are ... for the public 24 hours a day.
11. The life and liberty of citizens often depends on police decisions based on their
12. Among discretionary decision making are decisions involving arrests, traffic tickets, deadly ..., and domestic abuse.
13. Police officers should ... great self-control and courage, and they shouldn't abuse their powers.

16. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. For many years the FBI has **provided** / **had provided** valuable assistance to state and local law enforcement agencies.

2. Edgar Hoover's principles dealing with main aims of the FBI and its activities **have been followed / has followed** to this day.
3. The FBI **was set up / has been set up** in 1908.
4. Two suspects dealing with robbery **have apprehended / have been apprehended**.
5. The defendant's lawyer **has been prepared / has prepared** all necessary papers for the trial.
6. The trial **will have been completed / has been completed** by the end of the week.
7. The verdict **have been already read / has been already read** by the judge.
8. The judge **has been already read / has already read** the verdict.
9. The suspect **had escaped / has escaped** before police arrived.
10. The thieves ran away in the car which they **had stolen / has stolen** before.
11. New investigative methods **has been / have been** successful.
12. Because of the injury the witness **will have left / have left** hospital only by the end of the month.
13. The respect for individual rights **has become / had become** the basis of police values.
14. Criminals **will have left / have left** a lot of traces at the scene.

17. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Police** / numerous / problems / deal with, / and / are / important / very / all of them.
2. **The functions** / include / of / police / the American / providing / social / services, / basic / maintaining / crime, / and / controlling / order.
3. **Order** / activities / maintenance / control, / are / traffic / crowd / control, / domestic / resolving / disputes.
4. **Are** / 24 / available / police / a day / hours?
5. **Police** / aid / should / individuals / who / harm / are / in danger of / physical.
6. **Police** / such / activities / perform / and / investigation / patrol / as criminal.
7. **Can** / the US / officers / police / in / proceedings / court / participate?
8. **Police** / assist / cannot / should / those / who / themselves / care for.
9. **Should** / police / and / courage / officers / possess / great / self-control?
10. **Police** / the feeling of / should / and / maintain / create / security / in the community.

18. Fill in: great, common, heavy, apprehending, social, feeling of, maintaining, controlling, preserve, emergency, criminal, finding, resolving, use, requesting, investigating, discretionary, law, giving, possess. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1	... enforcement	11	... first aid
2	... law	12	... lost children
3	... crime	13	... domestic disputes
4	... criminals	14	... the peace
5	... importance	15	... security
6	... services	16	... workload
7	... order	17	... deadly force
8	... crime	18	... sense
9	... assistance	19	... decision
10	... assistance	20	... great self-control and courage

19. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The enforcement of criminal law (in other words, investigating crime and apprehending criminals) is only one of
2. Police are to deal with numerous problems and all of them are
3. The functions of the American police include providing basic social services, maintaining
4. The police help people who need emergency assistance, whether it is giving
5. The order maintenance activities are traffic control, crowd control, resolving
6. In the area of crime control, the police engage in a range of activities, such as
7. When appropriate, police apprehend offenders and participate in
8. One of police responsibilities is to aid individuals who
9. Police should create and maintain the feeling of
10. Twenty four hour availability broadens
11. Discretionary decision making include decisions involving arrests, traffic tickets, deadly force, and
12. The seriousness of the crime and the strength of the evidence affect
13. Police officers should possess great self-control and courage, and shouldn't

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL LANGUAGE

Watching a Video and Speaking

20. Watch a video “Newport CSO (Community Service Officer)” and do the tasks.

Before watching the video:

1) Try to remember the vocabulary.

assist	помогать
day-to-day activities	повседневная деятельность
ordinance	постановление, указ, распоряжение, предписание

code violations	нарушение кодекса
deal with	иметь дело, заниматься
junk or debris	мусор или грязь
vehicle	транспортное средство
recreational equipment	снаряжение для отдыха
grass	трава
needs to be painted	нуждается в покраске
get busy lives	быть постоянно занятыми
feel something needs to be improved	чувствовать, что-то должно быть улучшено
correct in a timely manner	своевременно исправить
take the steps	принять меры
warning	предупреждение
with a date it's being corrected by	с датой, к которой оно будет исправлено
contact the Newport Police Department	обратиться в отдел полиции Ньюпорта
extension to get their violation corrected	продление срока, для исправления нарушения
in a reasonable amount of time	в разумные сроки
broken windows theory	теория разбитых окон
give the opportunity for criminal behavior to occur	создание условий для проявления криминального поведения
keep the property clean	содержать собственность в чистоте
keep those people out	удержать этих людей
keep the city safe	держат город в безопасности

2) Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 ordinance violations	a снаряжение для отдыха
2 junk or debris	b в разумные сроки
3 recreational equipment	c предупреждение
4 get busy lives	d своевременно исправить
5 feel something needs to be improved	e нарушение постановления
6 correct in a timely manner	F удержать этих людей (от)
7 warning	G мусор или грязь
8 extension to get their violation corrected	H быть постоянно занятыми
9 in a reasonable amount of time	I продление срока для исправления нарушения
10 keep those people out	J чувствовать, что что-то должно быть улучшено

After watching the video:

3) Watch the video and say which activities mentioned in the video a PSO does not deal with.

park patrol

ordinance (code) violations

fine people

junk or debris in people yards

vehicles and recreational equipment parked on the grass

house needs to be painted

take people to police facilities

grass too long

something needs to be improved and take steps ... to improve it

give warnings to citizens

remove abandoned vehicles

work out an extension to get their violations corrected

keep the city safe

4) Find in task 3 the violations which can give the opportunity for criminal behavior to occur.

21. With a partner, work out the roles based on tasks 3 and 4. Then switched the roles.

Cadet A is a PSO.

Cadet B is a citizen who violated an ordinance.

Use such language as:

Cadet A:

- you have done ordinance violations
- junk and debris in the yard
- grass too long
- abandoned vehicles
- house needs to be painted
- criminal may hide in long grass
- burglars may think that your house is abandoned and break into it
- your vehicles may be stolen
- keep the city safe
- give you a warning

Cadet B:

- What violations...?
- I promise
- Cut the grass
- Put the car (vehicles) in the garage
- Have our house painted
- What time should I (we)...?
- Keep the property clean
- contact the Newport Police Department
- correct in a timely manner

22. Match the questions on the text to their answers.

1 What are functions of the American police?	a In the area of crime control, the police engage in a range of activities, such as patrol and criminal investigation
2 What do police do in the area of social service?	b Twenty-four hour availability broadens police contacts with the public, but such availability gives police a heavy workload
3 What are the order maintenance activities?	c Major police responsibilities are: To identify criminal offenders and criminal activity; to reduce the opportunities for the commission of some crimes; to aid individuals who are in danger of physical harm or who cannot care for themselves; to protect constitutional guarantees; to resolve conflict; to create and maintain the feeling of security in the community
4 What does order maintenance require officers to do?	d Police officers should possess great self-control and courage, shouldn't abuse their powers, especially their right to use coercive force
5 What do police do in the area of crime control?	e Policemen routinely rely on their own experience, training, common sense, and judgment to make decisions involving the life and liberty of citizens
6 What are major police responsibilities?	f In the area of social service, the police help people who need emergency assistance, whether it is giving first aid or finding lost children
7 What are advantages and disadvantages in twenty — four hour police contacts availability with the public?	g The focus of order maintenance is on handling situations to preserve the peace rather than enforcing the letter of the law
8 What do policemen usually rely on to make decisions involving the life and liberty of citizens?	h The seriousness of the crime, the strength of the evidence, and a suspect's demeanor affect an officer's decision to make an arrest
9 What are the factors influencing discretionary decisions?	i The functions of the American police include providing basic social

- 1 What qualities should police j
0 officers possess?

services, maintaining order, and controlling crime

Among the order maintenance activities are traffic control, crowd control, resolving domestic disputes. The focus of order maintenance is on handling situations to preserve the peace rather than enforcing the letter of the law

23. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 22.

Cadet A: You are a Russian policeman. Ask Cadet B about the work of US police officer.

Cadet B: You are the US police officer. Answer cadet's A questions.

Use the language from task 22.

24. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

1. Main functions of the US police

- Order maintenance
- Law enforcement
- Social service

2. Major police responsibilities

3. Discretion

4. Main qualities of police officers

25. Speak on the US police functions.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The enforcement of criminal law is only one of several ... that the police perform.

- a) problems
- b) functions
- c) activities

2. In the area of social service, the police help people who need ... assistance.

- a) emergency
- b) necessary
- c) professional

3. The focus of order ... is on handling situations to preserve the peace rather than enforcing the letter of the law.

- a) control
- b) regulation
- c) maintenance

4. In the area of crime control, the police engage in a range of ..., such as patrol and criminal investigation.

- a) functions
- b) activities
- c) matters

5. Police officers should possess great self-control and courage, shouldn't abuse their

- a) authority
- b) job
- c) powers

2. **Fill in:** assistance; decision making; demeanor; enforcement; lost children; conflict; first aid; crime; workload; proceedings.

- 1 law ...
- 2 investigating ...
- 3 emergency ...
- 4 giving ...
- 5 finding ...
- 6 court ...
- 7 resolve ...
- 8 heavy ...
- 9 discretionary ...
- 10 suspect's ...

3. **Choose the correct form of the verb.**

- 1. Police **have received** / **has received** a lot of calls requesting assistance.
- 2. Due to police interference the conflict between the participants of a road accident **has resolved** / **has been resolved** today.
- 3. The suspect **hasn't been identified** / **hadn't been identified** by witnesses yet.
- 4. An offender **will have left** / **has left** a lot of traces at the crime scene.
- 5. When police arrived, burglars **had already escaped** / **have already escaped**.

4. **Fill in: the importance functions gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the box.**

contacts; Discretion; functions; importance; the evidence

- 1. Police are to deal with numerous problems and all of them are of great
- 2. The ... of the American police include providing basic social services, maintaining order, and controlling crime.
- 3. Twenty — four hour availability broadens police ... with the public.
- 4. The seriousness of the crime and the strength of ... affect an officer's decision to arrest.
- 5. ... leaves an imprint on all areas of policing.

5. Choose the correct answer.

1. What are the functions of the American police?
 - a) The functions of the police include: maintaining order, and controlling crime
 - b) The functions of the American police are: providing basic social services, maintaining order, and controlling crime
 - c) The functions of the American police include: emergency assistance and patrolling
2. What is the target of order maintenance?
 - a) The focus of order maintenance is on handling situations to preserve the peace rather than enforcing the letter of the law
 - b) Order maintenance is targeted at fighting crime
 - c) Order maintenance focuses on enforcing the law
3. What are examples of discretionary decision making?
 - a) Examples of discretionary decision making include stopping road traffic
 - b) Examples of discretionary decision making include decisions involving arrests, traffic tickets, deadly force, and domestic abuse
 - c) Discretionary decision making include traffic tickets
4. What factors affect an officer's decision to make an arrest?
 - a) A suspect's behavior is the main factor affecting an officer's decision to make an arrest
 - b) The main factor affecting an officer's decision to make an arrest is the area where an offence was committed
 - c) The seriousness of the crime and the strength of the evidence affect an officer's decision to arrest
5. What qualities should police officers possess?
 - a) Police officers should be courageous
 - b) Police officers should possess great self-control and courage, shouldn't abuse their powers, especially their right to use coercive force
 - c) Police officers should be well-educated and be polite with citizens

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN RUSSIA

Part A

*By Serving the Law,
We Serve the People*



Lead-in

- When was the law establishing the Police of Russia adopted?
- What were the main aims of the reform?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Russian Police

The police are the central law enforcement body in Russia, operating under the Ministry of Internal Affairs. Russian police were established in 2011 replacing the militia, the former police service.

The police operate according to the Law on police which was approved by the Federal Assembly and subsequently signed into law on February 7, 2011 by President of Russian Federation Dmitry Medvedev.

Main aims of the reform

- *Name change.* Under the reform, the name of Russian law enforcers was changed from the Soviet-era term *militia* to the more universal *police* on 1 March, 2011.
- *Personnel reduction.* The number of police officers was reduced by 20%, dropping from 1.28 million to 1.1 million by 2012. The reduction was accomplished via a comprehensive evaluation of all officers.
- *Centralization.* As a result of the reform, the Russian police have been made a federal-level institution, funded by the federal budget. Under the old system, police units responsible for public order and petty crimes were under the jurisdiction of regional and city authorities, financed from regional budget and responsible more to the regional governors rather than to the federal center.

Changes to police and detainee rights. According to the new law, the detainee has received the right to make a telephone call within 3 hours of the detention. He has also received the right to have a lawyer and translator from the moment of his

detention. The police must inform the detainee of his rights and duties and may no longer detain a citizen for an hour just to find out his identity.

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The main changes in the Russian police as a result of the reform are:

- a) increase of the police personnel
- b) increase in police budget
- c) personnel reduction, salary increase, centralization, changes to police and detainee rights

2. As a result of the reform the number of police personnel:

- a) increased by 20 %
- b) decreased 20 %
- c) didn't change

3. As a result of the reform and centralization:

- a) police became responsible more to the regional governors rather than to the federal center
- b) all police authority are (is) located in one centre
- c) police have been made a federal-level institution

4. According to the new law, the detainee has received a right:

- a) to have a mobile phone and talk on it when he needs
- b) to make a telephone call within 3 hours of the detention and to have a lawyer and translator from the moment of his detention
- c) to be visited by his relatives once a week

Reading 2

3. Read the text and do the tasks after the text..

Duties of Police Officers

Purpose of the Police

1. The police are intended for protecting the life, health, rights and freedoms of citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and stateless persons countering crime, enforcing law and order, protecting property and ensuring public safety.

2. The police shall immediately come to rescue everyone who is in need of their protection against criminal and other wrongful encroachments.



Rule of Law

The police shall pursue their activities in strict compliance with the law.

Impartiality

The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen, irrespective of the sex, race, ethnicity, language, origin, property status and office, residence, religion, convictions, membership in public associations and also other circumstances.

Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities.

Both when on duty and in off-duty hours police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality or **compromise** the authority of the police.

The following duties are vested in the police:

- to accept and register **applications** and messages concerning crimes, administrative offences and accidents
- to immediately arrive at the scene of a crime, administrative offence or accident
- to stop wrongful acts, eliminate **threats** to the safety of citizens and public safety
- to document the circumstances of the crime, or accident
- to provide first aid to the victims of crimes
- to find the persons who intend to commit a crime and carry out individual preventive work with them
- to take part in the prevention of child neglect and offences by minors; take part in the propagation of knowledge of law
- to ensure the safety of citizens and law and order on the streets, squares, stadiums, public gardens, parks, terminals, at airports, sea and river ports and other public places
- to ensure the safety of **citizens** and law and order
- to carry out an inquiry in the criminal cases which do not necessarily require a preliminary investigation
- to pursue urgent investigation actions in the criminal cases which do not necessarily require a preliminary investigation
- to perform operative search measures, apprehension of persons suspected and accused of having committed crimes and the commission of other procedural actions
- to pursue operative search activities for the purpose of detecting, preventing, stopping and solving crimes, ensuring own safety and also in the other cases envisaged by a federal law
- to stop administrative offences
- to search for the **perpetrators** or suspects and accused of crimes; for persons who are hiding from inquiry or investigation bodies or a **court**; for minors who have left without permission their families
- to provide assistance in searching for and **apprehending** persons who have escaped from custody

- to take measures for identifying persons who cannot provide information about themselves due to their state of health, age or for other reasons
- to take measures in accordance with a federal law for prevention, **detection** and stopping of extremist activities of public associations, religious and other organizations and citizens

Study Skills

4. Learn the vocabulary.

abstain from <i>v</i>	воздерживаться от
accident <i>n</i>	(несчастный) случай
accused <i>a</i>	обвиняемый
aid <i>n</i>	помощь; помогать
provide first aid	оказывать первую помощь
application <i>n</i>	применение
arrive <i>v</i>	прибывать
assistance <i>n</i>	помощь, содействие
carry out <i>v</i>	выполнять, проводить
carry out an inquiry	проводить расследование
case <i>n</i>	дело
cause <i>n, v</i>	причина; вызывать, заставлять
cause doubt	вызывать сомнение
circumstance <i>n</i>	обстоятельство, факт
commission <i>n, v</i>	совершение (действия); уполномочивать
compliance <i>n</i>	соответствие
conviction <i>n</i>	убеждение
court <i>n</i>	суд
crime <i>n</i>	преступление
crime scene	место преступления
commit a crime	совершить преступление
countering crime	противостояние преступности
solve a crime	раскрыть преступление
custody <i>n</i>	контроль; содержание под стражей; тюремное заключение
detecting <i>n</i>	обнаружение
due to <i>adv</i>	вследствие
eliminate <i>v</i>	устранять, ликвидировать
encroachment <i>n</i>	нарушение, посягательство
envisage <i>v</i>	предусматривать
escape <i>n, v</i>	бегство из-под стражи; бежать из-под стражи
hide <i>v</i>	прятать(ся)
immediately <i>adv</i>	немедленно
impartiality <i>n</i>	беспристрастность
in accordance with <i>adv</i>	в соответствии с

intend <i>v</i>	намереваться
investigation <i>n</i> preliminary investigation pursue urgent investigation activities irrespective <i>adv</i> measure <i>n</i> take measures minor <i>n, a</i> neglect <i>n</i> child neglect	расследование предварительное расследование проводить (осуществлять) срочные следственные действия безотносительно мера принимать меры несовершеннолетний; незначительный невыполнение, пренебрежение невыполнение обязанностей в отношении ребенка
offence <i>n</i>	правонарушение, преступление
order <i>n</i> law and order perpetrator <i>n</i> prevention <i>n</i> prohibit <i>v</i>	порядок правопорядок нарушитель уголовного закона, преступник предотвращение, предупреждение запрещать
provide <i>v</i> purpose <i>n</i> reason <i>n</i> require <i>v</i> rescue <i>v</i> safety <i>n</i> ensure safety	обеспечивать цель причина требовать(ся) спасать безопасность обеспечить безопасность
search <i>n, v</i> search <i>for</i>	поиск, обыск; обыскивать искать, разыскивать
support <i>n, v</i> suspect <i>n, v</i> threat <i>n</i> vest (in) <i>v</i> victim <i>n</i>	поддержка, поддерживать подозреваемый; подозревать угроза облекать, наделять (правами, властью) жертва, пострадавший
wrongful <i>a</i>	противоправный, незаконный

5. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 application	a место преступления
2 arrive	b убеждение, осуждение
3 crime scene	c обеспечивать
4 impartiality	d угроза
5 eliminate	e цель
6 threat	f совершение
7 provide	g (несчастный) случай
8 conviction	h обвиняемый

9	court	i	прибывать
10	purpose	j	правонарушитель
11	accused	k	запрещать
12	accident	l	применение
13	commission	m	устранять
14	perpetrator	n	суд
15	prohibit	o	беспристрастность

6. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	искать правонарушителей и подозреваемых	a	immediately arrive at the scene of crime
2	устранять угрозы	b	detection and stopping of extremist activities
3	немедленно прибывать на место преступления	c	in strict compliance with the law
4	оказывать первую помощь жертвам преступлений	d	and other circumstances
5	проводить срочные следственные действия	e	stop administrative offences
6	защита собственности и обеспечение общественной безопасности	f	police are prohibited
7	оказывать материальную помощь	g	search for the perpetrators or suspects
8	пресекать административные правонарушения	h	provide material support
9	полиция должна воздерживаться от	i	ensure safety
10	и других обстоятельств	j	eliminate threats
11	в строгом соответствии с законом	k	protecting property and ensuring public safety
12	выявление и пресечение экстремистской деятельности	l	accept and register applications and messages
13	полиции запрещается	m	pursue urgent investigation actions
14	принимать и регистрировать заявления и сообщения	n	police shall abstain from
15	обеспечить безопасность	o	provide first aid to the victims of crimes

7. Match the antonyms.

- 1 apprehension
- 2 foreign
- 3 wrongful
- 4 prohibit
- 5 hide
- 6 arrive
- 7 preliminary
- 8 freedom
- 9 public
- 10 accept

- a find
- b allow
- c imprisonment
- d final
- e legal
- f private
- g native
- h release
- i return
- j leave

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Accept and register applications and messages; countering crime; immediately come to rescue; accidents; immediately arrive at the scene of crime; wrongful acts; eliminate threats to the safety of citizens; public safety; take part in the propagation of law; knowledge; perform operative search measures; for the purpose of detecting; preventing, stopping and solving crimes; persons who are hiding from inquiries, or investigation bodies, or a court; stop administrative offences; conviction; provide assistance; taking measures for identifying persons who cannot provide information about themselves; in accordance with.

b) Оказывать первую помощь жертвам преступлений; принимать участие в предупреждении; невыполнение обязанностей в отношении ребенка; беспристрастность; совершаемых несовершеннолетними; проводить расследование уголовных дел, в которых предварительное расследование не обязательно; задержание людей, подозреваемых и обвиняемых в совершении преступлений; проводить оперативно-розыскную деятельность с целью обнаружения; запрещать; предотвращения, пресечения и раскрытия преступлений; несовершеннолетние, которые ушли (из дома) без разрешения родителей; поиск и задержание людей, которые сбежали из-под стражи; вследствие состояния их здоровья, возраста, или по другим причинам.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Полиция предназначена для защиты жизни, здоровья, прав и свобод граждан.

2. Полиция должна немедленно прибыть на помощь всем, кто нуждается в ее защите.

3. Полиция должна осуществлять свою деятельность в строгом соответствии с законом.

4. Полиция должна защищать права, свободы и законные интересы человека и гражданина.

5. Полицейским запрещено быть членами политических партий.

6. Полиция должна воздерживаться от любых действий, которые могут вызвать сомнения в их беспристрастности.

7. Следующие обязанности возлагаются на полицию:

- Принимать и регистрировать заявления и сообщения
- Немедленно прибывать на место преступления
- Оказывать первую помощь жертвам преступлений
- Предотвращать пренебрежительное отношение к детям и правонарушения несовершеннолетних
- Обеспечить безопасность граждан и правопорядок
- Осуществлять оперативно-розыскные мероприятия
- Пресекать административные правонарушения
- Разыскивать правонарушителей или подозреваемых и обвиняемых в совершении преступлений
- Принимать меры ... по предотвращению, выявлению и пресечению экстремистской деятельности.

10. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 the action or work of detecting smth, the process of being detected
- 2 the action or process of making a formal request
- 3 a person who commits a crime or does something considered wrong
- 4 an expression of one's intention to punish or harm smb, especially if they do not do as one wishes
- 5 the action of seizing or arresting smb, especially by the police
- 6 a person who has full rights as a member of the country either by birth or by being given such rights
- 7 to bring smb / oneself into danger or under suspicion by foolish behaviour
- 8 a place where trials or other law cases are held

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the followings:

Police duties are:
Police are prohibited:

to stop administrative offences; to accept and register applications and messages; to be members of political parties; to immediately arrive at the scene of a crime; to perform any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality; to stop wrongful acts; to provide first aid; to provide material support to political parties; to ensure the safety of citizens; to compromise the authority of the police; to perform operative search measures

12. Choose the correct word.

1. The police shall **protect / learn** the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen.
2. Police are prohibited to be members of political **meetings / parties**, provide material support to political parties.
3. Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their **professionalism / impartiality** or compromise the authority of the police.
4. One of police duties is to accept and register **letters / impartiality** and messages concerning crimes.
5. After receiving a call, police shall immediately **arrive / leave** at the scene of a crime, administrative offence or accident.
6. The police shall pursue its activities in strict compliance with the **investigation / law**.
7. Policemen should **apprehend / release** persons suspected and accused of having committed crimes.
8. Police stop wrongful acts, eliminate threats to the **safety / work** of citizens and public safety.
9. It's very important to provide first aid to the **offenders / victims** of crimes.
10. Police also take part in the propagation of knowledge of **law / information**.

13. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

offenders; banned; aim(goal); activities; participate; defend; illegal; give; security; liberties; investigation; come to; arresting

1. The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen.
2. Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities.
3. Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality.
4. The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen.
5. A policeman should immediately arrive at the scene of a crime, administrative offence or accident.
6. Police stop wrongful acts, eliminate threats to the safety of citizens and public safety.
7. It's police duty to provide first aid to the victims of crimes.
8. Police also take part in the prevention of child neglect and offences by minors.
9. Police carry out an inquiry in the criminal cases which do not necessarily require a preliminary investigation.
10. One of the main tasks of police is to ensure the safety of citizens and law and order.

11. Police pursue operative search activities for the purpose of detecting, preventing, stopping and solving crimes.

12. Police search for the perpetrators or suspects and assist in searching for and apprehending persons who have escaped from custody.

14. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb prohibit
knowledge	preventive	
		investigate
	operative	
accusation		
commission	identified	apprehend
		apply
administration	protective	

15. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The Saint Petersburg Police were **established** by Peter the Great in June 7, 1718 as the main police force in Saint Petersburg. The Saint Petersburg Police were (1) ... the best police department in Imperial Russia until 1918. In 1918 the police (2) ... replaced by the soviet police force which was called Militsiya. In March 2011, the police were (3) ... again Politsiya. The St. Petersburg Tourist Police; were (4) ... in 2011 as a single law enforcement agency for crimes committed against (5) ... and is responsible for providing (6) ... to visitors to the city. The River Police of St. Petersburg was a unique law (7) ... body that was (8) ... for supervision over the waters of the rivers in Saint Petersburg. The River Police force was established in 1866. Central (9) ... Department (The (10) ... Police of St. Petersburg;) was established in 1714 and was the (12) ... of its kind in Russia.

(0) establish

(1) consider

(2) be

(3) rename

(4) establish

(5) tourist

(6) assist

(7) enforce

(8) response

(9) Investigate

(10) Detect

(11) one

16. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

accused; compliance; compromise; to commit; threats; duties; are prohibited; crimes; protect; arrive at; safety; victims; search

1. The police shall ... the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen.
2. Police ... to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties.
3. Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality or ... the authority of the police.
4. The police shall pursue its activities in strict ... with the law.
5. The following ... are vested in the police:
 - to accept and register applications and messages concerning ... administrative offences and accidents
 - to immediately ... the scene of a crime
 - to provide first aid to the ... of crimes
 - to find the persons who intend ... a crime
 - to eliminate ... to the safety of citizens and public safety
 - to search for the perpetrators or suspects and ... of crimes
 - to perform operative ... measures
 - to ensure the ... of citizens and law and order



17. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. Main activities of the police also include protection of victims, witnesses and officials of law-enforcement and **controlling** / **controlled** bodies.

2. Thanks to professionalism of detectives crimes **were prevented** / **were preventing**.

3. Criminalistics activities **are being carrying** / **are being carried** out by experts.

4. When **patrolled** / **patrolling** police can prevent crime from happening.

5. The Sheriff's Office has resumed its search for a **missing** / **missed**.

6. 6-month-old baby in Northern California.

7. Police say teams specializing in ground search and human tracking and dogs **is searching** / **are searching** the area for clues.

8. When a car **was trying** / **is trying** to overtake a bus, it ran into the moving bus.

9. A reckless driver **was stopped** / **was stopping** by a policeman for speeding.

10. When **being interviewed** / **being interviewing** a witness said that she saw a strange man walking near her house the previous night.

11. She also said that the man **was wearing** / **is wearing** dark glasses, a long black coat, a dark hat and looked rather nervous.

12. When **having performed / performing** his job a police officer should not forget about the relations between police and community.

13. Police **will be searching / were searching** the crime scene at this time tomorrow.

14. **Having photographed / being photographed** the scene police began to search it carefully.

15. While one of the robbers was holding under a gun a cashier, the other **was trying / is trying** to open the safe.

16. Witnesses say that one of the robbers **was holding / will be holding** a gun, which he pointed at the cashier.

18. Find in the texts (Reading 1, and Reading 2) and translate sentences with:

a) Modal Verbs

b) Participle 1 and 2; Continuous Tenses

19. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **The rights** / protected / and / being / interests / be / of a human / lawful by / and / citizen / freedoms / should / the police.

2. **Policemen** / parties / prohibited / of political / to be / members / are.

3. **Do** / order / maintain / police / law / and?

4. **Police** / actions / authority of / shall / abstain from / any / that / can // compromise / the police.

5. **Policemen** / concerning / and // register crimes applications / accept / and messages.

6. **Police** / support / must not / material / parties / provide / to political.

7. **Can** / aid / provide / police / to first / crimes / the victims of?

8. **How** / pursue / shall the police activities / their?

9. **The task** / is / of police / citizens / to ensure / the safety of.

10. **When** / police / Russian / established were?

20. Fill in: hiding; stop; administrative; accept and register; arrive at; solving; eliminate; document; provide; knowledge of; do not require; ensure; search for; carry out; public; perform; prevent; escaped. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ...offences and accidents

2 ...the scene of crime

3 ...wrongful acts

4 ...threats

5 ...circumstances of the crime

6 ...first aid

7 ...child neglect

8 ... law

9 ...the safety of citizens

10 ...an inquiry

11 ...preliminary investigation

12 ...operative search measures

13 ...perpetrators or suspects

14 ...crimes

15 ...from inquiry

16 ...from custody

17 ...applications

18 ... associations

21. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and
2. Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide
3. Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as
4. The police shall pursue their activities
5. The following duties are vested in the police:
 - To accept and register applications and messages
 - To immediately arrive at
 - Stop wrongful acts, eliminate threats to ...
 - To provide first aid to ...
 - To take part in the prevention of
 - To ensure the safety of citizens and law and order ...
 - To carry out an inquiry in the criminal cases which do not necessarily require
 - To perform operative search measures apprehension of persons suspected and accused of
 - To stop administrative offences....
 - To search for the perpetrators or suspects and accused of crimes for persons who are hiding from
 - To identify persons who cannot provide information about themselves due to
 - To take measures in accordance with a federal law for prevention, detection and stopping

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and Speaking

22. Listen to a conversation between two police officers. Go through the choices (a, b or c) and choose the one that fits best to the conversation.

Before listening, try to remember the following words:

traffic	движение
ambulance	скорая помощь
guy	парень
hit	ударять(ся)
steering wheel	руль
apply pressure	прижать
wound	рана
bleeding	кровотечение
swab	вытирать тампоном
in pretty rough shape	в очень плохом состоянии

1. Officer Frederick arrived at the scene because:
 - a) criminal shot a policeman
 - b) there was a fight between teenagers
 - c) young man was wounded
2. The guy had a wound:
 - a) on his leg
 - b) Bon his head
 - c) on his hand
3. At the scene the two officers:
 - a) were trying to stop bleeding
 - b) were chasing suspects
 - c) tried to take the guy to hospital
4. In the end the officers:
 - a) took the guy to hospital
 - b) let him drive his car
 - c) stopped bleeding

23. Listen again and complete the conversation.

Officer 1(M)	Officer Frederic, (1) you're here
Officer 2 (F)	I came as soon as I could. The (2) was bad
Officer 1	I know. I wish the ambulance would hurry up and get here. The guy is in pretty rough shape
Officer 2	Looks like it. What can I do to help until (3) the ambulance arrives?
Officer 1	Well, he has a pretty big cut where he hit (4) on the steering wheel. We'll need to sterilize it
Officer 2	O'kay
Officer 1	I'll get the alcohol while you apply pressure (5)
Officer 2	Sure
Officer 1	Let's take a look. Oh. That doesn't look too bad
Officer 2	No, it's not as bad as I was expecting. The (6) stopped, I think
Officer 1	Yeah. I think now is a good time (7) the wound. You can hold back his hair while I swab the area

24. With a partner, act out the roles based on Task 24.

Use such language as:

- injury
- badly wounded
- shock
- the ambulance
- sterilize (swab) the wound
- stop bleeding
- apply pressure to the wound

- What can (should) I do ...?
- We'll need to...

Watching a video and speaking

25. Watch a video “Arrest_Detention-Habeas Corpus_explained-Ireland Criminal Law” and do the tasks.

Before watching the video:

1. Learn the vocabulary.

seizure the seizure of accused by taking him into custody	захват, арест, конфискация арест обвиняемого, путем взятия его под стражу
suspicion	подозрение
back by the evidence	подкреплять доказательствами
the person in question	подозреваемая личность
may get away	может уйти
wide police power	большой круг полицейских полномочий
warrant without a warrant	ордер (на арест, обыск) без ордера
enter premises	войти в помещение (на территорию)
occupier consent	согласие жильца
criteria meet the criteria	условия, критерии соответствовать критериям
guard (security officer, secret police agent)	охранник, полицейский
observe	наблюдать
fear	опасаться
accused	обвиняемый
invalid	недействительный
there is no ground ... to believe that	нет никаких оснований...полагать
remain silent	хранить молчание
cannot afford	не можете себе позволить
get the essential care	получить необходимый уход
is not satisfied	не удовлетворен
order to release the suspect immediately	приказать немедленно освободить подозреваемого

2. Revise the vocabulary.

liberty	свобода
law enforcement measures	правоохранительные меры
require	требовать(ся)
bring criminals to justice	привлечь преступников к ответственности

the arrest and detention power	полномочия на арест и задержание
break the law	нарушать закон
evidence	улики, доказательства
citizens may also to arrest the suspect	граждане могут также арестовать подозреваемого
know the reason of his arrest	знать причину своего ареста
consult with a lawyer	консультироваться с адвокатом
legal aid	юридическая помощь
right to privacy, during legal consultations; the right to food, to rest and to get the medical treatment. the right of access to the courts	право на неприкосновенность частной жизни в ходе юридических консультаций; право на питание, отдых и получение лечения, право на доступ к судам

Notes:

1. *The accused must be brought at the earliest before the district court to be charged with the offence.* — Обвиняемый должен предстать в кратчайшие сроки перед окружным судом, чтобы ему было предъявлено обвинение в совершении преступления.
2. *Apply to the High Court, for Habeas Corpus by challenging the liberty of his protection.* — Обратиться в Высокий суд за защитой на основании Хабеас корпус.
3. *The police failure to respect the suspect rights will render the arrest and detention invalid.* — Отказ полиции уважать (признавать) права подозреваемого сделает арест и содержание под стражей незаконным.

3. Match the English and Russian Equivalents.

1 the seizure of accused	a без ордера
2 back by the evidence	b подкреплять доказательствами
3 may get away	c правоохранные меры
4 without a warrant	d не удовлетворен
5 enter premises	e юридическая помощь
6 law enforcement measures	f арест обвиняемого
7 bring criminals to justice	g приказать освободить подозреваемого немедленно
8 legal aid	h хранить молчание
9 know the reason of his arrest	i может уйти
10 remain silent	j привлечь преступников к ответственности
11 is not satisfied	k войти в помещение
12 order to release the suspect immediately	l знать причину своего ареста

After watching the video:

4. With a partner, work out the roles based on the video and your knowledge of the Law on Police. Then switched the roles.

Cadet A is an Irish police officer.

Cadet B is a Russian police officer visiting an Irish police department.

Cadet A and cadet B speak on the rights of a person on arrest

Use the language such language as:

Why is it sometimes necessary to arrest a person...? When can an arrest of a person be made in Ireland (Russia)? What are the grounds for arrest...? Who can arrest ...? Do police need a warrant ...? Can a policeman enter premises ...? What are detainee rights ...? And what about your country? When must the judge release the suspect immediately? What must the judge do when there are no grounds for arrest?	
A	B
• bring criminals to justice • the arrest and detention power • suspicion • back by the evidence • break the law • citizens may also to arrest suspect • there is risk that he may get away • police can arrest the suspect without a warrant • suspect entering or leaving the premises accused will escape • before the police can get the arrest warrant the arrest is invalid • no evidence • the right to remain silent and to be informed about it • the suspect must know the reason of his arrest • to consult with a lawyer • to get the essential care • access to the courts • failure to respect the suspect	• the right to freedom • Article 22 of the Constitution • no person may be subjected to detention • for a period of more than forty-eight hours • by the Code of Criminal Procedure • detention is only allowed in cases • detention period • judge decides whether to authorize the detention • release the individual • extend the detention for the next seventy-two hours • inform the detainee of his rights and duties • the right to make a telephone call within 3 hours of the detention. • the right to have a lawyer and translator from the moment of his detention. • judge's ruling can be appealed

rights • the arrest and detention invalid • apply to the High Court, for Habeas Corpus • the judge will order to release the suspect immediately	to the higher court • within three days

26. Match the questions on the text to their answers.

1 What is the purpose of the police? 2 How should police follow the rule of law? 3 What does <i>impartiality</i> mean? 4 What are police prohibited to do? 5 What should policemen abstain from? 6 What should police do if a crime has been committed? 7 What investigative activities should police perform? 8 How do police ensure the safety	a Both when on duty and in off-duty hours police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality or compromise the authority of the police b Police should pursue urgent investigation actions in the criminal cases which do not necessarily require a preliminary investigation; search for the perpetrators or suspects and accused of crimes; for persons who are hiding from inquiry or investigation bodies or a court; for minors who have left without permission their families; document the circumstances of the crime, or accident c Police should immediately arrive at the scene of a crime, administrative offence or accident, provide first aid to the victims of crimes d Police take measures in accordance with a federal law for prevention, detection and stopping of extremist activities of public associations, religious and other organizations and citizens e Police ensure the safety of citizens and law and order on the streets, squares, stadiums, public gardens, parks, terminals, at airports, sea and river ports and other public places; stop wrongful acts, eliminate threats to the safety of citizens and public safety f The police shall pursue their activities in strict compliance with the law g Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities h In order to prevent crimes police find the

of citizens and law and order?

persons who intend to commit a crime and carry out individual preventive work with them; take part in the prevention of child neglect and offences by minors; take part in the propagation of knowledge of law

9 What preventive measures are i
taken by police?

The police shall protect the life, health, rights and freedoms of citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and stateless persons counter crime, enforce law and order, protect property and ensure public safety; shall immediately come to rescue everyone who is in need of their protection against criminal and other wrongful encroachments

10 What are counter-extremist j
police measures?

The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen, irrespective of the sex, race, ethnicity, language, origin, property status and office, residence, religion, convictions, membership in public associations and also other circumstances

27. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 26.

Cadet A: You are a British policeman. Ask Cadet B about the work of police in Russia.

Cadet B: You are a Russian police officer. Answer cadet's A questions.

Use the necessary language from task 26.

28. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Establishment of Russian police
- Main aims of the reform
- Purpose of the police
- Rule of law
- Impartiality
- What the police shouldn't do
- Investigative activities
- Ensuring law and order and public safety
- Preventive measures
- Counter-extremist measures

29. Speak on Russian Police.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The police are intended for protecting the life, health, rights and freedoms of
 - a) visitors
 - b) citizens
 - c) inhabitants
2. The police shall pursue their activities in strict compliance with
 - a) the law
 - b) guidelines
 - c) rules of the department
3. Police are ... to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities.
 - a) interested
 - b) controlled
 - c) prohibited
4. Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their ... or compromise the authority of the police.
 - a) professionalism
 - b) impartiality
 - c) skills
5. Police stop wrongful acts, eliminate threats to the safety of citizens and public
 - a) traffic
 - b) activities
 - c) safety

2. Fill in: material support; the perpetrators; encroachments; public safety; threats; law and order; neglect; crimes; persons; offence.

- 1 stateless ...
- 2 enforcing ...
- 3 ensuring ...
- 4 wrongful ...
- 5 provide ...
- 6 administrative ...
- 7 eliminate...
- 8 child ...
- 9 solving ...
- 10 search for ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. The police are the central law enforcement body in Russia, **operating** / **operated** under the Ministry of Internal Affairs.

2. One of the duties **vested / vesting** in the police is to accept and register applications and messages **concerned / concerning** crimes, administrative offences and accidents.

3. The crime scene **was watching / was being watched** for three hours yesterday morning.

4. One of the witnesses **is being interviewed / was being interviewed** at the moment.

5. The information, **reported / reporting** to police, was about car theft.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the box.

knowledge; to commit; applications; a human being; protection

1. The police shall immediately come to rescue everyone who is in need of their ... against criminal and other wrongful encroachments.

2. The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of ... and citizen.

3. Police accept and register ... and messages concerning crimes, administrative offences and accidents.

4. Police duty is to find the persons who intend ... a crime and carry out individual preventive work with them.

5. Police take part in the prevention of child neglect and offences by minors; take part in the propagation of ... of law.

5. Choose the correct answer.

1. How shall the police pursue their activities?

a) The police shall pursue their activities according to the rules of the department

b) The police shall pursue their activities in strict compliance with the law

c) The police shall pursue their activities according to their functions

2. What are police prohibited to do?

a) Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities

b) Police are prohibited to take part in the election of the president

c) Police are prohibited to wear a uniform when off duty

3. What should police abstain from?

a) Police shall abstain from dealing with mass media

b) Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality or compromise the authority of the police

c) Police shall abstain from overcrowded places

4. Who should police search for?

a) Police search for injured people

b) Police should search for citizens' animals

c) Police should search for the perpetrators or suspects and accused of crimes; for persons who are hiding from inquiry or investigation bodies or a court; for minors who have left without permission from their families

5. Whose extremist activities should police stop?

a) Police should stop extremist activities of emigrants

b) Police should stop extremist activities of public associations, religious and other organizations and citizens

c) Police should stop extremist activities of tourists

Lead-in

- You are going to read a text dealing with Saint Petersburg Police. Do you know when and by whom Saint Petersburg Police were founded and what the tasks of Saint Petersburg Police were?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Saint Petersburg Police

The Saint Petersburg Police are officially known as the Main Administration for Internal Affairs of the City of St. Petersburg and Leningrad Region (Oblast). The Saint Petersburg Police were established by Peter the Great on June 7, 1718 as the main police force in Saint Petersburg. Saint Petersburg Police were considered the best police department in Imperial Russia until 1918. In 1918, Police were replaced by the soviet police force which was called Militsiya (Militia) until the police reform in February 7, 2011 when the police were renamed Politsiya (Police) again.

The main responsibilities have always been: the internal security, human rights and freedoms, suppression and detection of crime, and protection of public order.

The Saint Petersburg City Police Commissioner is the head of the Saint Petersburg City Police Department, appointed by the governor of Saint Petersburg. The Commissioner is a policeman administrator appointed by the Governor of Saint Petersburg, after the approval of the Saint Petersburg Legislative Assembly, by recommendation of the president of Russia. The Control over the activities of the police is carried out by the Ministry of Internal Affairs of the Russian Federation, the Governor, the Government of Saint Petersburg and the Saint Petersburg Legislative Assembly.

Notes:

The Main Administration for Internal Affairs of the City of St. Petersburg and the Leningrad — Главное управление внутренних дел Санкт-Петербурга и Ленинградской области

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The date of establishment of Saint Petersburg Police is:

- a) June 7, 1918
- b) June 7, 1718
- c) February 7, 2011

2. The main responsibilities have always been:

- a) investigation of international crimes
- b) traffic regulations

c) the internal security, human rights and freedoms, suppression and detection of crime, and protection of public order

3. The head of the Saint Petersburg City Police Department is:

- a) The Commissioner
- b) The Governor
- c) The Prime Minister

4. The Control over the activities of the police is carried out by:

- a) The president of the Russian Federation
- b) The Chief of Police
- c) The Ministry of Internal Affairs of the Russian Federation, the Governor, the Government of Saint Petersburg and the Saint Petersburg Legislative Assembly

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do the tasks after the text.

Main Activities and Duties of Russian Police

Purpose of the Police

1. The police are intended for protecting the life, health, rights and **freedoms** of citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and stateless persons countering crime, enforcing law and order, protecting property and ensuring public safety.
2. The police shall immediately come to rescue of everyone who is in need of their protection against criminal and other wrongful encroachments.

Rule of Law

The police shall pursue their activities in strict compliance with the law.

Impartiality

The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen, irrespective of the sex, race, ethnicity, language, origin, property **status** and office, residence, **religion**, convictions, membership in public associations and also other circumstances.

Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material **support** to political parties and take part in their activities.

Both when on duty and off-duty hours police shall abstain from any actions that can cause doubt as to their impartiality or compromise the authority of the police.

Activities of Russian Police

The main police activities are:

- Protection of the person, the society and the state against wrongful encroachments
- Prevention and stopping of crime and offences
- Detection and solution of crimes and inquiries in criminal cases
- Search for people
- Maintenance of law and order in public areas



- Ensuring the safety of citizens
- Ensuring of road traffic safety
- Protection of **property**
- Carrying out of expert criminalistics activities
- Protection of victims, witnesses and other parties to criminal court proceedings (judges, procurators, investigators, and officials of law-enforcement and controlling bodies)
- Control over the observance of the legislation of the Russian federation in the area of weapons trafficking
- Control over the **observance** of the legislation of the Russian federation in the area of private detective (search) and security-guard activities

Study Skills

4. Learn the vocabulary.

abstain from v both....and conj case n carry out v cause n,v cause a doubt	воздерживаться от (чего-либо) как ... так и дело выполнять причина; вызывать, заставлять вызывать сомнение
circumstance n	обстоятельство, факт
compliance n conviction n court n	соответствие убеждение суд
crime n countering crime crime solution detect v encroachment n	преступление противостояние преступности раскрытие преступления обнаруживать нарушение, посягательство
ensure v	гарантировать
immediately adv	немедленно
impartiality n intend v inquiry n irrespective a, adv maintenance n membership n	беспристрастность предназначать, намереваться расследование, рассмотрение независимый, безотносительный; безотносительно поддержание членство
observance n	соблюдение
offence n	правонарушение, преступление
order n law and order origin n party n	порядок правопорядок происхождение сторона (в судебном процессе)

perpetrator <i>n</i>	нарушитель уголовного закона, преступник
procurator <i>n</i>	прокурор
prohibit <i>v</i>	запрещать
provide <i>v</i>	обеспечивать
purpose <i>n</i>	цель
pursue <i>v</i>	преследовать, проводить
require <i>v</i>	требовать(ся)
residence <i>n</i>	место жительства
rescue	спасение, спасти
come to (the) rescue	приходить на помощь
safety <i>n</i>	безопасность
ensure safety	обеспечить безопасность
search <i>n</i>	поиск; обыск
search for	искать
strict <i>a</i>	строгий
support <i>n, v</i>	поддержка, поддерживать
suspect <i>n, v</i>	подозреваемый; подозревать
victim <i>n</i>	жертва, пострадавший
weapon <i>n</i>	оружие
witness <i>n</i>	свидетель
wrongful <i>a</i>	противоправный, незаконный

5. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	countering crime	a	поиск людей
2	wrongful encroachments	b	обеспечить безопасность
3	prohibit	c	убеждение, осуждение
4	law and order	d	противостояние преступности
5	search for people	e	обстоятельство
6	ensure safety	f	запрещать
7	purpose	g	происхождение
8	cause a doubt	h	неправомерные посягательства
9	victim	i	свидетель
10	come to rescue	j	цель
11	origin	k	вызывать сомнения
12	witness	l	пострадавший
13	carry out	m	приходить на помощь
14	conviction	n	правопорядок
15	circumstance	o	выполнять

6. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	поиск людей	a	provide material support
2	воздерживаться от любых действий	b	wrongful encroachments
3	контроль над соблюдением законодательства	c	maintenance of law and order
4	обеспечение дорожной безопасности	d	prevention and stopping of crime and offences
5	оказывать материальную помощь	e	abstain from any actions
6	полиции запрещено	f	control over the observance of the legislation
7	выявление и раскрытие преступлений	g	lawful interests of a human being and citizen
8	предотвращение и пресечение преступлений и правонарушений	h	search for people
9	может вызвать сомнение в их беспристрастности	i	police are prohibited
10	торговля оружием	j	countering crime
11	поддержание правопорядка	k	ensuring of road traffic safety
12	неправомерные посягательства	l	can cause a doubt as to their impartiality
13	законные интересы человека и гражданина	m	detection and solution of crimes
14	противостояние преступности	n	come to rescue of everyone who is in need of their protection
15	приходить на помощь всем, кто нуждается в их защите	o	weapons trafficking

7. Match the antonyms.

1	wrongful	a	disorder
2	safety	b	illness
3	prohibit	c	native
4	order	d	allow
5	private	e	imprisonment
6	foreign	f	legal
7	on duty	g	public
8	freedom	h	offender
9	victim	i	danger
10	health	j	off-duty

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Are intended for protecting; rights and freedoms; foreign citizens and stateless persons; countering crime; enforcing law and order; protecting property; ensuring public safety; immediately come to rescue; other wrongful encroachments; pursue their activities; in strict compliance with the law; impartiality; lawful interests of a human being and citizen; irrespective of property status and office; convictions; membership in public associations; origin; other circumstances; police are prohibited; take part in their activities; both when on duty and off-duty hours; abstain from any actions; can cause a doubt as to their impartiality; compromise the authority of the police.

b) Защита личности, общества и государства; неправомерные посягательства; предотвращение и пресечение преступлений и правонарушений; выявление и раскрытие преступлений и расследование уголовных дел; поиск людей; поддержание правопорядка; Обеспечение безопасности дорожного движения; защита собственности; защита пострадавших, свидетелей и других сторон уголовного судопроизводства; контроль над соблюдением законодательства; торговля оружием; частный сыск; деятельность охраны.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Полиция предназначена для защиты жизни, здоровья, прав и свобод граждан.

- Полиция должна немедленно приходить на помощь всем, кто нуждается в ее защите
- Полиция должна проводить (осуществлять) свою деятельность в строгом соответствии с законом
- Полиция должна защищать права, свободы и законные интересы человека и гражданина независимо от...
- Полицией запрещено быть членами политических партий
- Полицией должны воздерживаться от любых действий, которые могут вызвать сомнение в их беспристрастности

2. Деятельность полиции России:

- Защита личности, общества и государства от неправомерных посягательств
- Поддержание правопорядка в общественных местах
- Проведение (осуществление) экспертно-криминалистической деятельности
- Выявление и раскрытие преступлений и расследование уголовных дел
- Контроль над соблюдением законодательства Российской Федерации в области торговли оружием

10. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions:

- 1 a thing or things owned
- 2 a public position of trust and authority; the work and duties connected with this
- 3 help or encouragement giving to sb / sth in a difficult situation
- 4 personal or civil liberty
- 5 belief in the existence of god or gods
- 6 recognition of or compliance with a law, custom, practice, etc.

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the followings:

Police should
Police should not

enforce law and order; protect property; ensure public safety; be members of political parties; provide material support to political parties; take part in the activities of political parties; cause a doubt as to their impartiality; compromise the authority of the police; protect the life, health, rights and freedoms of citizens; pursue their activities in strict compliance with the law; protect the person, the society and the state; prevent and stop crimes and offences; detect and solve crimes

12. Choose the correct word.

1. The police are intended for protecting the life, health, **duties / rights** and freedoms of citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and stateless persons.
2. The police shall **immediately / slowly** come to rescue everyone who is in need of their protection.
3. The police shall pursue their **activities / purposes** in strict compliance with the law.
4. Prevention of **crime / criminals** and offences needs much effort.
5. Policemen shall abstain from any actions that can cause doubt as to their **effectiveness / impartiality** or compromise the authority of the police.
6. Protection of victims, witnesses and other **parties / offices** to criminal court proceedings is also the task of police.
7. Police control over the observance of the legislation of the Russian federation in the area of **vehicles / weapons** trafficking.
8. Expert criminalistics **activities / actions** are carried out by police.
9. Much time is devoted to ensuring of road traffic **accidents / safety**.
10. Police are prohibited to be members of political **meetings / parties**, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities.

13. Match the words underlined in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

legal, observance, illegal, banned, participate, investigations, defence, keeping, prosecutors, performing, basic, keep from

1. The main police activities are:

- Protection of the person, the society and the state against wrongful encroachments
 - Detection and solution of crimes and inquiries in criminal cases
 - Maintenance of law and order in public areas
 - Carrying out of expert criminalistics activities
 - Protection of victims, witnesses, judges, procurators, investigators and other parties to criminal court proceedings.
2. Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities.
3. The police shall pursue their activities in strict compliance with the law.
4. The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen.
5. Both when on duty and off-duty hours police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality or compromise the authority of the police.

14. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
offence		
observance	detective maintained	solve
investigator		legislate
	intended	
		free
prohibition		
provision	protective	associate

15. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

(0) **According** to the Minister of Internal Affairs Vladimir Kolokoltsev police work within the framework of their authority. The (1) ... prevention,

(0) **Accord**

(1) **detect**

suppression and solution of a crime is within the	(2) compete
(2) ... of the Ministry of Internal Affairs. The	
functions of the (3) ... Committee include the	(3) Investigate
investigation of crimes. It means (4) ... and	(4) identify
detaining persons who have (5) ... crimes.	(5) commit
Efficiency of the police is a direct consequence of the	
strict (6) ... discipline. The chief officers should be	(6) execute
(7) ... for the actions and the conduct of	(7) respond
the (8) ... under their command. They should	(8) officer
(9) ... manage subordinate officers through	(9) effective
coaching, counseling, and (10)	(10) discipline

16. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

Police, protect, criminal, were established, stateless, the authority, compliance, Enforcing, to rescue, citizens, are prohibited

1. The police shall ... the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen.
2. Saint Petersburg Police ... by Peter the Great on June 7, 1718 as the main police force in Saint Petersburg.
3. Russian Police protect citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and ... persons.
4. The police shall pursue their activities in strict ... with the law.
5. Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause doubt as to their impartiality or compromise ... of the police.
6. ... law and order, protecting property and ensuring public safety also falls on police.
7. Police duty is to protect the life, health, rights and freedoms of
8. Police ... to be members of political parties.
9. ... must not provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities.
10. It is a police duty to immediately come ... everyone who is in need of their protection.
11. Police should protect citizens against ... and other wrongful encroachments.

17. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. When patrolling the streets police **is protecting / are protecting** citizens against criminal encroachments.
2. Lawful interests of a human being and citizen **should be protected / should be protecting** irrespective of property status and office.
3. While **maintaining / maintained** public order police are ensuring public safety.
4. Law and order **are being constantly enforcing / are being constantly enforced** by police.

5. Their unit **will be maintaining / was maintaining** public order during a football match at this time tomorrow.
6. Police **are prohibiting / are prohibited** to be members of political parties.
7. In the USA police **are protecting / were protecting** the people's houses when their owners are on holiday.
8. Police **have immediately came / have immediately come** to rescue victims of a car crash.
9. **Arrived / having arrived** at a crime scene police were able to apprehend suspects.
10. Police **are searching / were searching** for the prisoners who escaped two days ago.
11. The crime scene **is examining / is being examined** by criminalists at the moment.
12. **Having burgled / having been burgled** a house a burglar escaped through the window.

18. Find in the text and translate sentences with Participle 1 and 2.

19. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **The police** / activities / their / compliance / with strict / in the law / pursue.
2. **The police** / come / protection / need / to rescue / of everyone / who / is / immediately / in / of their.
3. **Victims** / should / witnesses / and / protected / be / by police.
4. **The police** / shall / the rights, / freedoms / protect / and / lawful / citizen / interests / of a human / and / being.
5. **The life,** / health, / of citizens / rights / and / protected / are / freedoms / the police / by.
6. **Crime** / main / prevention / police / is / the duty.
7. **Police** / prohibited / are / actions / members / to be / parties / of / political.
8. **Police** / shall / abstain from / actions / compromise / any / that / can / the authority / the police / of.
9. **Police** / must not / support / provide / material / parties / to political.
10. **By maintaining** / order / public / police / ensuring / are / safety public.

20. Fill in: crimes; encroachments; people; associations; political parties; law and order (2); public safety; crime and offences; the state; citizens; persons; the authority of the police; property; the law; a doubt; crime; rights and freedoms. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 protection of the person, the society and....	10 stateless...
2 prevention and stopping of ...	11 protecting ...
3 detection and solution of...	12 countering ...
4 against wrongful	13 enforcing
5 search for ...	14 in strict compliance with ...
6 maintenance of ...	15 members of
7 ensuring ...	16 public ...
8 protecting the life, health...	17 cause ...
9 foreign ...	18 compromise...

21. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The police is intended for protecting the life, health, rights and freedoms of citizens of the Russian Federation....
2. The police shall immediately come to rescue everyone who
3. The police shall pursue their activities in strict
4. The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen, irrespective of
5. Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, ...
6. Both when on duty and in off-duty hours police shall....
7. Activities of Russian Police:
 - Detection and solution of ...
 - Search for ...
 - Maintenance of...
 - Ensuring of road traffic ...
 - Carrying out of expert ...
 - Protection of victims, witnesses and ...
 - Control over the observance of the legislation of the Russian federation in the area of ...

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

22. Watch a video “CSO Rollout Public” and do the tasks.

1. Before watching a video:

a) Revise the words.

new kind of officers on ...streets	property crime investigation
assist-help	report writing
investigate	professionalism
property crimes	light blue uniform
vehicle theft	dark blue pants
circumstance emergency circumstance	drive a white vehicle
focus on	assist by and investigating,

	identifying
well-trained professionals	problem-related offences
have completed the Training Academy	community policing efforts

b) Learn the words.

CSO (Community Service Officer)	сотрудник полиции по работе с населением
swear sworn officer	клясться, присягать офицер, принявший присягу
roll out roll out a new program	развертывать запустить новую программу
collision	столкновение
respond to	отвечать, реагировать (на что-либо)
emergency calls high priority emergency calls for service	экстренные вызовы высоко приоритетные экстренные вызовы на службу
neighborhood	район, окрестность, квартал,
police reports	полицейские отчеты
visibility	видимость, заметность
high standards meet high standards of the San Jose police department	высокие стандарты отвечать высоким стандартам департамента полиции Сан-Хосе
with an emphasis on	с акцентом на
recognize	признавать
patch wear shoulder patches	нашивка носить нарукавные нашивки
proactive proactive assistance	упреждающий, активный, превентивный превентивная помощь
entire community	все общество (сообщество)

Notes:

beginning from the fall 2014 — начиная с осени 2014 г.

have additional time for providing enforcement — иметь дополнительное время для обеспечения правоприменения

be available for higher priority emergency calls — быть доступными для более высоко приоритетных экстренных вызовов

2. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	sworn officer	a	хорошо подготовленные специалисты
2	respond to	b	район, окрестность,
3	neighborhood	c	написание отчетов

4	visibility	d	чрезвычайные обстоятельства
5	meet high standards	e	написание отчетов
6	with an emphasis on	f	район, окрестность
7	wear shoulder patches	g	отвечать, реагировать
8	well-trained professionals	h	видимость, заметность
9	proactive assistance	i	соответствовать высоким стандартам
10	emergency circumstance	j	носить нарукавные нашивки
11	report writing	k	с акцентом на
12	neighborhood	l	превентивная помощь

3. With a partner, work out the roles based the video and your knowledge on the Law on Police. Then switched the roles.

Cadet A is a PSO serving for San Jose Police Department.

Cadet B is a Russian Police Officer.

Use such language as:

Cadet A:

- Are there Police Service Officers in Russia?
- What are the duties of Russian policemen?
- What investigative activities should Russian police perform?
- What are Russian policemen prohibited to do?
- assist sworn officer
- roll out
- police service officers program
- to investigate
- property crimes
- vehicle theft
- vandalism
- non injury traffic collisions
- non emergency circumstances
- focus on
- high priority emergency calls for service
- more visibility
- providing enforcement
- well-trained professionals
- meet high standards of the San

Cadet B:

- When did Police Service Officers appear in San Jose Police Department?
- What are the duties of Police Service Officers?
- What education do Police Service Officers have?
- maintain law and order in public areas
- ensure the safety of citizens and road traffic safety
- detection and solution of crimes and inquiries in criminal cases
- search for people
- carrying out of expert criminalistics activities
- are prohibited to be members of political parties
- protection of the person, the society and the state against wrongful encroachments
- prevention and stopping of crime and offence

Jose Police Department

- have completed the Training Academy
- report writing
- property crime investigation
- professionalism
- uniform
- drive a white vehicle
- assist in community policing efforts

23. Match the questions on the text to their answers.

1	What is the purpose of the police?	a	Both when on duty and in off-duty hours police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality or compromise the authority of the police
2	How should police follow the rule of law?	b	Detection and solution of crimes and inquiries in criminal cases; search for people; carrying out of expert criminalistics activities; protection of victims, witnesses and other parties to criminal court proceedings (judges, procurators, investigators, and officials of law-enforcement and controlling bodies)
3	What does <i>impartiality</i> mean?	c	Protection of the person, the society and the state against wrongful encroachments and protection of property — are main police activities
4	What are police prohibited to do?	d	The police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen, irrespective of the sex, race, ethnicity, language, origin, property status and office, residence, religion, convictions, membership in public associations and also other circumstances
5	What should policemen abstain from?	e	Police maintain law and order in public areas; ensure the safety of citizens and road traffic safety
6	What are major police activities?	f	The police shall pursue its activities in strict compliance with the law
7	What investigative activities	g	Police are prohibited to be members of

	should police perform?		political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities
8	How do police ensure the safety of citizens and law and order?	h	Prevention and stopping of crime and offences; control over the observance of the legislation of the Russian federation in the area of weapons trafficking
9	What preventive measures are taken by police?	i	The police shall protect the life, health, rights and freedoms of citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and stateless persons counter crime, enforce law and order, protect property and ensure public safety; shall immediately come to rescue everyone who is in need of their protection against criminal and other wrongful encroachments

24. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 22.

Cadet A: You are a British policeman. Ask Cadet B about the work of police in Russia.

Cadet B: You are a Russian police officer. Answer cadet's A questions.

Use the necessary language from task 22.

25. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Purpose of the police
- Rule of law
- Impartiality
- What the police shouldn't do
- Investigative activities
- Ensuring law and order and public safety
- Preventive measures

26. Speak on Russian Police.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The police are intended for ... the life, health, rights and freedoms of citizens.
 - a) visitors
 - b) protecting
 - c) inhabitants
2. The police shall pursue their ... in strict compliance with the law.
 - a) activities
 - b) guidelines
 - c) rules of the department
3. Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material ... to political parties and take part in their activities.
 - a) interested
 - b) controlled
 - c) support
4. Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their ... or compromise the authority of the police.
 - a) professionalism
 - b) impartiality
 - c) skills
5. Police control the observance of the legislation of the Russian federation in the area of ... trafficking.
 - a) goods
 - b) weapons
 - c) vehicles

2. **Fill in:** proceedings; associations; the rights; the legislation; crime and offences; law; victims and witnesses; crimes; to rescue; doubt.

- 1 enforcing ...
- 2 come ...
- 3 protect ...
- 4 public ...
- 5 cause ...
- 6 prevention and stopping of ...
- 7 solution of ...
- 8 protection of ...
- 9 criminal court ...
- 10 observance of ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. The police are the central law enforcement body in Russia, **operating** / **operated** under the Ministry of Internal Affairs.

2. One of the duties **vested / vesting** in the police is to accept and register applications and messages **concerned / concerning** crimes, administrative offences and accidents.

3. The crime scene **was watching / was being watched** for three hours yesterday morning.

4. One of the witnesses **is being interviewed / was being interviewed** at the moment.

5. The information, **reported / reporting** to police, was about car theft.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the box.

prevention; protection; encroachments; solution; people; law and order; court

1. The police shall immediately come to rescue everyone who is in need of their

2. The main police activities are:

- a) Protection of the person, the society and the state against wrongful ...
- b) ... and stopping of crime and offences
- c) Detection and ... of crimes and inquiries in criminal cases
- d) Search for ...
- e) Maintenance of ... in public areas
- f) Protection of victims, witnesses and other parties to criminal ... proceedings against criminal and other wrongful encroachments

5. Choose the correct answer.

1. Who shall the police immediately come to rescue?

- a) The police shall immediately come to rescue of children and disabled people
- b) The police shall immediately come to rescue of foreign citizens
- c) The police shall immediately come to rescue of everyone who is in need of their protection against criminal and other wrongful encroachments

2. How shall the police pursue their activities?

- a) The police shall pursue their activities according to the rules of the department
- b) The police shall pursue their activities in strict compliance with the law
- c) The police shall pursue their activities according to their functions

3. What are police prohibited to do?

- a) Police are prohibited to be members of political parties, provide material support to political parties and take part in their activities
- b) Police are prohibited to take part in the election of the president
- c) Police are prohibited to wear a uniform when off duty

4. What should police abstain from?

- a) Police shall abstain from dealing with mass media
- b) Police shall abstain from any actions that can cause a doubt as to their impartiality or compromise the authority of the police

c) Police shall abstain from visiting overcrowded places

5. What does impartiality mean?

a) Impartiality means professionalism

b) Impartiality means protecting the life, health, rights and freedoms of citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and stateless persons; countering crime, enforcing law and order, protecting property and ensuring public safety

c) Impartiality means that the police shall protect the rights, freedoms and lawful interests of a human being and citizen, irrespective of the sex, race, ethnicity, language, origin, property status and office, residence, religion, and also other circumstances

Module III CRIME CLASSIFICATION

Part A

Lead-in:

Look at the pictures and discuss the questions.



- What is a woman in the photo doing?
- What kind of crime is she committing?
- What crime do you think the captions of the second picture mean?

Reading 1

1. *Work in pairs. Look at the title of the text and the photo. What do you think the text is about? What definition of crime and classification of crimes do you know?*
2. *Read the text, check your ideas from Exercise 1.*

The Concept of Crime and Crime Classification

The term “crime” does not have any simple and universally accepted definition. A crime can be defined as any illegal act prosecuted by the state and punishable by law. The criminal law of each country defines what a criminal offence is. According to the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation a crime is a socially dangerous act **committed** with guilt and prohibited by this Code under threat of punishment. Criminal offences can be seen and classified from a multitude of angles: the target of the act (person, object, natural environment, State, etc.); the impact on victims; the way they have been perpetrated (the use or threat of force, violence, dishonesty, intimidation, or unauthorized access); the offender’s motive and the seriousness of the offence (acts leading to death, causing harm, etc.).

In the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity (punishable by a maximum of three years imprisonment), crimes of average gravity (punishable by a maximum of five years imprisonment), grave crimes (punishable by a maximum of ten years imprisonment), and especially grave crimes (punishable by more than ten years imprisonment).

In the United States, the federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine or incarceration for one year or less to be a **misdemeanor**. Felonies are serious crimes punishable by imprisonment or death.

There are many different types of crime: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and other crimes.

Crimes against the person

Crimes against persons involve direct physical harm or force applied to another person. Violent crimes and sexual offences types cover a range of offence. Violence can cover minor **assaults** from pushing and threatening that result in no real physical harm to aggravated assault and murder. The most serious crime in this category is murder. **Manslaughter**, rape, **mugging**, hijacking, kidnapping, human trafficking, **child abuse**, and domestic violence are also considered crimes against the person.

Crimes against property

Property crime includes both crimes in which property is destroyed and crimes in which property is stolen or taken against the owner's will. This category of crimes does not inflict injury on a victim.

A broad range of offenses are classified as crimes against property, including robbery, **burglary**, **theft**, motor vehicle theft, arson, pickpocketing, **shoplifting**, and vandalism.

Other crimes

Crimes that fall into the 'other crimes' category often have no obvious 'victim'. This means that these *crimes* may have had several unintended victims. This category includes white collar crimes; traffic crimes and drug and alcohol related crimes.

White collar crimes are difficult to prosecute because they often involve sophisticated systems and even many different people. Typically committed white collar crimes are: fraud, **bribery**, embezzlement, cybercrime, copyright infringement, money laundering, identity theft, and **forgery**.

Traffic crimes cover such offences as driving without insurance or a licence, reckless driving, driving under the influence.

Most of crimes are linked in one way or another to alcohol or drug use. Drunkenness, **breach of the peace**, or drinking underage; possession, sale and manufacture of drugs can all be punished by law.

3. Learn the vocabulary:

abuse <i>n</i> child abuse	плохое, жестокое обращение жестокое обращение с детьми
accept <i>v</i> universally accepted	принимать общепринятый
angle <i>n</i>	точка зрения, сторона
arson <i>n</i>	поджог
assault <i>n</i> aggravated assault	нападение физическое насилие при отягчающих обстоятельствах

breach <i>n</i>	нарушение (закона, обязательств)
bribery <i>n</i>	взяточничество
burglary <i>n</i>	кража со взломом
cause <i>v</i>	причинять, наносить
commit <i>v</i>	совершать (правонарушение)
consider <i>v</i>	считать, рассматривать
define <i>v</i>	определять, давать определение
drug <i>n</i>	наркотик
drug possession	хранение наркотиков
embezzlement <i>n</i>	присвоение или растрата имущества
environment <i>n</i>	окружающая среда
felony <i>n</i>	тяжкое уголовное преступление, фелония
fine <i>n</i>	штраф
force <i>n</i>	насилие
forgery <i>n</i>	подлог или подделка документа
fraud <i>n</i>	обман; мошенничество
grave <i>a</i>	тяжкий
gravity <i>n</i>	тяжесть
average gravity	средней тяжести
guilt <i>n</i>	виновность
harm <i>n, v</i>	вред; убыток, повреждение, ущерб причинять вред; наносить ущерб
hijacking <i>n</i>	захват, угон судна, самолёта
impact <i>n</i>	воздействие; влияние
incarceration <i>n</i>	тюремное заключение
inflict <i>v</i>	наносить (удар, рану); причинять (боль, убыток)
infringement <i>n</i>	нарушение (закона, клятвы)
copyright infringement	нарушение авторского права
injury <i>n</i>	повреждение, убыток, ущерб, рана, ушиб
influence <i>n</i>	влияние, воздействие
under the influence	в состоянии алкогольного опьянения, пьяный
intend <i>v</i>	намереваться, иметь намерение; умышлять
unintended	непреднамеренный, неумышленный
intimidation <i>n</i>	запугивание; устрашение
kidnapping <i>n</i>	киднеппинг, похищение людей
laundering <i>n</i>	отмывание денег
money laundering	
manslaughter <i>n</i>	непредумышленное убийство
misdemeanor <i>n</i>	мисдиминор, мелкое правонарушение
mugging <i>n</i>	грабёж с насилием (бандитское нападение на человека на улице)
murder <i>n</i>	убийство (предумышленное, совершённое со злым умыслом)
perpetrate <i>v</i>	совершать (преступление)

pickpocketing <i>n</i>	карманная кража
prohibit <i>v</i>	запрещать
prosecute <i>v</i>	преследовать в судебном или уголовном порядке
punish <i>v</i>	наказывать
push <i>v</i>	толкать; пихать
rape <i>n</i>	изнасилование
reckless <i>a</i> reckless driving	неосторожный неосторожная, опасная езда
robbery <i>n</i>	ограбление (с применением насилия), грабёж
seriousness <i>n</i>	(зд.) тяжесть
sophisticated <i>a</i>	сложный, изощренный
steal (stole, stolen) <i>v</i>	воровать, красть
target <i>n</i>	объект, цель
theft <i>n</i>	воровство, кража
threat <i>n</i>	опасность, угроза
threaten <i>v</i>	грозить, угрожать (чем-либо)
vehicle <i>n</i>	транспортное средство
violence <i>n</i> domestic violence	жестокость, насилие бытовое насилие, насилие в семье
violent <i>a</i>	насильственный, жестокий
white-collar crime	должностные преступления, «беловоротничковая преступность» (преступная махинация, совершённая служащим или лицом, занимающим высокое общественное положение)
will <i>n</i>	воля; желание

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	guilt	a	запрещать
2	prohibit	b	воздействие
3	punishment	c	тяжкий
4	target	d	преступление
5	impact	e	вина
6	seriousness	f	наказание
7	grave	g	тяжесть
8	harm	h	насильственный
9	violent	i	объект
10	inflict	j	воровать
11	obvious	k	явный
12	steal	l	вред
13	offence	m	сложный
14	sophisticated	n	нарушение
15	breach	o	наносить

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	под угрозой наказания	a	committed with guilt
2	влияние на потерпевшего	b	prohibited by this code
3	виновно совершенное	c	under threat of punishment
4	нанести телесные повреждения	d	the target of the act
5	запрещенное настоящим кодексом	e	impact on victims
6	охватывать ряд разных типов преступлений	f	seriousness of the offence
7	тяжесть преступления	g	especially grave crimes
8	объект деяния	h	cause harm
9	сложные системы	i	violent crimes
10	красть имущество	j	inflict injury
11	причинить вред	k	obvious 'victim'
12	нарушение (общественного) порядка	l	steal property
13	явный пострадавший	m	cover a range of offences
14	особо тяжкие преступления	n	sophisticated systems
15	насильственные преступления	o	breach of the peace

6. Match the antonyms.

1	guilt	a	permit
2	threaten	b	intentional
3	dangerous	c	innocence
4	prohibit	d	protect
5	different	e	minor
6	serious	f	safe
7	unintended	g	similar
8	unauthorized	h	honesty
9	dishonesty	i	legitimate
10	sophisticated	j	primitive
11	typically	k	cautious
12	reckless	l	Unusually

7. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

A simple and universally accepted definition; illegal act prosecuted by the state; according to the criminal code; the use of force; intimidation; unauthorized access; depends on the seriousness of the crime; crimes of little gravity; punishable by a fine or incarceration; cover a range of offence; minor assaults, from pushing and threatening to aggravated assault; the most serious crime in this category; manslaughter; does not inflict injury on a victim; crimes against property; motor vehicle theft; no obvious 'victim'; difficult to prosecute; involve sophisticated

systems and many different people; typically committed white collar crimes; identity theft; crimes linked in one way or another to alcohol or drug use.

8. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Виновно совершенное общественно опасное деяние
2. Запрещенное настоящим кодексом под угрозой наказания
3. С разных точек зрения
4. Способ совершения преступления
5. Мотив преступника
6. Деяния, приводящие к смерти
7. Деяния, причиняющие вред человеку
8. Влечет за собой непосредственное причинение телесных повреждений
9. Считаются преступлениями против личности
10. Включают преступления, при которых уничтожается или повреждается имущество
11. Преступления, при которых совершается хищение имущества
12. Завладеть имуществом помимо воли владельца
13. Не приводят к телесным повреждениям
14. Относятся к категории «другие преступления»
15. Возможно, было несколько непреднамеренных жертв

9. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 a minor wrongdoing
- 2 a physical attack
- 3 physical maltreatment or sexual molestation of a child
- 4 perpetrate or carry out (a mistake, crime, or immoral act)
- 5 the crime of killing a human being without malice aforethought, or in circumstances not amounting to murder
- 6 an act of attacking and robbing someone in a public place
- 7 the action or crime of stealing
- 8 illegal entry of a building with intent to commit a crime, especially theft
- 9 the giving or offering of a bribe
- 10 the action of forging a copy or imitation of a document, signature, banknote, or work of art

**10. Use the word / phrases in the box to make word combinations with the words.
E.g.: concept of crime**

crime(s) / offence; harm; property; victim

concept; steal; the seriousness of the; direct physical; classification of; little gravity; destroy; take against the owner's will; grave; serious; against the person; involve; against property; no obvious; drug and alcohol related; cause; sexual; cover; the most serious; white collar; inflict; unintended; traffic

11. Choose the correct word / words.

1. A crime can be defined as any illegal act prosecuted by the state and punishable by **law / community**.

2. According to the **Constitution / Criminal Code** of the Russian Federation a crime is a socially dangerous act committed with **violence / guilt** and prohibited by this Code under threat of **punishment / death**.

3. Criminal offences can be seen and classified from a multitude of angles: the **danger / target** of the act; the seriousness of the offence; the impact on **society / victims**.

4. In the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of average gravity, grave crimes and **exceptionally grave / especially grave** crimes.

5. Crimes against persons involve direct physical harm or force applied to **property / another person**.

6. Property crime includes crimes in which property is destroyed or **transferred / stolen**.

7. Property crime does not inflict **punishment / injury** on a victim.

8. Crimes that fall into the 'other crimes' category have no obvious **victim / criminal**.

9. White collar crimes are difficult to prosecute because they often involve **a multitude of / sophisticated** systems and many different people.

10. Most **breach of the peace / crimes** can be linked in one way or another to alcohol or drug use.

12. Find to the underlined words synonyms given in the box.

influence; injury; unlawful gravity; object; large number; point of view; include; damage; offences; break; stealing; committed; related; complex

1. A crime can be defined as any (1) illegal act prosecuted by the state and punishable by law.

2. Criminal offences can be seen and classified from a (2) multitude of (3) angles; the (4) target of the act; the (5) impact on victims; the way they have been (6) perpetrated; the offender's motive and the (7) seriousness of the offence.

3. In the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation (8) crimes are classified into four categories.

4. Crimes against persons involve direct physical (9) harm to another person.

5. Violence can (10) cover minor assaults from pushing and threatening to aggravated assault and murder.

6. Property crime includes crimes in which property is (11) destroyed and stolen.

7. Crimes against property include burglary, (12) theft, arson, pickpocketing, etc.

8. White collar crimes often involve (13) sophisticated systems.

9. Most of crimes are (14) linked to alcohol or drug use.

10. (15) Breach of the peace, or drinking underage can all be punished by law.

e.g. What are serious crime categories?
What does contact crime cover?

13. a) Complete columns **B** and **C** of the chart.

TYPES OF CRIME AND TYPES OF CRIMINAL

A Crime	B Action(verb)	C Criminal	D What does a criminal do?
theft	thieve	thief	
murder			
mugging			
smuggling			
shoplifting			
bribery		—	
reckless driving			
vandalism			
hijacking			
pickpocketing			
robbery			

b) Complete the sentences with appropriate words from the chart in their correct form.

1. He was accused of ... a senior bank official.
2. An air hostess was arrested and charged with drug
3. The police arrived at the scene of the
4. The ... have put the lives of about 10,000 air passengers at risk.
5. The Fifa executive committee agreed to accept ... in connection with the selection of South Africa as the host of the 2010 World Cup.
6. No one is safe since a ... can bump on to a building and cause loss to the landlords.
7. The ... has admitted knocking down a 93-year-old man and leaving him with an injured shoulder as he robbed him of just £5.
8. According to Seattle police, a single drunken ... damaged cars in the early morning hours near an apartment complex on Raymond Street.
9. Around 5:30 p.m. on July 15, two ... entered the Lululemon store, where one of them reached into a shopper's purse and took off with the wallet, which contained roughly \$1,000 in cash.

c) Complete the chart above, column D.

e.g. Thieves steal another person's property without using force or threat of violence.

d) Rank the crimes in order of their seriousness. Compare with the partner. Give reasons for your opinion.

I think **hijacking** is the most serious ...

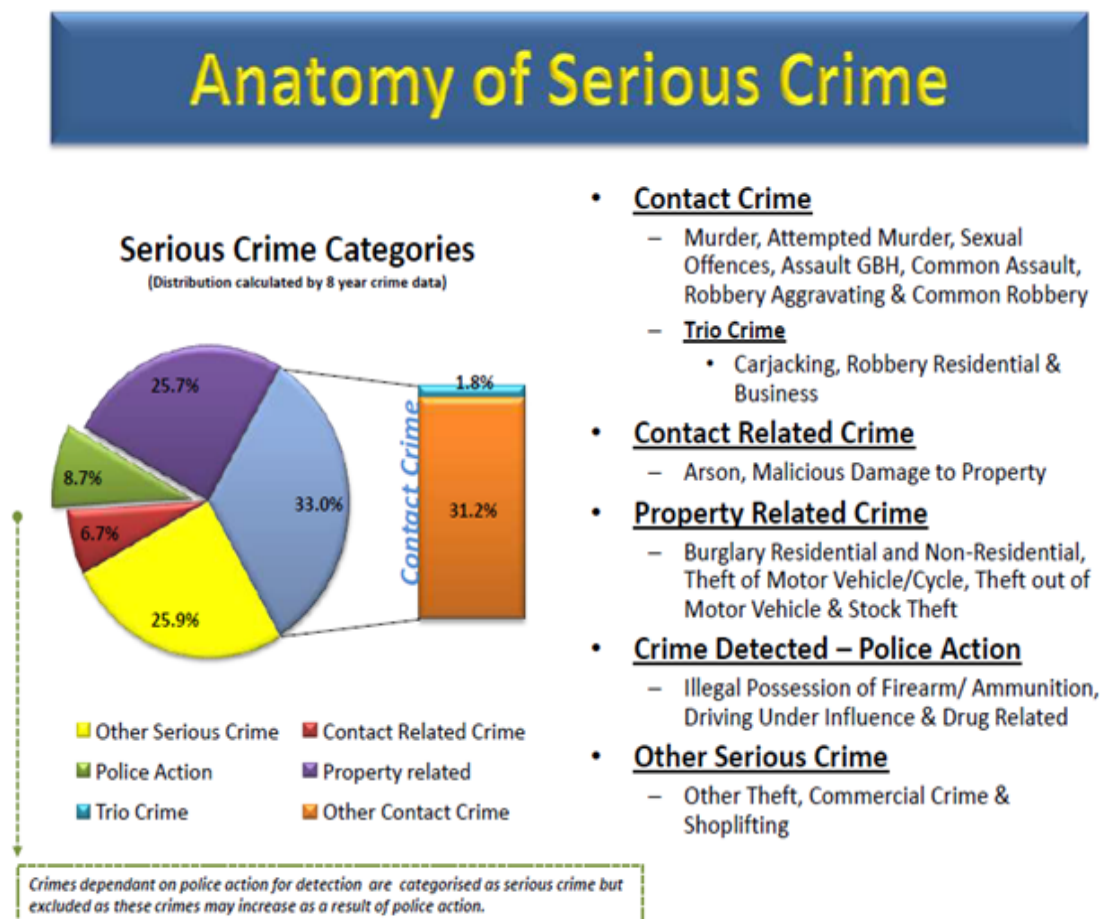
No. In my opinion, **murder** is worse because ...

14. a) Write down in your copybook names of crimes that start with the letter.

A ...	H ...
B ...	I ...
C ...	M ...
D ...	P ...
E ...	S ...
F ...	T ...
G ...	V ...

b) Describe one of these crimes to your partner not naming it. Can your partner guess?

15. Study the diagram “Anatomy of Serious Crime”. Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions concerning serious crime categories.



Watching 1

Pre-viewing

16. Think and say. What is “a crime”? What document defines and classifies crimes? What are main types of crime?

17. Learn the words.

homicide	убийство
false imprisonment	неправомерное лишение свободы

While viewing

18. Listen to Trent R.Buckalew, Arizona Criminal Defense Lawyer, discussing general categories of the Criminal Code of Arizona and be ready to answer the questions:

1. What are three main categories in the Criminal Code of Arizona?
2. What crimes do crimes against the person include?
3. What range of offenses do crimes against property cover?
4. What drug crimes are there according to the Criminal Code of Arizona?

Post viewing

19. Think and say. What are the main crime categories in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation? What is the structure of each category?

20. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

According to the Criminal Code of RU a crime is a socially (0) **dangerous** act (1) with guilt and prohibited by this Code (0) **danger** under threat of (2) Classification of crimes may be based (1) **commit** on: the target of the act; its (3) ...; the way it has been (2) **punish** perpetrated, etc. There are three main crime categories: crimes (3) **serious** against the person; crimes against property; and public order crimes. A personal crime is a (4) ... crime that results in physical, emotional, or psychological harm to the (5) (4) **violence** Violent crimes include murder, rape, and assault. Property (5) **victimize** crime is a category of crime that includes theft, (6) ..., vehicle theft, arson, vandalism. It deals with damage (7) ... of property. Property crimes don't involve the (8) ... of harm. (6) **rob** Public order offenses include prostitution, drug-related crimes, (7) **thieve** (9) ... the peace, public intoxication, etc. These crimes are (8) **inflict** considered less serious than violent and property ones (9) **disturb**

21. Use the words to complete the sentences.

1	angles	10	misdemeanor
2	harm	11	murder
3	bribery	12	grave
4	categories	13	burglary
5	universally	14	reckless
6.	considered	15	breach
7	defines	16	traffic
8	obvious	17	destroyed
9	committed		

1. The term “crime” does not have any simple and ... accepted definition.
2. The criminal law of each country ... what a criminal offence is.
3. According to the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation a crime is a socially dangerous act ... with guilt and prohibited by this Code under threat of punishment.
4. Criminal offences can be seen and classified from a multitude of ...: the target of the act; the impact on victims; the way they have been perpetrated; the offender’s motive and the seriousness of the offence.
5. In the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of average gravity, ... crimes, and especially grave crimes.
6. In the United States, crimes are grouped into felonies and
7. Crimes can be divided into three main ...: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and other crimes.
8. Crimes against persons involve direct physical ... or force applied to another person.
9. The most serious crime in this category is
10. Manslaughter, rape, mugging, hijacking, kidnapping, human trafficking, child abuse, and domestic violence are also ... crimes against the person.
11. Property crimes include crimes in which property is ..., stolen or taken against the owner’s will.
12. A broad range of offenses are classified as crimes against property, including ..., theft, robbery, motor vehicle theft, arson, pickpocketing, shoplifting, and vandalism.
13. Crimes that fall into the ‘other crimes’ category often have no ... ‘victim’.
14. This category includes white collar crimes; ... crimes and drug-and alcohol-related crimes.
15. Typically committed white collar crimes are: fraud, ..., embezzlement, money laundering, identity theft etc.
16. Traffic crimes cover such offences as driving without insurance or a licence, ... driving, driving under the influence.

17. Drunkenness, ... of the peace, or drinking underage; possession, sale and manufacture of drugs can all be punished by law.

22. Find in the sentences gerund and gerund construction.

1. A hunter in Granby will have to pay more than \$11,000 *for trespassing*¹ and killing a high-quality bull elk.

2. Delaware State Police are trying to identify a man suspected of robbing Fund Bank.

3. A 38-year-old detective and a 51-year-old sergeant with the Santa Cruz Police Department were killed while attempting an arrest around 3:25 p.m. on February 26.

4. The suspect denied his having broken the law.

5. The chances of a police officer being assaulted are three times greater.

6. A 10-year-old arsonist is accused of setting a local store on fire.

7. They got into the house by breaking a kitchen window.

8. A man serving time² for a burglary has escaped from an Oregon Prison by breaking a kitchen window.

9. Lee Harvey Oswald denied shooting President Kennedy.

10. Last month four schoolgirls aged 15 and 16 from County Durham avoided jail after being caught smuggling 200,000 cigarettes into Britain.

11. The three members of Youth Movement were found guilty of contesting the restrictive legislation³.

12. The number of drivers given fine for using mobile phones at the wheel fell by 24 % last year in England and Wales.

13. Shaun Worthington was driving home when he crashed after sending a text.

14. If a driver is caught using a phone, police forces will choose what they believe to be the right enforcement action to deter the driver from doing so again.

15. Monday's incident had every appearance of being intentional.



23. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. The sentence starts from the word in bold.

1. **The term** / not / does / definition / have / “crime” / and universally / accepted / any simple.

2. **What** / the definition / document / of a criminal / gives / offence?

3. **What** / according to / the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation / is / a crime?

4. **What way** / classified / criminal / can / offences / be?

¹ Потивоправное нарушение владения.

² Отбывать срок.

³ Оспаривание ограничительного законодательства.

5. **What** /are /categories / crime / in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation?
6. **What** /classification / is / in the USA / crime?
7. **What** /types of crime / are / different?
8. **What** /crimes / do / against persons / involve?
9. **What crimes** / crimes / against / are / the person / considered?
10. **What** /crimes / do / against property / involve?
11. **What crimes** / crimes / against / are / property / considered?
12. **Crimes** / the 'other crimes' category / often have / 'victim' / no obvious / that fall into / .
13. **Why** / it difficult / to prosecute / white collar crimes / is?
14. **What** / committed / typically / white collar crimes / are?
15. **What** / traffic crimes / cover / do?
16. **Most of crimes** / to alcohol / are / in one way or another / or drug use / linked.

24. Fill in: grave, guilt, fall into, destroy, seriousness, unintended, harm, cover, angles, involve, reckless, crimes, sophisticated, injury, linked, breach. **Make sentences based on the text using the phrases.**

1 committed with ...	9 violent ...
2 a multitude of ...	10 ... offences
3 ... crimes	11 ... property
4 ... of the offence	12 inflict
5 ... harm	13 ... the category
6 ... victims	14 result in no ...
7 ... systems	15 ... driving
8 ... of the peace	16 ... to alcohol or drugs

25. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The term "crime" does not have
2. The criminal law of each country defines
3. According to the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation a crime is
4. Criminal offences can be seen and classified from a multitude of angles:
5. In the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation crimes are classified into
6. In the United States, the federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine or
7. Felonies are serious crimes punishable by
8. Crimes can be divided into three main categories:
9. Crimes against persons involve
10. Violence can cover minor assaults from ... that result in no ... to aggravated
11. The most serious crime in this category is
12. ... are also considered crimes against the person.
13. Property crime includes both crimes in which property is

14. This category of crimes does not inflict
15. A broad range of offenses are classified as crimes against property, including
16. Crimes that fall into the 'other crimes' category often have
17. This category includes white
18. Typically committed white collar crimes are:
19. Traffic crimes cover such offences as
20. ... can all be punished by law.

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and Speaking

Listening 2

Pre-listening

26. *Think and say.* What are the most common crimes in Russia.

27. *Before listening, try to remember the following words:*

Albuquerque	Альбукерке (город в США, штат Нью-Мексико)
gang	банда, шайка
valley	долина

28. *Listen to the interview with Rebecca about the status of crime in the United States. Be ready to answer the question: What are the most common crimes in America, particularly in Albuquerque?*

Words in the box will help you. There is one extra word.

pickpocketing; shootings; minor assaults; stolen vehicles; robberies; problems; kidnapping	gang

Listening 3

29. *Learn the following words:*

purse	кошелек, дамская сумочка
calm down	успокаиваться
bump (into)	натолкнуться на (кого-либо)
ID	удостоверение личности

30. *Listen to the conversation between a citizen and a police officer. What crime was committed? Mark the statements as true (T) or false (F).*

1. The woman says that a suspect wore a mask over his face.
2. The man bumped into the citizen.
3. The woman's ID was stolen.

31. Listen to it again and complete the conversation.

Citizen: Oh, officer, I'm so glad I found you.

Officer: Are you (1)... Miss?

Citizen: No, not at all. Someone just stole my (2) ...!

Officer: All right, try to (3).... Did you see the person who stole your purse?

Citizen: No — it was very (4)... I just felt someone bump into me. Then my purse was gone.

Officer: What did you have in your purse?

Citizen: Some (5) ... A little money and my ID.

Officer: Okay, well don't worry Miss. We'll do what we can to find the (6) ...and your purse.

32. Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

a mobile; was gone; stole; bump into

A. Someone just (a) ... my bag.

B. Calm down, please. And tell me what happened.

A. Okay, officer. I was taking on the bus and felt that someone (b) ... me. Then my bag (c) ...

B. What did you have in your bag?

A. (d)... and a wallet.

Before you watch

33. Work in pairs. Say your partner everything you know about pickpocketing.

34. Learn the following words:

clothing	одежда
items of clothing	предметы одежды
conceal	скрывать, прятать
similar	подобный
distract	отвлекать
belongings	вещи
diversion	отвлечение внимания
deliberate	умышленный
chopping	(зд.) разбрасывание
stall	отвлекать
ticket barrier	турникет
dip	карманная кража
vulnerable	уязвимый
offer	предлагать
brush off	смахивать (пыль, мусор)

35. Watch a video about pickpocketing “Tricks of Pickpockets” and complete the sentences. The words from the vocabulary list will help you.

1. Thieves often use a newspaper or an item of clothing to ... their hand while they deal with the victim's pockets or bags.
2. One of the thieves ... the victim asking for direction, another steals their belongings.
3. Thieves might create a diversion by ... chopping coins on the floor.
4. The first pickpocket could the victim when they go to the train or bus or go through the
5. A common tactic is to ...a victim as they buy a ticket on a train or bus if their bag is left open they are vulnerable for theft.
6. Pickpockets tell sometimes their victim they have something on their coat and offer to

36. Use information from the text and the audio and discuss with a partner the most vulnerable areas for pickpocketing and pickpockets' tactics.

e.g. The most vulnerable areas for pickpocketing are the underground, railway stations, ...
Pickpockets work together to create distraction by asking the way, ...

37. With a partner, have conversations using the phrases below. Use Exercises 31, 32 as a model.

- a) go through a ticket barrier / was stolen / metro station / ID
- b) choose a souvenir / bag stolen / a shopping mall / a wallet

Use language such as:

Calm down.

Did you see...?

What did you have?

What was stolen?

Can you explain what happened?

38. Match the questions from the 1st column to the answers from the 2nd column.

1 What is a crime?	a Crimes can be divided into three main categories: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and other crimes
2 How crime is defined in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation?	b Criminal offences can be seen and classified from a multitude of angles: the target of the act; the impact on victims; the way they have been perpetrated; the offender's motive and the seriousness of

- the offence
- 3 What way can crimes be classified? **c** According to the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation a crime is a socially dangerous act committed with guilt and prohibited by this Code under threat of punishment
 - 4 What are crime categories in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation? **d** A crime can be defined as any illegal act prosecuted by the state and punishable by law
 - 5 What is the US crime classification? **e** In the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of average gravity, grave crimes, and especially grave crimes
 - 6 What categories can crimes be divided? **f** Manslaughter, rape, mugging, hijacking, kidnapping, human trafficking, child abuse, and domestic violence are also considered crimes against the person
 - 7 What is a personal crime? **g** In the US, the federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine or incarceration for one year or less to be a misdemeanor. Felonies are serious crimes punishable by imprisonment or death
 - 8 What crimes are considered crimes against the person? **h** A broad range of offenses are classified as crimes against property, including burglary, robbery, theft, motor vehicle theft, arson, pickpocketing, shoplifting, and vandalism
 - 9 What is the object of property crimes? **i** Most of crimes are linked in one way or another to alcohol or drug use
 - 10 What crimes refer to property ones? **j** Crimes against persons involve direct physical harm or force applied to another person
 - 11 What differs “other crime” category from personal and property crime categories? **k** Property crime includes both crimes in which property is destroyed and crimes in which property is stolen or taken against the owner’s will
 - 12 What crimes refer to “other crime” category? **l** Typically committed white collar crimes are: fraud, bribery, embezzlement, cybercrime, copyright infringement, money laundering, identity theft, and forgery
 - 13 Why is it difficult to prosecute white collar crimes? **m** Traffic crimes cover such offences as driving without insurance or a licence,

		reckless driving, driving under the influence
14	What offenses do white-collar crimes include?	n White collar crimes are difficult to prosecute because they often involve sophisticated systems and even many different people
15	What do traffic crimes cover?	o Crimes that fall into the 'other crimes' category often have no obvious 'victim'. This means that these crimes may have had several unintended victims
16	What are most of crimes linked to?	p "Other crime" category includes white collar crimes; traffic crimes and drug and alcohol related crimes

39. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 38. Then, switch roles.

Cadet A: You are a **cadet**. Ask Cadet B about different types of crimes.

Cadet B: You are a **professor** of Criminal Law Department. Talk to Cadet A about crime categories.

40. Make notes under the headings. Use notes to give the summary of the text "The Concept of Crime and Crime Classification".

- Crime definition;
- Classification of crimes in the the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation;
- US classification of crimes;
- Types of crime:
 - o Crimes against the person
 - o Crimes against property
 - o Other crimes category

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. According to the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation a crime is a socially dangerous act committed with ... and prohibited by this Code under threat of punishment.

- a) guilt
- b) force
- c) violence

2. In the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of ... gravity, grave crimes, and especially grave crimes.

- a) less
- b) average
- c) more

3. Crimes against persons involve direct physical ... or force applied to another person.

- a) contact
- b) abuse
- c) harm

4. Property crimes do not ... injury on a victim.

- a) damage
- b) hurt
- c) inflict

5. Crimes that fall into the 'other crimes' category often have no obvious

...

- a) victim
- b) suspect
- c) offender

2. **Fill in:** destroy, breach, grave, linked, unintended, committed, inflict, violent, seriousness, sophisticated.

- 1 ... with guilt
- 2 ... of the offence
- 3 ... crimes
- 4 ... crimes
- 5 ... of the peace
- 6 ... victims
- 7 ... injury
- 8 ... property
- 9 ... systems
- 10 ... to alcohol or drugs

3. **Choose the correct word / words.**

1. A crime can be defined as any illegal act prosecuted by the state and punishable by **law / community**.

2. Criminal offences can be seen and classified from a multitude of angles: the **danger / target** of the act; the seriousness of the offence; the impact on **society / victims**.

3. Crimes against persons involve direct physical harm or force applied to **property / another person**.

4. Property crime includes crimes in which property is destroyed or **transferred / stolen**.

5. White collar crimes are difficult to prosecute because they often involve **a multitude of / sophisticated** systems and many different people.

4. **Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.**

- 1. The criminal law of each country ... what a criminal offence is.
- 2. In the United States, crimes are grouped into felonies and

3. Crimes can be divided into three main ...: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and other crimes.
4. The most serious crime is
5. A broad range of offenses are classified as crimes against ... including theft, arson, pickpocketing, shoplifting, and vandalism.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. What is a crime?
 - a) any illegal act prosecuted by the state and punishable by law
 - b) any illegal act
 - c) a violent *act* that results in physical, emotional, or psychological harm
2. What is a personal crime?
 - a) a crime in which property is destroyed and crimes in which property is stolen or taken against the owner's will
 - b) a crime involving direct physical harm or force applied to another person
 - c) a common law crime that can be committed by one or a number of people
3. Can property crime cause injury?
 - a) These crimes involve direct physical harm
 - b) These crimes can be severe enough to cause alarm to ordinary people and threaten serious disturbance to the community
 - c) This category of crimes does not inflict injury on a victim
4. What crimes refer to "other crime" category?
 - a) white collar crimes; traffic crimes and drug and alcohol related crimes
 - b) arson, pickpocketing, shoplifting, and vandalism
 - c) minor assaults from pushing and threatening to aggravated assault
5. What are most of crimes linked to?
 - a) organized crime
 - b) to alcohol or drug use
 - c) possession, sale and manufacture of drugs

Lead-in

Look at the pictures and discuss the questions.



- What kind of crime is being committed?
- What crime do you think the captions of the second picture mean?

1. Read the text and be ready to do the tasks after the text.

Crime Categories

Millions of criminal acts occur each year, and their diversity is shocking. **Crimes** range in seriousness from shoplifting to serial murder. Some crimes are violent and destructive; others are motivated by economic gain; and some crimes are acts threatening or violating the moral standards of society.

Crimes can be divided into three main categories: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and crimes against society (public order crimes). Within these categories, there are lots of types of crime.

Crimes against persons or violent crimes are offenses which involve force or threat of intentional harm. The police will record a crime as violent if the offender intended to harm a person, regardless of whether or not the person actually gets hurt. The infliction of harm can include the use of weapons, poison, bodily contact, and more.

Most violent crimes are felony crimes. Violent crimes include murder, manslaughter, rape, and aggravated **assault**. Kidnapping, child abuse, and **domestic violence** are also considered crimes against the person.

The most common form of criminal activity is *property crime*. Crimes against property are not directed at an individual, there is no force or threat of force against the victims.

These crimes are aimed at property. Property crime is any crime involving the **theft** or destruction of property that belongs to another person. These include **burglary**, **robbery**, theft, pickpocketing, shoplifting, motor vehicle theft, vandalism.



Usually, people are not injured, but it is possible that individuals may be harmed, as in **arson**.

Property crimes are usually **misdemeanor** crimes. However, if they result in serious damage or theft of valuable property, they are felonies.

Public order offenses are considered less serious than violent and property crimes. But they can have great effects on public health, safety, and the economy. Public order crimes involve acts that violate social norms and moral standards. Public order crimes can be grouped by two basic perspectives: (1) morality and (2) law and order. Crimes against morality include prostitution, pornography, **gambling**, drug use and trafficking. Crimes against law and order are disturbing the peace, public intoxication, drunk driving, reckless driving, selling alcohol to minors, etc.

Beyond these criminal activities, the criminal justice system (depending on the jurisdiction) is confronted with some other forms of illegal behavior - transnational crimes; billion dollar business enterprise crimes (or **white-collar crimes**) such as **fraud**, **bribery**, embezzlement; international sex trafficking; terrorism; environmental offences, and cyber crime.

Study Skills

2. Learn the vocabulary:

abuse	плохое, жестокое обращение
child abuse	жестокое обращение с детьми
arson n	поджог
assault n	нападение
aggravated assault	физическое насилие при отягчающих обстоятельствах
bribery n	взяточничество
burglary n	квартирная кража со взломом
damage n, v	вред, повреждение; ущерб; повреждать, портить; наносить ущерб, убыток
diversity n	разнообразие; многообразие
embezzlement n	присвоение или растрата имущества
environmental adj	относящийся к окружающей среде; экологический
felony n	тяжкое уголовное преступление, фелония
forbidden adj	запретный; запрещённый
force	насилие, принуждение
fraud n	обман; мошенничество
gain n	прибыль, выгода
gambling n	азартная игра; игра на деньги
harm n,v	вред; убыток, повреждение, ущерб причинять вред; наносить ущерб
hurt n, v	телесное повреждение наносить, причинять телесное повреждение
infliction n	нанесение, причинение (личного или имущественного вреда)
injure v	ранить, получить травму

intend v	намереваться, иметь намерение; умышлять
intentional adj	намеренный, преднамеренный, умышленный
manslaughter n	непредумышленное убийство
misdemeanor n	мисдиминор, мелкое правонарушение
murder n	убийство (предумышленное, совершённое со злым умыслом)
occur v	происходить, случаться, совершаться
pickpocketing n	карманная кража
range v	классифицировать
rape n	изнасилование
reckless adj reckless driving	неосторожный неосторожная, опасная езда
record v	регистрировать
regardless of prep	независимо от
robbery n	ограбление (с применением насилия), грабёж; разбой
seriousness n	тяжесть (преступления)
shoplifting n	магазинная кража
theft n	воровство, кража
vehicle n	транспортное средство
violate v	нарушать, преступать
violence n domestic violence	жестокость, насилие бытовое насилие, насилие в семье
violent adj	насильственный
white-collar crime	должностные преступления, «беловоротничковая преступность» (преступная махинация, совершённая служащим или лицом, занимающим высокое общественное положение)

3. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 violent	a повреждение
2 gain	b уничтожение
3 harm	c насилие
4 assault	d насильственный
5 intentional	e нападение
6 destruction	f прибыль
7 violate	g тяжкое уголовное преступление
8 injure	h воровство
9 force	i умышленный
10 infliction	j ранить
11 felony	k карманная кража
12 threat	l нарушать
13 theft	m мелкое правонарушение
14 misdemeanor	n угроза
15 pickpocketing	o причинение (вреда)

4. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	умышленное причинение телесного повреждения	a	violent crimes
2	уничтожение имущества	b	economic gain
3	влечь за собой насилие	c	intentional harm
4	насильственное преступление	d	aggravated assault
5	нанесение, причинение вреда	e	domestic violence
6	экономическая выгода	f	destruction of property
7	нападение с применением физического насилия	g	to violate moral standards
8	пребывание в состоянии опьянения в общественном месте	h	public intoxication
9	бытовое насилие	i	to involve force
10	нарушать нравственные устои	j	infliction of harm
11	угроза насилия	k	felony crimes
12	должностные преступления	l	threat of force
13	пострадавшие	m	injured people
14	тяжкое уголовное преступление	n	disturbing the peace
15	нарушение общественного порядка	o	white-collar crimes

5. Match the antonyms.

1	violate	a	careful
2	moral	b	danger
3	reckless	c	obey
4	diversity	d	immoral
5	safety	e	uniformity
6	destructive	f	loss
7	gain	g	disorder
8	threaten	h	protect
9	order	i	constructive
10	harm	j	more
11	less	k	help
12	damage	l	repair

6. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

Occur each year; diversity is shocking; motivated by economic gain; can be divided into three main categories; crimes against property; public order crimes; felony; manslaughter; robbery; domestic violence; intended to harm a person; the infliction of harm; the use of weapons, poison; considered crimes against the person; not directed at an individual; aimed at property; burglary; theft; people are not injured; misdemeanor; result in serious damage; theft of valuable property; can be grouped by two basic perspectives; gambling; disturbing the peace; public intoxication; beyond these criminal activities; fraud; bribery; embezzlement.

7. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Классифицируются по степени тяжести
2. Насильственные, беспощадные преступления
3. Деяния, угрожающие и нарушающие нравственные устои общества
4. Преступления против личности
5. Влечет за собой насилие или угрозу умышленного причинения телесного повреждения
6. Преступления имущественного характера
7. Нет насилия в отношении пострадавших
8. Кража или уничтожение имущества, принадлежащего другому лицу
9. Во время пожара люди могут пострадать
10. Преступления против общественной безопасности
11. Считаются менее тяжкими
12. Могут оказать серьезное воздействие на общественное благополучие, безопасность и экономическое благосостояние
13. Могут быть разделены на 2 группы
14. Противостоит другим формам незаконного поведения
15. Должностные преступления, исчисляемые миллиардами долларов

8. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- a** violence that takes place in the home, especially between a husband and wife
- b** the crime of gaining money or financial benefits by a trick or by lying
- c** illegal actions or activities for which a person can be punished by law
- d** using force or threats to steal
- e** the act or activity of betting money, for example in card games or on horse racing.
- f** a minor wrongdoing
- g** going into another person's home or business with force
- h** a physical attack
- i** the giving or offering of a bribe
- j** stealing
- k** breaking the law in business
- l** intentionally setting fire to property

9. Use the word / phrases in the box to make word combinations with the words.

crimes, property, (to) harm

billion dollar business enterprise; infliction of; violent and destructive; intentional; misdemeanor; white-collar; theft of; against the person; threat of; cyber; destruction; felony; damage; against society; three main categories of; valuable; property

10. Choose the correct word / words.

1. Crimes against persons or **violent** / **intentional** crimes are offenses which involve force or threat of force.
2. Most violent crimes are **felony** / **misdemeanor** crimes.
3. **The protection from** / **The infliction of** harm can include the use of weapons, poison, bodily contact, and more.
4. Kidnapping, child abuse, and domestic violence are considered crimes against **the person** / **property**.
5. Property crime is any crime involving theft or **selling** / **destruction** of property.
6. **Property** / **Cyber** crimes include burglary, theft, pickpocketing, shoplifting, motor vehicle theft, vandalism.
7. Property crimes are usually **felony** / **misdemeanor** crimes.
8. Public order crimes involve acts that violate social norms and **moral** / **legal** standards.
9. **The business enterprise** / **criminal justice system** is confronted with some other forms of illegal behavior — transnational crimes, white-collar crimes, international sex trafficking; terrorism; environmental offences, and cyber crime
10. **Public order crimes** / **Environmental offences** are prostitution, gambling, drug use and trafficking, disturbing the peace, public intoxication, drunk driving.

11. Match the words in bold to their synonyms given in the box.

stealing	directed	crimes
injury	vary	damage
break	violence	influence
deals with	involve	

1. Crimes **range** in seriousness from shoplifting to serial murder.
2. Crimes against persons or **violent** crimes are offenses which involve force or threat of intentional harm.
3. The infliction of **harm** can include the use of weapons, poison, bodily contact, and more.
4. Violent crimes **include** murder, rape, and aggravated assault.
5. Property crimes are **aimed** at property.
6. Property crime is any crime involving **theft** or destruction of property.
7. Property crimes include burglary, robbery, theft, pickpocketing, etc.
8. Public order **offenses** are considered less serious than violent and property crimes.
9. Public order offenses can have great **effects** on public health, safety, and the economy.
10. Public order crimes involve acts that **violate** social norms and moral standards.
11. Beyond these criminal activities, the criminal justice system **is confronted with** transnational crimes; white-collar crimes, and cyber crime.

Watching and Speaking

Watching 1

Pre-viewing

12. Look at the picture and say the victim of what crime the person is. What can the infliction of harm include?

While viewing

13. Listen to Simon Smithers's story. Choose the correct answer.

1. Simon Smithers was attacked in:
 - a) the street
 - b) the shop
 - c) a dark alley
 - d) his house
2. The attacker was:
 - a) a young guy
 - b) an old man
 - c) an old woman
 - d) a group of minors
3. The harm was inflicted by
 - a) a knife
 - b) a beat
 - c) a walking stick
 - d) bodily contact
4. The attacker took Simon's
 - a) bag
 - b) wallet, phone and iPod
 - c) bicycle
 - d) phone and wallet

14. Listen again and put the following sentences in the order they appear in the film.

- So, now I'm scared
- He took my wallet, he took my phone, he took my iPod
- He hit me on the head with his walking stick
- Yesterday I was walking to the shop when out of nowhere an old man attacked me
- Then he kicked me on the ground and ran away

Post-viewing

15. Work in pairs. Match the questions to Simon's answers, there are some extra.

1. What did the attacker look like?
2. How do you feel?
3. Do you need medical assistance?
4. When did it occur?
5. Where did it occur?
6. Did the attacker hit you?
7. Did the attacker threaten you?
8. What did the robber steal?
9. What type of weapon was used?

Speaking

16. With a partner, act out roles below based on Task 15. Then, switch roles. Use language such as:

- Can you tell me what happened?
- What you're feeling is completely natural.
- I can understand why you are upset.

Cadet A: You are a police officer . Ask Cadet B about: • a robbery • stolen property • the thief • his / her condition	Cadet B: You were robbed. Answer Cadet A's questions.

17. a) Complete columns B and C of the chart.

Types of crime and types of criminal

A Crime	B Criminal	C Action(verb)	D What does an offender do?
pickpocketing	pickpocket	pickpocket	
murder			
shoplifting			
fraud		—	
reckless driving			
vandalism			
burglary			
theft			
assault			
robbery			

b) Complete the sentences with appropriate words from the chart in their correct form.

1. 40–50 % of vehicle ... is due to driver error, which includes leaving vehicle doors unlocked and leaving keys in the ignition¹.

2. Delaware State Police are trying to identify a man suspected of Fund Bank ... on July 24th, police say the man showed a weapon to a bank teller and demanded money from the cash drawers.

3. Paris police arrested a gang of ...who stole wallets² and other belongings³ from visitors at tourist attractions such as the Eiffel Tower and Palace of Versailles.

4. Most ... occur between. 10 a.m. and 3 p.m., since that's a prime timeframe where many homes are not occupied.

5. Don't try to hide your true income⁴ from the government. Tax ... is a very serious crime.

6. A ... stole an MP3 player from a department store.

7. ... cause serious injuries and fatal accidents on roads and highways every day.

8. The police are questioning a group of ... who damaged hundreds of Christmas decorations last night.

9. Most victims of ... say that they know who attacked them, and often the attacker is a family member, friend, or someone the victim known from school or the neighborhood.



10. An 18-year-old man has been arrested and charged with⁵ ... after the discovery of a female body near Gatton.

c) Complete column D of the chart above.

e.g. Pickpockets steal money, wallets, other belongings from people's pockets and bags.

d) Rank the crimes in order of their seriousness. Compare with the partner. Give reasons for your opinion.

I think **assault** is the most serious ...

No. In my opinion, **murder** is worse because ...

18. a) Write down in your copybook names of crimes that start with the letter.

¹ Зажигание.

² Кошельки.

³ Вещи.

⁴ Истинные доходы.

⁵ Обвинять.

A ...
B ...
C ...
D ...
E ...
F ...

G ...
M ...
P ...
S ...
T ...
V ...

b) Describe one of these crimes to your partner not naming it. Can your partner guess?

Millions of criminal acts **(0) occurring** each year is **(0) occur**
shocking. Crimes range in **(1)...** from public intoxication to **(1) serious**
murder. Some crimes are violent and **(2) ...**; others are **(2) destruct**
motivated by economic gain; and some crimes are acts **(3) threat**
which **(3) ...**or violate moral standards of society. There are
three main crime categories: crimes against person,
property and public order. A, personal crime is a **(4) ...** **(4) violence**
crime that results in physical emotional, or psychological
harm to the **(5) ...** Violent crimes include murder, rape, **(5) victimize**
and assault. Property crime is a category of crime that
includes theft, **(6) ...**, vehicle theft, arson, vandalism, and **(6) burgle**
(7).... It deals with damage or **(8) ...** of property. Property **(7) shoplift**
crimes don't involve the **(8) thief**

(9)... of harm. Public order offenses are considered less **(9) inflict**
serious than violent and property crimes. They include **(10)**
..., drug use and trafficking, disturbing the peace, public **(10) prostitute**
intoxication, etc.

19. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning.

20. Use the words to complete the sentences.

gambling; categories; occur; violent; harm; less; theft; burglary seriousness;
property; arson; murder; white-collar crimes; effects; violate

1. Millions of criminal acts ... each year, and their diversity is shocking.
2. Crimes range in ... from shoplifting to serial murder.
3. Crimes can be divided into three main ...: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and crimes against society (public order crimes).
4. Crimes against persons or ... crimes are offenses which involve force or threat of intentional harm.

5. The infliction of ... can include the use of weapons, poison, bodily contact, and more.
6. ..., rape, aggravated assault, kidnapping, child abuse, and domestic violence are considered crimes against the person.
7. The most common form of criminal activity is ... crime.
8. Property crime is any crime involving the ... or destruction of property that belongs to another person.
9. These include ..., theft, robbery, pickpocketing, shoplifting, motor vehicle theft, vandalism.
10. Usually, people are not injured, but it is possible that individuals may be harmed, as in
11. Public order offenses are considered ... serious than violent and property crimes.
12. Public order offenses can have great ... on public health, safety, and the economy.
13. Public order crimes involve acts that ... social norms and moral standards.
14. Crimes against public order include prostitution, ..., drug — related crimes, disturbing the peace, public intoxication, drunk driving, reckless driving, selling alcohol to minors, etc.
15. The criminal justice system also deals with some other forms of illegal behavior — transnational crimes; ... such as fraud, bribery, terrorism; environmental offences, and cyber crime.

21. Find in the sentences gerund and gerund construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The thief has long history of committing crimes.
2. Disturbing the peace, drinking in public places, driving under the influence, selling alcohol to minors are considered public order crimes.
3. He was charged with having shot a policeman.
4. Stephanie Lyon was arrested for committing multiple crimes — fraud and embezzlement.
5. He admitted taking a bribe.
6. The shoplifter was caught with the CDs in his bag while stealing in the shop.
7. The object of theft-type offenses is taking money or property.
8. He denied damaging her.
9. It was absolute luck that she escaped being hurt in the car accident.
10. The law prohibits selling alcohol after licensed hours.
11. The woman complained of being threatened by phone calls.
12. On returning home he found his house burgled.
13. Two people were injured after being attacked during Woodrow robbery.
14. The suspects took Surjit Kaur in their car with the intention of frightening her but instead they ended up killing her.
15. Ellen died after being hit by a driver using his mobile.

22. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Criminal**, occur, acts, of, each, millions, year.
2. **Crimes**, to, from, range, serial, seriousness, shoplifting, in, murder.
3. **What**, can, be, categories, crimes, divided, main?
4. **Do**, crimes, violent, involve, force?
5. **The Infliction**, of, can, poison, contact, harm, the use, of, bodily, weapons, include.
6. **What**, crimes, against are, the, person, crimes, considered?
7. **Property**, are, directed, at, crimes, not, an individual.
8. **What**, the object, of, crime, property, is?
9. **Property**, the infliction, crimes, do, of, harm, not, involve.
10. **What**, property, do, crimes, include, crimes?
11. **Are**, order, offenses, public, more, considered, serious?
12. **What**, public, crimes, to, refer, offenses, order?
13. **What**, the criminal, with, system, does, activities, justice, criminal, deal?

23. Fill in: infliction, seriousness, have effects on, aggravated, theft, threat of, property, to harm, motivated, violate, violent, the peace, crimes, shocking, aimed at.
Make sentences based on the text using the phrases.

1 ... diversity	9 intended
2 range in ...	10 ... of harm
3 ... by economic gain	11 ... assault
4 ... moral standards	12 ... property
5 ... crimes	13 theft or destruction of ...
6 involve force	14 vehicle ...
7 ... intentional harm	15 ... public safety
8 white-collar ...	16 disturbing ...

24. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Millions of criminal acts ..., and their diversity is
2. Crimes range in seriousness from
3. Some crimes are violent and destructive; others are motivated by; and some crimes are acts threatening or
4. Crimes can be divided into
5. Crimes against persons or violent crimes are offenses which involve
6. The infliction of harm can include
7. Violent crimes include murder, ...
8. The most common form of criminal activity is
9. Crimes against property are not directed at
10. These crimes are aimed at
11. Property crime is any crime involving
12. These include burglary, ...
13. Public order offenses are considered less

14. Public order crimes involve acts that
15. Public order crimes can be grouped by two basic perspectives
16. Public order crimes are
17. Beyond these criminal activities, the criminal justice system is confronted

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching 2

Pre-viewing task

25. *Think and say.* What are the most frequently stolen means of transport?
26. *Learn the words.*

lose (lost, lost)	терять
ride	ездить
lock v, n	закрывать / замок
lamp post	уличный фонарь
put	(зд.) поставить
all right	разумеется; конечно

While viewing

27. *You are going to hear a conversation between a woman and a police dispatcher. What type of crime does the conversation deal with?*
28. *Listen again and complete the conversation.*

Officer: Hello, 911 dispatch

Woman: Hello officer. Somebody just ...

Officer: OK. Can you tell me what ... ma'am?

Woman: Well, I ride into the city every day and leave it in exactly the same place. Today when I returned after work I couldn't find it

Officer: So, where ... it?

Woman: I left it around the ... on Main Street by the ...

Officer: Did you ... it to something?

Woman: Yes, of course. I locked it to a ...

Officer: And when did you ... it there?

Woman: I put it there about ... this morning

Officer: Did the ...?

Woman: ..., he ... it all right

Officer: Hello, 911 dispatch

Speaking

29. *With a partner, act out roles below based on Task 28. Then, switch roles.*
Use language such as:

Can you tell me what happened?
Where exactly did you leave it?
When did you put it?

Cadet A: You are an **officer**. Ask Cadet B about

- the place and time of leaving the bicycle
- the lock and its integrity

Cadet B: You lost your bicycle. Answer Cadet A's questions.

30. *Match the questions from the 1st column to the answers from the 2nd column.*

1 What is a crime?	a Crimes can be divided into three main categories: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and public order crimes
2 How can crimes be classified?	b According to the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation a crime is a socially dangerous act committed with guilt and prohibited by this Code under threat of punishment
3 What categories can crimes be divided?	c The police will record a crime as violent if the offender intended to harm a person, regardless of whether or not the person actually gets hurt
4 What is a personal crime?	d Crimes range in seriousness from shoplifting to serial murder
5 When will the police record a crime as violent?	e Crimes against persons or violent crimes are offenses which involve force or threat of intentional harm
6 What can the infliction of harm include?	f Crimes against property are aimed at property. These crimes are not directed at an individual, there is no force or threat of force against the victims
7 What crimes are considered personal crimes?	g These include burglary, robbery, theft, pickpocketing, shoplifting, motor vehicle theft, vandalism
8 What is the object of property crimes?	h The infliction of harm can include the use of weapons, poison, bodily contact
9 Can property crime cause injury?	i Public order offenses are considered less serious than violent and property crimes
10 What crimes refer to	j Violent crimes include murder, manslaughter,

- property ones?
- rape, and aggravated assault. Kidnapping, child abuse, and domestic violence are also considered crimes against the person
- 11** What category of crime is considered less serious? **k** Usually, people are not injured, but it is possible that individuals may be harmed, as in arson
- 12** What is the goal of public order offenses? **l** The criminal justice system is confronted with transnational crimes, white-collar crimes; international sex trafficking; terrorism; environmental offences, and cyber crime
- 13** What offenses do public order crimes include? **m** Public order crimes involve acts that violate social norms and moral standards
- 14** What other criminal acts does the criminal justice system deal with? **n** Crimes against morality include prostitution, pornography, gambling, drug use and trafficking. Crimes against law and order are disturbing the peace, public intoxication, drunk driving, reckless driving, selling alcohol to minors, etc.
- 15** What offenses do white-collar crimes include? **o** White-collar crimes include bank fraud, bribery, embezzlement, forgery

31. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 30. Then, switch roles.

Cadet A: You are a **cadet**. Ask Cadet B about different types of crimes.

Cadet B: You are a **professor** of Criminal Law Department. Talk to Cadet A about crime categories.

32. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- ✓ Crime definition
- ✓ Crimes against the person
- ✓ Crimes against property
- ✓ Public order crimes
- ✓ Other forms of illegal behavior

33. Speak on crime categories.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. Millions of criminal acts ... each year, and their diversity is shocking.
 - a) violate
 - b) occur
 - c) commit
2. Crimes range in ... from shoplifting to serial murder.
 - a) seriousness
 - b) motive
 - c) diversity
3. Crimes can be divided into three main categories: crimes against the person; crimes against ...; and crimes against society.
 - a) property
 - b) morality
 - c) humanity
4. Crimes against persons or ... crimes are offenses which involve force or threat of intentional harm.
 - a) threatening
 - b) violent
 - c) violence
5. Crimes against property are not directed at ...:
 - a) a victim
 - b) community
 - c) an individual

2. Fill in: aimed at, force violate, illegal behavior, property seriousness, violent, aggravated, motivated, infliction.

- 1 ... of harm
- 2 involve ...
- 3 ... property
- 4 destruction of ...
- 5 ... moral standards
- 6 confront with ...
- 7 range in ...
- 8 ... assault
- 9 ... crimes
- 10 ... by economic gain

3. Choose the correct word / words.

1. Crimes against persons or **violent** / **intentional** crimes are offenses which involve force or threat of force.
2. Most violent crimes are **felony** / **misdemeanor** crimes.

3. **The protection from / The infliction of** harm can include the use of weapons, poison, bodily contact, and more.

4. Property crime is any crime involving theft or **selling / destruction** of property.

5. Property crimes are usually **felony / misdemeanor** crimes.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. Crimes can be divided into three main ...: crimes against the person; crimes against property; and crimes against society (public order crimes).

2. ..., rape, aggravated assault, kidnapping, child abuse, and domestic violence are considered crimes against the person.

3. The most common form of criminal activity is ... crime.

4. Usually, people are not injured, but it is possible that individuals may be harmed, as in

5. Public order offenses can have great ... on public health, safety, and the economy.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. What is a crime?

a) a crime is a socially dangerous act committed with guilt and prohibited by the Criminal Code under threat of punishment

b) any illegal act

c) a violent *act* that results in physical, emotional, or psychological harm

2. What are main categories of crimes?

a) crimes against the person; crimes against property; and drug crimes

b) crimes against the person; crimes against property; and other crimes

c) crimes against the person; crimes against property; and public order crimes

3. What is a personal crime?

a) a crime in which property is destroyed and crimes in which property is stolen or taken against the owner's will

b) a crime involving force or threat of intentional harm

c) a common law crime that can be committed by one or a number of people

4. Can property crime cause injury?

a) These crimes involve direct physical harm

b) These crimes can be severe enough to cause alarm to ordinary people and threaten serious disturbance to the community

c) This category of crimes does not inflict injury on a victim, but it is possible that individuals may be harmed, as in arson

5. What is the goal of public order offenses?

a) violate social norms and moral standards

b) inflict injury on a victim

c) receive economic gain

Module IV

CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

Part A

Lead-in

- What are the most common crimes in Russia and Saint-Petersburg?
- What types of punishment can be given for these crimes?
- What document determines crime and punishment in Russia?

Reading 1

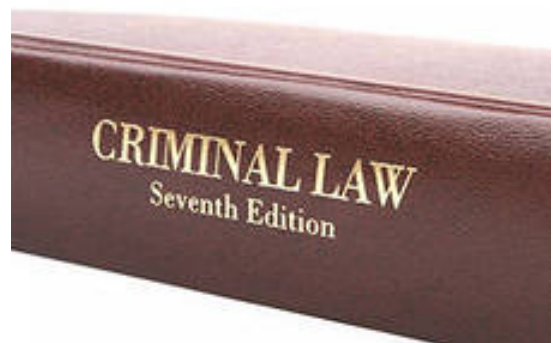
1. Read the text.

The Objective of Criminal Law

The purpose of criminal law is to punish people who commit crimes. The type of punishment depends on the crime. Criminals who commit minor crimes such as trespassing¹ usually receive a light punishment. They often get a fine or are put on probation².

When criminals offend many times, they get a heavier punishment. They go to prison. Criminals also go to prison when they are dangerous to others. For example, someone who commits assault³ and battery⁴ gets sent to prison.

Capital punishment is the most serious punishment. It is reserved⁵ for the worst crimes, such as murder.



Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. What is the purpose of criminal law?
 - a) to provide legal knowledge
 - b) to punish people who commit crimes
 - c) to punish children who disobey their parents
2. What does the type of punishment depend on?
 - a) the crime
 - b) legal knowledge
 - c) parents

¹ Противоправное нарушение владения.

² Быть осуждённым условно.

³ Нападение, угроза физическим насилием.

⁴ Побои, оскорбление действием.

⁵ Назначать.

3. What types of punishment do criminals committing minor crimes usually receive?
 - a) capital punishment
 - b) imprisonment
 - c) fine or probation
4. When do criminals get a heavier punishment?
 - a) when they commit minor crimes
 - b) when they offend many times and are dangerous to others
 - c) when they commit trespassing
5. What crime is capital punishment reserved for?
 - a) for the worst crimes, such as murder
 - b) for assault and battery
 - c) for minor crimes, such as trespassing

Reading 2

3. Read the text.

Deciding on an Appropriate Sentence

If anyone breaks the law of a country, he or she is subject to its judicial system. The main statute on sentencing in the UK is the Criminal Justice Act 2003. Under this Act, the purposes of sentencing are to punish offenders, reduce crime, protect the public, change an offender's behaviour, and make them up for the crime.

One of the most important things is to make sure appropriate sentences are given for each crime. In other words the punishment should fit the crime. To do this, judges and magistrates in England and Wales use sentencing guidelines. They decide the type and length of sentence taking into account:

- the type of crime and its seriousness
- whether the offender admits their guilt
- the offender's criminal history
- the offender's personal and financial circumstances

There is a range of **sentences** that judges and magistrates can pass. They are *discharges*; *fines*, *community punishment* and *imprisonment*. The sentences include the most common types of sentence such as fines given for lower level offences, up to life sentences for the most serious crimes.

Discharges are given for the least serious offences such as minor thefts for which the experience of being taken to court is thought to be punishment enough. However, the offender still has a **criminal record**.

Fines are the most common criminal sentence given to punish an offender financially. They're usually given for less serious crimes like: driving and road traffic offences (e.g. speeding); minor thefts or criminal damage. How much someone is fined depends on: how serious the crime is and the offender's ability to pay.

A **community sentence** combines punishment with activities carried out in the community. The court orders specific things the offenders can, can't and must do.

Community sentences place requirements on offenders that they must meet while serving their sentences. Offenders can be ordered to:

- carry out between 40 and 300 hours of unpaid work

- receive drug and alcohol treatment
- avoid specific activities like visiting pubs or football matches
- live at a specific place
- have regular meetings with a **probation officer**, etc.

Prison sentences are given when an offence is so serious that it is the only suitable **punishment**. A prison sentence will also be given when the court believes the public must be protected from the offender.

There are three different types of prison sentence: suspended sentence, determinate sentence, indeterminate sentence (including life sentence).

With a **suspended sentence**, the offender does not go to prison but must comply with requirements set by the court.

If a court fixes the length of a prison sentence, it's called a "determinate" sentence. When an offender is given a determinate sentence, half of the sentence is served in custody and half of the sentence in the community on licence. Being on licence means offenders have to obey certain rules which could include wearing an electronic tag which restricts where they can go.

Indeterminate sentences are usually given for violent and sexual offences. If an offender is given an indeterminate sentence, a court set the minimum time the offender must spend in prison.

Life sentences can be given to offenders who are found **guilty** of very serious crimes: murder, manslaughter, rape, armed robbery or arson.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

- The purposes of sentencing are:
 - to punish and rehabilitate offenders
 - to reduce crime, punish offenders, protect the public, change an offender's behaviour, make them up for the crime
 - to respect for the law, maintain a just, peaceful and safe society
- Courts' decision-making in sentencing in the UK is based on:
 - sentencing guidelines
 - judges and magistrates' decision
 - previous decisions of the court
- To pass a sentence judges and magistrates take into account:
 - the type of crime and its seriousness; whether the offender admits their guilt, their criminal history and personal and financial circumstances
 - the type of crime and its seriousness, the offender's background and witnesses' statements
 - the age and family status of the offender
- The types of sentence are:
 - finances and prison sentences
 - discharges, fines, a community sentence, prison sentences
 - suspended sentence, determinate sentence, indeterminate sentence

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary.

appropriate <i>a</i>	соответствующий; должный
arson <i>n</i>	поджог
avoid <i>v</i>	избегать
carry out <i>v</i>	выполнять, проводить
combine <i>v</i>	объединять; соединять; комбинировать
comply with <i>v</i>	подчиняться, выполнять (требования, правила)
custody <i>n</i>	тюремное заключение
damage <i>n</i>	ущерб
decide (on) ... <i>v</i>	выносить, принять (решение)
discharge <i>n</i>	освобождение (от наказания, от дальнейшего отбывания наказания, из заключения)
fine <i>v / n</i>	штрафовать / штраф
fit <i>v</i>	соответствовать
guideline <i>n</i>	(руководящее) указание, рекомендации, директива
sentencing guidelines	директивы для определения меры наказания
guilt <i>n</i>	вина; виновность
admit guilt	признать вину, признать себя виновным
guilty <i>a</i>	виновный
licence <i>n</i>	срок условного заключения
make <i>v</i>	устанавливать
make up <i>v</i>	возмещать, компенсировать
make sure <i>v</i>	позаботиться, принять меры
manslaughter <i>n</i>	непредумышленное убийство
meet <i>v</i>	удовлетворять, соответствовать
meet a requirement	удовлетворять требованию
order <i>v</i>	предписывать; давать инструкции; назначать
pass <i>v</i>	выносить (решение, приговор)
place (on smb.) <i>v</i>	возлагать; налагать (обязанность)
probation <i>n</i>	пробация (вид условного осуждения, при котором осужденный остается свободным до повторного совершения правонарушения, но находится под надзором служащего системы пробации)
probation officer	должностное лицо, осуществляющее надзор за условно осуждёнными (сотрудник суда; наблюдает за поведением условно осуждённого, помогает ему советами, способствует трудоустройству)
reduce <i>v</i>	сокращать, снижать, уменьшать
record <i>n</i>	досье, собрание фактов, данных (о ком-либо)
criminal record	судимость, список судимостей, досье преступника
restrict <i>v</i>	ограничивать

sentence <i>n / v</i>	приговор; наказание / выносить приговор
determinate sentence	приговор к определенному сроку наказания
indeterminate sentence	приговор к тюремному заключению с нефиксированным сроком
suspended sentence	условное осуждение
sentencing <i>n</i>	вынесение приговора, приговор (суда)
serve <i>v</i>	отбывать (наказание)
set <i>v</i>	устанавливать; определять, назначать
subject <i>a</i>	находящийся в подчинении, подчиненный (чему- либо)
suitable <i>a</i>	подходящий, соответствующий
tag <i>n</i>	бирка; электронное устройство, которое позволяет определить местонахождение человека
take <i>v</i>	воспринимать, учитывать
take into account	принимать во внимание, в расчёт

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	subject (to)	a	руководство, указание
2	sentence	b	подчиняться
3	make up	c	подчиненный
4	punish	d	приговор, наказание
5	guilt	e	возмещать
6	guideline	f	обстоятельство
7	comply with	g	вина
8	circumstance	h	наказывать
9	pass	i	выполнять
10	carry out	j	возлагать
11	treatment	k	лечение
12	custody	l	подчиняться
13	place	m	выносить (решение, приговор)
14	obey	n	отбывать (наказание)
15	serve	o	тюремное заключение

7. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	подчиняться судебной системе	a	reduce crime
2	финансовые обстоятельства	b	make up for the crime
3	выполнять неоплачиваемую работу	c	appropriate sentence
4	снизить уровень преступности	d	subject to the judicial system
5	избегать конкретных мероприятий	e	admit guilt
6	возместить ущерб за совершенное преступление	f	financial circumstances
7	лечиться	g	place on requirements

8	соответствующий приговор	h	community sentence
9	отбывать наказание	i	carry out unpaid work
10	признавать свою вину	j	receive treatment
11	общественные работы	k	avoid specific activities
12	подчиняться определенным правилам	l	comply with requirements
13	возлагать требования	m	serve a sentence
14	соблюдать требования	n	obey certain rules
15	быть признанным виновным	o	be found guilty

8. Match the antonyms.

1	break	a	limited
2	guilt	b	obey
3	unlimited	c	minor
4	serious	d	innocence
5	risk	e	innocent
6	guilty	f	inappropriate
7	suitable	g	safety
8	fix	h	cancel
9	reduce	i	increase
10	admit	j	deny
11	most	k	least
12	damage	l	reparation

9. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

Decide on a sentence; break the law of a country; purposes of sentencing; punish offenders; reduce crime; decide the type and length of sentence; seriousness of the crime; the offender's personal and financial circumstances; a range of sentences; pass a sentence; the most serious crimes; the least serious offences; discharges; fines; the most common criminal sentence; the offender's ability to pay; meet requirements; carry out unpaid work; receive drug and alcohol treatment; avoid specific activities; visiting pubs or football matches; fix the length of a prison sentence; on licence; obey certain rules; violent and sexual offences; be found guilty of murder; manslaughter; rape; prison sentence; suspended sentence; determinate sentence; indeterminate sentence; life sentence.

10. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Вынести надлежащий приговор
2. Закон «Об уголовном правосудии»
3. Подчиняться судебной системе
4. Изменить поведение преступника
5. Материальное возмещение за преступление
6. Директивы для определения меры наказания

7. Принимать во внимание
8. Признавать свою вину
9. Досье преступника
10. Преступления небольшой степени тяжести
11. Вызов в суд уже считается достаточным наказанием
12. Судимость
13. Мелкое воровство
14. Злонамеренный ущерб
15. Зависит от тяжести преступления
16. Наказание в форме общественных работ
17. Сочетает наказание с выполнением общественных работ
18. Постоянные встречи с офицером, осуществляющим надзор за условно осуждёнными
19. Единственно приемлемое наказание
20. Подчиняться требованиям, установленным судом
21. Половина срока наказания отбывается в тюрьме
22. Отбывание условного срока наказания

11. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 the punishment assigned to a defendant found guilty by a court, or fixed by law for a particular offence
- 2 a person appointed to supervise offenders who are on probation
- 3 a sum of money exacted as a penalty by a court of law or other authority
- 4 under the authority of
- 5 a sentence whereby an offender is required to perform community service
- 6 a history of being convicted for crime
- 7 spend (a period) in prison
- 8 culpable of or responsible for a specified wrongdoing
- 9 a prison sentence which criminals have to serve if they commit another crime within a specified period of time
- 10 a written law passed by a legislative body
- 11 the infliction or imposition of a penalty as retribution for an offence

12. Use the words / phrases in the box on the right to make word combinations with the words on the left:

e.g. the main statute on sentencing

(a)sentence / sentences sentencing (the) crime(s) / offences criminal offenders requirements	the main statute on, history, punish, comply with, the type and seriousness of, place, purposes of, the most serious, community, the least serious, record, guidelines, appropriate, carry out, suspended, pass, damage, violent and sexual, the type and length of, obey, life, make up for, prison, set, determinate, reduce, decide on, indeterminate

13. Choose the correct word / words.

1. If anyone **obeys** / **breaks** the law of a country, he or she is subject of / to its judicial system.
2. The purposes of sentencing under **the Law on Police 2011** / **the Criminal Justice Act 2003** are to punish offenders, reduce crime, protect the public, change an offender's behaviour, and make **up** / **away** for the crime.
3. Deciding on **a sentence** / **career** judges and magistrates take into account the type of crime and its seriousness, the offender's admission of guilt, their criminal history and personal and financial circumstances.
4. **Discharges** / **Fines** are given for the least serious offences such as minor thefts.
5. How much someone is fined depends on: how serious the crime is and the offender's **circumstances** / **ability** to pay.
6. Community sentences **place** / **comply with** requirements that offenders must meet while serving their sentences.
7. Serving a community sentence offenders should have regular meetings with a **detective** / **probation officer**.
8. There **are** / **is** three different types of **prison** / **community** sentence: suspended sentence, determinate sentence, indeterminate sentence (including life sentence).
9. Being **on** / **at** licence means offenders have to obey certain rules which could include wearing an electronic **organizer** / **tag** which restricts where they.
10. Life sentences can be given to offenders who are **found** / **plead** guilty of murder, manslaughter, rape, armed robbery or arson.

14. Match the words in bold to the synonyms given in the box.

Compensate; be appropriate for; definite; conviction; appropriate; obey (2); law; take into consideration; punishment; plead guilty; indefinite; consider; violate

- 1.
2. If anyone **breaks** the law of a country, he or she is subject to its judicial system.
3. The main **statute** on sentencing in the UK is the Criminal Justice Act 2003.
4. The purposes of sentencing are to punish offenders, reduce crime, protect the public, change an offender's behaviour, and **make** them **up for** the crime.
5. The punishment should **fit** the crime.
6. Deciding **the type of crime and its seriousness, whether the offender admits** on a sentence judges and magistrates **take into account: their guilt**, the offender's criminal history, the offender's personal and financial circumstances.
7. Discharges are given for the least serious offences for which the experience of being taken to court is thought to be punishment enough. However, the offender still has a **criminal record**.
8. Fines are the most common criminal **sentence** given to punish an offender financially.
9. Community sentences place requirements on offenders that they must **meet** while serving their sentences.

10. Prison sentences are given when an offence is so serious that it is the only **suitable** punishment.
11. Prison sentence will also be given when the court **believes** the public must be protected from the offender.
12. With a suspended sentence, the offender does not go to prison but must **comply with** requirements set by the court.
13. If a court fixes the length of a prison sentence, it's called a “**determinate**” sentence.
14. **Indeterminate** sentences are usually given for violent and sexual offences.

Watching 1

Pre-viewing

15. Think and say. What is “punishment”? What are main types of punishment? What are the US main crime categories?

16. Learn the words.

charge with	обвинять
infraction	нарушение (законов)
citation	официальный вызов в суд; повестка о вызове в суд
county jail	окружная тюрьма

17. Watch the video “Understanding Types of Crime through Punishment” and choose the correct option.

- An infraction covers:
 - running a red light
 - running a red light and speeding
 - public intoxication
 - kidnapping
- If a person is charged with an infraction, the maximum punishment is:
 - imprisonment
 - capital punishment
 - a fine
 - imprisonment and a fine
- For a misdemeanor one can receive:
 - up two years in a county jail and a fine
 - up to three years in a county jail and a fine
 - up two years in a state jail and a fine
 - up two years in a county jail
- A felony is punished:
 - by an imprisonment in a state prison
 - by an imprisonment in a state prison and a fine
 - up two years in a county jail and a fine

- d) up to three years in a county jail and a fine

Post viewing

18. Ask and answer questions concerning crime and punishment in the USA.
e.g. What is an infraction? What punishment is imposed for infraction?

19. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective	Verb
		sentence
reduction		
	behaved	
		reside
	prohibiting	
length		—
		exclude
	offensive	
supervision		
	protecting	
		treat
	reponsible	

20. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Magistrates and judges are **(0) responsible** for deciding what **(0) respond**
 sentence to impose on people **(1)...** guilty of a crime. They **(1) find**
 have to take into account: the facts of the case, punishment,
 reducing crime, protecting the public, rehabilitating the
 offender, **(2)...** guidelines, circumstances of the **(3)....** There
 are four types of sentence depending on the **(4)...** of the **(2) sentence**
 crime. They are: discharge, fines, community sentences, **(3) offend**
 imprisonment. Community sentences can include: unpaid **(4) serious**
 work; programmes aimed at changing offending behavior;
(5)... from certain activities; curfew; **(6) ...** from certain
 areas; **(7) ...** at a particular place; mental health, drug and **(5) prohibit**
 alcohol **(8) ...**, **(9)** Imprisonment is imposed for the most **(6) exclude**
 serious offences. The **(10)...** of sentence is limited by the **(7) reside**
 maximum penalty for that crime. **(8) treat**
(9) supervise
(10) long

Watching 2

Pre-viewing

21. Think and say.

- What are aims of sentencing?
- What does the amount of a fine depends on?
- What is a community sentence?
- What requirements do community sentences place on offenders?
- What is an electronic tag designed for?

22. Read the words and try to remember them.

community order	приговор без содержания под стражей (при котором обвиняемый должен выполнить требования, наложенные судом)
punitive	связанный с применением наказания, карательный
announce	объявлять; сообщать; извещать; заявлять
restriction of liberty	ограничение свободы
assets	собственность, имущество
income	доход
impose	налагать (ограничения, штраф)
monitoring	мониторинг, слежение
deterrent	удерживающее, сдерживающее (устрашением) средство
clear up	раскрывать
toughen	ужесточать

While viewing

23. Listen to Jeremy Wright, Minister for prison and rehabilitation of the UK speaking about community sentences. Which of these things does he mention?

community orders	GPS
appropriate punishment	satellite system
discharges	deterrent
unpaid work in the community	
fine	
offenders' assets	
punitive element	
life imprisonment	
restriction of liberty	
criminal record	
to impose financial penalty	
probation officer	
monitoring equipment	

24. Watch the video again and mark the statements true (T) or false (F).

1. Types of punishment that judges and magistrates can pass cover unpaid work in the community, a fine, and restriction of liberty.
2. In a third of cases that get community orders as a sentence no punitive element is included.
3. Community orders should be proper responses to crime.
4. Fines are not considered to be an effective punishment.
5. The authorities want to increase fines.
6. The court can take into account the offenders' assets and income.
7. If the court imposes the financial penalty, the offenders should receive the appropriate level of fine.
8. The electronic monitoring used today doesn't allow authorities to cover all offender's movements and activities.
9. The use of new technology like GPS, satellite navigation system prove to be effective only in crowded places.
10. Restriction order means that offenders must avoid certain areas and activities.

25. Listen again and answer the questions.

1. What types of punishment can be imposed by the court?
2. What is the 1st announcement the speaker issues?
3. What is the 2nd change he announces?
4. What should people receive at the right level?
5. What is the 3rd announcement?
6. Is electronic monitoring effective?
7. What would be useful and deterrent for the offender?
8. Why would these devices be useful for the police?
9. What places must offenders stay away?
10. Will sentencing be toughened?
11. What is the purpose of suggested changes?

Post viewing

26. Speak about community orders.

27. Use the word / words in the box to complete the sentences.

Fines, appropriate, found guilty, serious, take into account, subject , carry out, sentencing, violent and sexual, suspended, on licence, guidelines, requirements, discharge

1. If anyone breaks the law of a country, he or she is ... to its judicial system.
2. Under the Criminal Justice Act 2003 the purposes of ... are to punish offenders, reduce crime, protect the public, change an offender's behaviour, and make them up for the crime.

3. One of the most important things is to make sure ... sentences are given for each crime.
4. Deciding on a sentence judges and magistrates in England and Wales use sentencing
5. Deciding on a sentence judges and magistrates ... the type of crime and its seriousness, the offender's admission of guilt, his (her) criminal history and personal and financial circumstances.
6. There are four types of sentence that judges and magistrates can pass: ..., fine, community sentences and imprisonment.
7. are the most common criminal sentence given to punish an offender financially.
8. Community sentences place ... on offenders that they must meet while serving their sentences.
9. Offenders can be ordered to ... unpaid work, receive drug and alcohol treatment, avoid visiting pubs or football matches, have regular meetings with a probation officer, etc.
10. Prison sentences are given when an offence is so ... that it is the only suitable punishment.
11. With a ... sentence, the offender doesn't go directly to prison, he or she must comply with requirements set by the court.
12. When an offender is given a determinate sentence, half of the sentence is served in custody and half of the sentence in the community
13. Indeterminate sentences are usually given for ... offences.
14. Life sentences can be given to offenders who are ...of murder, manslaughter, rape, armed robbery or arson.

28. Find in the sentences gerund and gerund construction.

1. Is it worth studying law?
2. When deciding on a sentence, the judge will consider things like: your age and the seriousness of the crime.
3. The defendant was accused of killing the victim.
4. The interviewer accused the suspect of having committed the robbery.
5. Near the end of the interrogation, the suspect admitted to having robbed the woman.
6. The judge might ban you from entering a certain street or premises, for example, a pub.
7. Rehabilitation programme could involve: improving your reading and writing; learning interview skills.
8. You may get a community sentence if the court thinks you can stop committing crime than if you go to prison.
9. The Probation of Offenders Act provides the courts with a way of dealing with first time offenders.
10. To pay a sum of money into the Court Poor Box is as an alternative to having a conviction recorded against you.

11. In Ireland shortening the barrel of a shotgun or rifle can be punished for minimum of 5 years imprisonment.

12. For some people, getting convicted for speeding offences in Scotland can result in disqualification.

13. You may have to do unpaid work in your local community, like removing graffiti.

14. What you can and can't do while on a community sentence can include: being at a particular place at certain times - known as a 'curfew'; wearing an electronic tag to check that you stay there; being stopped from taking part in certain activities.

15. An accident victim remembers being injured.

16. None remembered hearing him make threatening statements to the victim.

17. If you are a non-citizen, remember to carry your immigration documents with you.

29. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. The sentence starts from the word in bold.

1. **What** / the main / statute / on sentencing / in the UK / is / the Act / Criminal / Justice / 2003?

2. **What** / of sentencing / **the** purposes / are?

3. **The punishment** / fit / the crime / should.

4. **What** / **based** / **are** / **on** / **sentences**?

5. **What** / take / judges / into account / do / and magistrates / to decide a sentence?

6. **What** / types / four / of sentence / are?

7. **What** / **the amount of fine** / **does** / **depend on**?

8. **A community** / combines / sentence activities / out / punishment / carried / in / with / the community.

9. **What** / **courts** / **impose** / **do** / **requirements**?

10. **Prison** / is / given / when / are / an offence / that / suitable / is / it / the only / sentences / so serious / punishment.

11. **With** / does / sentence / , a suspended / not / must / go / prison / but / comply / to / requirements / the offender / set / with / the court / by.

12. **What** / a determinate / sentence / is?

13. **What** / given / sentences / are / for / usually / indeterminate?

30. Fill in: offenders, an appropriate, **the judicial system**, guidelines, history, licence, requirements, unpaid work, change, specific activities, make up for, meet, protect, account, a sentence, found. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 subject to ...

2 ... sentence

3 take into ...

4 being on ...

9 ... guilty

10 sentencing ...

11 criminal ...

12 carry out ...

5	avoid ...	13	... the public
6	... requirements	14	decide on ...
7	place ...	15	... the crime
8	punish ...	16	... an offender's behaviour

31. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. If anyone breaks the law of a country, he or she is
2. The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is
3. Under this Act the purposes of sentencing are
4. ... help judges and magistrates decide on the appropriate sentence for a criminal offence.
5. Judges and magistrates take into account:
6. There is a range of sentences that judges and
7. Discharges are given for
8. Fines are the most common criminal sentence given
9. A community sentence combines punishment with
10. Community sentences place one or more of 12 requirements on offenders:
11. Prison sentences are given when an offence is so serious that
12. There are three different types of prison sentence:
13. With a suspended sentence, the offender doesn't go directly to prison, but
14. When an offender is given a determinate sentence, half of the sentence is
15. When an offender is given an indeterminate sentence, a court sets the minimum time the offender
16. Indeterminate sentences are usually given for
17. Life sentences can be given to offenders who are found guilty of

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching and Speaking

Watching 3

Pre-viewing

32. Think and say.

- What does the punishment depend on?
- What are types of sentencing in the UK?

33. Before watching the video, try to remember the following words:

blame	виновность
blameworthy	наказуемый, заслуживающий порицания
harm	вред, ущерб
conviction	судимость, осуждение
harshly	жестоко
remorse	угрызения совести
come clean	признаваться
guilty plea (plea of guilty)	заявление подсудимого о признании вины
distress	страдание, горе
costs	судебные издержки
tough	жесткий
severe	жестокий
amount	сумма
experience	опыт, переживание

34. Watch a film “How offenders are sentenced in England and Wales” brought by Sentencing Council. Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best according to the video.

- How do judges and magistrates in England and Wales decide on a sentence?
 - use the Criminal Code
 - follow intuitive process to reach conclusion
 - use sentencing guidelines
- What factors are taken into account to decide on a sentence?
 - how serious the offence is, the harm caused to a victim, offenders' level of blame
 - seriousness of the offence, the harm caused to a victim, previous convictions, personal circumstances and plea of guilty
 - the offender's age, sex, nationality, religion
- What factors make the offender more blameworthy?
 - planning an offence, using a weapon, targeting a vulnerable victim
 - immorality, disrespect for the rules of a court
 - being under the influence of alcohol and drugs
- If an offender admits to the crime, it means they will
 - get a discharge
 - be treated more harshly
 - get a lower sentence
- The toughest sentence, prison, is used when:
 - a guilty plea was entered too late
 - judges don't know how to treat this offence
 - a crime is too serious or an offender's record is bad
- While serving a community sentence offenders have to:
 - attend advanced courses
 - do unpaid work as removing graffiti

- c) spend most of time in the community on licence
7. Fines are given for:
- a) less severe offences
 - b) the toughest offences
 - c) the least serious offences

35. Watch the video once again. Complete the gaps 1–8. The words in the box will help you, there is one extra word.

punishment, suspects, seriousness, criminal record, costs, witnesses', relatives, stop, harshly

1. The offender who has a **(1)** ... or has been found guilty of the same crime will be treated more **(2)** ...
2. Personal circumstances will also be considered, the offender might look after dependent **(3)** ...
3. The earlier an offender admits their guilt the better, as it will save victims' and **(4)** ... stress of going through a trial as well as saving court **(5)** ... and time.
4. It's important that the sentence helps **(6)** ... committing more crimes in the future.
5. The amount of fine is set by the court after considering the **(7)** ... of the offence and how much money the offender has.
6. Discharges are used for the least serious offences for which the experience of being taken to court is thought to be **(8)** ... enough.

After you watch

ROLE PLAY *Sentencing in England and Wales*

36. Work in pairs. You are a cadet and a judge. Discuss the problem of crime and punishment in England and Wales.

Cadet A: *You are a cadet of St. Petersburg University of MIA of Russia. Use the ideas below to prepare questions to ask the judge*

Cadet B: *You are the judge of the Crown Court. Use the ideas below to prepare what you are going to tell the cadet.*

- how judges and magistrates in England and Wales decide on a sentence;
- factors taken into account to decide on a sentence;
- aggravating¹ and mitigating² factors;
- types of sentence

¹ Отягчающий.

² Смягчающий.

37. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1 What are the purposes of sentencing?	a There are four main types of sentence. These include prison, the toughest sentence, community sentences, fines and discharges
2 What are sentences in England and Wales based on?	b Judges and magistrates decide the type and length of a sentence taking into account a number of factors, such as: the type of crime and its seriousness, whether the offender admits their guilt, the offender's criminal history, the offender's personal and financial circumstances
3 What factors are taken into account to pass a sentence?	c Sentencing guidelines help judges and magistrates decide on the appropriate sentence for a criminal offence
4 What types of sentence are imposed on someone found guilty in the UK?	d The purposes of sentencing are to punish offenders, reduce crime, protect the public, change an offender's behaviour, and make them up for the crime
5 What are discharges given for?	e They're usually given for less serious crimes like: driving and road traffic offences (e.g. speeding); minor offences of theft or criminal damage
6 What crimes are fines usually given for?	f A community sentence combines punishment with activities carried out in the community. The court orders specific things the offenders can, can't and must do
7 What does the amount of fine depend on?	g Discharges are given for the least serious offences (e.g. minor thefts) for which the experience of being taken to court is thought to be punishment enough
8 What is a community sentence?	h Community sentences place one or more of 12 requirements on offenders like: to carry out between 40 and 300 hours of unpaid work; to receive drug and alcohol treatment; to avoid specific activities like visiting pubs or football matches; to live at a specific place; to have regular meetings with a probation officer, etc.
9 What requirements must offenders meet while serving their sentences?	i How much someone is fined depends on the seriousness of the crime and the offender's ability to pay
10 When are prison sentences imposed?	j With a suspended sentence, the offender doesn't go directly to prison; they must comply with requirements set by the court

11 What are the types of k prison sentence?	Life sentences can be given to offenders who are found guilty of very serious crimes: murder, manslaughter, rape, armed robbery or arson
12 What is a suspended l sentence?	If an offender is given an indeterminate sentence, a court sets the minimum time the offender must spend in prison. Indeterminate sentences are usually given for violent and sexual offences
13 What is a determinate m sentence?	Prison sentences are given when a crime is so serious that it is the only suitable punishment
14 What is an indeterminate n sentence?	There are three types of prison sentence: suspended, determinate and indeterminate
15 What crimes are o punishable by life in prison?	A determinate prison sentence is a fixed-term sentence. Half of the sentence is spent in prison and the rest on licence in the community. While on licence an offender will be subject to supervision and the licence will include conditions

38. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 37. Then, switch roles.

Cadet A: You are a **cadet**. Ask Cadet B about different types of punishment.

Cadet B: You are a **professor** of Criminal Law Department. Talk to Cadet A about categories of punishment.

39. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- The purposes of sentencing
- Sentencing guidelines
- Types of sentence

40. Speak on Sentencing in the UK.

MOCK TRIAL

Lead-in

- What is imposing a sentence in the UK based on?
- What do judges take into account deciding on a sentence?
- What are aggravating factors?
- What are mitigating factors?

Watching

1. Before watching the video, try to remember the following words:

on behalf of	от лица, от имени (кого-либо)
defendant	обвиняемый, подсудимый
scrape	царапать, задевать (обо что-либо)
pull over	съезжать на обочину и останавливаться
blind	слепой
regain consciousness	очнуться, прийти в себя
involuntary	непреднамеренный
tricky	хитрый, запутанный, сложный
punch	удар (кулаком) / ударять (кулаком)
aggravating factor	усугубляющий фактор
mitigating factor	смягчающее обстоятельство
mitigation	смягчение, уменьшение (вины, наказания)
predetermined	заранее решённый
pursuit	преследование; погоня
inflict violence	причинить (вред) с применением насилия
confront	сталкиваться, встречаться лицом к лицу
collide	столкнуться
enter a guilty plea	каяться, раскаиваться
testimonial	рекомендация; характеристика
reference	рекомендация; поручительство
unblemished record	безупречная, незапятнанная биография
unacceptable	недопустимый, неприемлемый
give no weight	не придавать важность, значение
breach the terms of his release	нарушать условия освобождения

2. You are going to watch a court hearing. You'll be a participant of the trial and have a chance to decide on a sentence. Watch and answer the questions the video suggests and complete the table below (<http://ybtj.justice.gov.uk/>).

Offence	...
Facts of offence	<i>the death happened in the result of ...</i>

The accused	<i>David ..., age ...</i>
The victim	<i>Mr Gough</i>
Aggravating factors	1) ... <i>attack</i> 2) ... <i>with intent on inflicting violence</i>
Mitigating factors	1) <i>entered ...</i> 2) <i>an... record with no previous ...</i>
Final sentence	<i>... years</i>

3. Choose the role.

Participants and Role Description

Cadet A: You are a judge. Talk about a sentence you are passing and its explanation.

Cadet B: You are a prosecutor. Talk about sentencing, other convictions, aggravating factors, why you are seeking that punishment, introduce evidence and question witnesses to bring out the facts of the case.

Cadet C: You are a defence lawyer. Talk about your client's sentencing, mitigating factors.

Cadet D: You are a defendant. Talk about the crime you've committed.

Cadet E: You are a witness. Talk about the crime you've witnessed. Know the questions the prosecutor will ask you and prepare clear and convincing answers

Cadet F: You are a clerk. You call to order.

4. Read the following sentences and phrases. Make notes according to your role. Try to remember them.

Judge	Good morning, ladies and gentlemen. Calling the case versus (<i>defendant's name</i>). Are both sides ready? The maximum penalty for this offence is ... I keep in mind that this is not a murder case and should not be treated as one. I have to balance the aggravating and mitigating factors. I accept that you did not actually intend ... I have taken into account your ... I have reduced ... For these reasons I am giving you a sentence of ...
Prosecutor	Your Honor, my name is ... This attack was ... The accused was in ... The accused intended to ... The force was so great that Mr Gough ... The evidence has clearly shown that ... Based on this testimony, there can be no doubt that ... I'm recommending ... Your Honor, I would like to call (<i>witness's name</i>) to the stand. Thank you Mr. / s. That will be all, your Honor

Defence lawyer	Your Honor, my name is ... My client has always admitted to ... I consider that it was the victim's careless driving that caused ... The victim's behaviour provoked ... I would stress that this attack is completely out of character. He also entered a ... Testimonials, character witnesses and references show ... But he never intended or expected that this would result in ... I don't want the defendant to receive a sentence of ... Your honour I call (<i>defendant</i>) ...
Clerk	All rise. The trial is now in session. Judge (<i>name</i>) presiding, Please be seated and come to order. The hearing deals with charging of Mr. Chichester with manslaughter

5. Read the text to make sure that you have caught the information.

Facts of Offence

David Chichester got into his car ready to drive off. A car approaching from behind scraped his car as it was driving past. The car didn't stop speeding away. Mr. Chichester was annoyed and followed the run-away car. The driver, Mr. Gough, wasn't going to stop.

As the car pulled over, David Chichester walked up to it saying that the driver had hit his car. The driver objected to it. Mr. Chichester shouted at him.

Then he punched Mr. Gough in the face. Mr. Gough fell backwards and hit his head on the pavement. Mr. Chichester bent down slowly over the victim. He was shocked. Unfortunately for the victim, John Gough, he never regained consciousness and later died.

6. Exercise target phrases.

- What happened?
- What did you see?
- Do you plead guilty or not guilty?
- Could you please tell the court what occurred on (date)?
- What do you know about the case?

7. Trial Sequence

1. Introductory matters. Calling of case (conducted by clerk and judge)
2. Opening statement (Prosecution's case)
3. The testimony of the witness (direct examination)
4. Defence lawyer's case
5. Defendant's case
6. Final sentence explained (conducted by judge)

8. Using notes act out a trial.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. If anyone breaks the law of a country, he or she is ... to its judicial system.
 - a) subject
 - b) object
 - c) accused
2. The main ... on sentencing in the UK is the Criminal Justice Act 2003.
 - a) subject
 - b) statute
 - c) purpose
3. Purposes of sentencing are to punish offenders, reduce crime, protect the public, ... an offender's behaviour, and make them up for the crime.
 - a) take into account
 - b) protect
 - c) change
4. Main types of sentence include imprisonment, ... sentences, fines and discharges.
 - a) government
 - b) public
 - c) community
5. Judges and magistrates use sentencing ... when deciding what sentences to give.
 - a) rules
 - b) decisions
 - c) guidelines

2. **Fill in:** an appropriate, the judicial system, found, account, meet, licence, a sentence, offenders, guidelines, history.

- 1 subject to ...
- 2 ... sentence
- 3 take into ...
- 4 being on ...
- 5 ... requirements
- 6 punish ...
- 7 criminal ...
- 8 decide on ...
- 9 ... the crime
- 10 ... guilty

3. Choose the correct word / words.

1. Deciding on **a sentence** / **career** judges and magistrates are taken into account the type of crime and its seriousness, the offender's admission of guilt, his (her) criminal history and personal and financial circumstances.

2. **Discharges** / **Fines** are given for the least serious offences such as minor thefts.

3. Community sentences **place** / **comply with** requirements that offenders must meet while serving their sentences.

4. Serving a community sentence offenders should have regular meetings with a **detective** / **probation officer**.

5. There are three different types of **prison** / **community** sentence: suspended sentence, determinate sentence, indeterminate sentence (including life sentence).

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. There is a range of sentences that judges and magistrates can

2. If anyone ... the law of a country, he or she is subject to its judicial system.

3. One of the most important things is to make sure ... sentences are given for each crime.

4. Deciding on a sentence judges and magistrates in England and Wales use sentencing

5. Life sentences can be given to offenders who are found ... of murder, manslaughter, rape, armed robbery or arson.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. What are the purposes of sentencing?

a) to punish offenders, reduce crime

b) to respect for the law, maintain a just, peaceful and safe society

c) to punish offenders, reduce crime, protect the public, change an offender's behaviour, and make them up for the crime

2. The types of sentence are

a) fines and prison sentences

a) discharges, fines, a community sentence, prison sentences

b) suspended sentence, determinate sentence, indeterminate sentence

3. What is a community sentence?

a) Regular meeting with a probation officer

b) The combination of punishment with activities carried out in the community

c) Drug and alcohol treatment

4. What crimes are fines usually imposed?

a) For less serious crimes like: driving and road traffic offences; minor offences of theft or criminal damage

b) For theft, vandalism, robbery, physical assault

c) For violent and sexual offences

5. What are the types of prison sentence?

a) Determinate and indeterminate sentence

b) Life sentence

c) Suspended sentence, determinate sentence, indeterminate sentence (including life sentence)

Lead-in

- Look at the sign. What do the captions of the sign and the sign itself mean?
- What punishment can be imposed for the same offence in Russia?
- What other types of punishment do you know?



Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Crime and Punishment in Russia and Abroad

The criminal law sets out both **crimes** and **punishments**. The type of sentence an offender gets depends on the type of crime committed.

In the United States federal criminal Code, crimes are divided into two broad categories: misdemeanors and felonies. The federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a **fine** or incarceration for one year or less to be a misdemeanor. The amount of a fine varies with the severity of the offense. Felonies are serious crimes imposed by **imprisonment** or death. **Capital punishment** is the most serious punishment. It is reserved for the worst crimes, such as murder.

There is no crime that is not indicated in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation. Depending on the nature and degree of social danger, crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little **gravity** (punishable by a maximum of three years imprisonment), crimes of average gravity (punishable by a maximum of five years imprisonment), grave crimes (punishable by a maximum of ten years imprisonment), and especially grave crimes (punishable by more than ten years imprisonment). This distinction is used to determine **sentencing** of offenders and the type of correctional institutions to which they are sent.

The age of criminal responsibility is 16. People aged 14 and over will bear responsibility for murder, major bodily injury, rape, kidnapping, larceny, robbery, burglary, stealing of firearms and drugs, terroristic acts and seizure of hostages, etc.

Types of criminal punishment used in Russia include fines, imprisonment, life imprisonment, reforming works without imprisonment, deprivation of the right to hold certain positions or perform certain activities, deprivation of special military or other ranks and others. The court may **impose** educational measures on persons under the age of 18 who committed a crime.

The current Criminal Code of the Russian Federation provides for death penalty. But it hasn't been used since 1996 by the Constitutional Court order.

Study Skills

2. *Learn the vocabulary:*

bear v bear responsibility	нести (ответственность)
deprivation n	лишение, отрешение от должности
determine v	определять; выносить (решение)
distinction n	различие
felony n	тяжкое уголовное преступление
fine n	штраф
grave adj (зд.)	тяжкий
gravity n average ~	тяжесть средней тяжести
hold	занимать (пост, должность); иметь (звание, ранг)
hostage n seizure of hostages	заложник захват заложников
impose n	налагать
imprisonment n	заключение (в тюрьму); лишение свободы
incarceration n	тюремное заключение
larceny n	воровство, кража
misdemeanor n	мелкое правонарушение
provide (for) v	предусматривать
reserve v	назначать
sentence sentencing	приговор; наказание приговор
set v	устанавливать; формулировать (закон)
severity n	тяжесть

3. *Match the English and Russian equivalents.*

1 sentence	a мелкое правонарушение
2 misdemeanor	b налагать
3 felony	c штраф
4 impose	d приговор
5 imprisonment	e наказание
6 fine	f заключение (в тюрьму)
7 grave	g предусматривать
8 responsibility	h тяжкое уголовное преступление
9 punishment	i отрешение от должности
10 deprivation	j занимать (пост, должность)
11 provide	k тяжкий
12 hold	l ответственность

4. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1 высшая мера наказания	a the amount of a fine
2 размер (сумма) штрафа	b punishable by three years imprisonment
3 особо тяжкие преступления	c severity of the offense
4 пожизненное заключение	d capital punishment
5 лишение званий	e life imprisonment
6 нести ответственность	f indicated in the criminal code
7 назначить тюремное заключение или смертную казнь	g especially grave crimes
8 наказываемый трехлетним тюремным заключением	h determine sentencing
9 назначать воспитательные меры	i bear responsibility
10 тяжесть преступления	j major bodily injury
11 назначить наказание	k deprivation of ranks
12 занимать должность	l impose educational measures
13 тяжкое телесное повреждение	m provide for death penalty
14 указанный в Уголовном кодексе	n hold position
15 предусматривает смертную казнь	o impose imprisonment or death

5. Match the antonyms.

1 divide	a freedom
2 broad	b minor
3 incarceration	c minor
4 serious	d join
5 worst	e narrow
6 danger	f similarity
7 grave	g best
8 distinction	h reward
9 seizure	i safety
10 punishment	j release

6. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

Depend on the type of crime committed; are divided into two broad categories; punishable by a fine or incarceration; serious crimes; the amount of a fine; capital punishment; indicated in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation; depending on the nature and degree of social danger; crimes of little gravity; determine sentencing of offenders; the age of criminal responsibility; life imprisonment; reforming works without imprisonment; impose educational measures; Constitutional Court order.

7. **Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.**

1. Определяет виды преступлений и наказаний
2. Зависит от типа совершенного преступления
3. Государство считает
4. Преступление, наказываемое штрафом
5. Преступления, за которые назначают лишение свободы или смертную казнь
6. Меняется в зависимости от тяжести преступления
7. Назначается за самые тяжкие преступления
8. Максимальное наказание не превышает трех лет лишения свободы
9. Люди в возрасте 14 лет и старше
10. Несут ответственность за тяжкие телесные повреждения, хищение оружия и наркотиков
11. Лишение права занимать определенные должности или заниматься определенной деятельностью;
12. Действующий Уголовный кодекс
13. Предусматривает смертную казнь

8. **Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.**

- 1 the state of being imprisoned
- 2 an action or omission which constitutes an offence and is punishable by law
- 3 require (a duty, charge, or penalty) to be undertaken or paid
- 4 punishment which involves the legal killing of a person who has committed a serious crime such as murder
- 5 the infliction or imposition of a penalty as retribution for an offence
- 6 extreme or alarming importance; seriousness
- 7 sum of money exacted as a penalty by a court of law or other authority
- 8 the punishment assigned to a defendant found guilty by a court, or fixed by law for a particular offence

9. **Use the word / phrases in the box to make word combinations with the words. impose; responsibility; crime(s); imprisonment**

e.g. crimes of average gravity

of average gravity; bear; punishable by a maximum of three years; educational measures; of little gravity; imprisonment; the age of criminal; grave; punishable by a maximum of five years; especially grave; death; punishable by incarceration; the worst; punishable by a maximum of ten years punishable by more than ten years imprisonment serious

10. **Choose the correct word / words.**

1. The criminal law **sets out** / **imposes** both crimes and punishments.
2. The type of sentence an offender gets depends on the type of crime **committed** / **detected**.

3. The federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine or incarceration for one year or less to be a **misdemeanor** / **felony**.
4. Felonies are serious crimes imposed by **imprisonment** / **fine**.
5. Capital punishment is reserved for **the least serious** / **the worst** crimes.
6. Depending on the nature and degree of social **danger** / **responsibility**, crimes are classified into four categories.
7. Crimes of little gravity are punishable by a maximum of **three** / **five** years imprisonment.
8. Types of criminal punishment used in Russia include fines, imprisonment, life imprisonment, reforming works without imprisonment, deprivation of the right to **hold** / **take** certain positions.
9. The current Criminal Code of the Russian Federation **prohibits** / **provides for** death penalty.
10. Death penalty hasn't been used since 1996 by **the Constitutional Court order** / **the Law on Police**.

11. Match the words in bold to their synonyms in the box.

imprisonment; exercise; grave; sentence; grouped; harm; decide; present; death penalty; difference; theft

1. The federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine or **incarceration** for one year or less to be a misdemeanor.
2. Felonies are **serious** crimes imposed by imprisonment or death.
3. **Capital punishment** is the most serious punishment.
4. Depending on the nature and degree of social danger, crimes are **classified** into four categories.
5. This **distinction** is used to **determine** sentencing of offenders.
6. People aged 14 and over will **bear** responsibility for murder, major bodily **injury**, rape, kidnapping, **larceny**, robbery.
7. Types of criminal **punishment** used in Russia include fines, imprisonment, life imprisonment, reforming works without imprisonment, deprivation of the right to hold certain positions or perform certain activities /
8. The **current** Criminal Code of the Russian Federation provides for death penalty.

12. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective	Verb
correction		
	imprisoned	
		respond
incarceration		

	reforming	
		differ
	severe	—
		penalize
deprivation		
	punishable	
imposition		
	offensive	

13. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Criminal laws define crimes and may establish (0) **(0) punish**
punishments. Crimes receive (1) ... classifications **(1) differ**
according to their (2) A misdemeanor crime is one for **(2) severe**
which the jail sentence is less than one year. Any crime that
provides for an (3) ... of a year or more is categorized as a **(3) incarcerate**
felony. Depending on the nature and degree of social danger,
crimes in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation are
classified into four (4) ...: crimes of little gravity, crimes of
average (5) ..., grave crimes, and especially grave crimes. **(4) categorize**
Types of criminal punishment used in Russia include fines, **(5) grave**
(6) ..., life imprisonment, (7) ... works without
imprisonment, **(8) ...** of the right to hold certain positions **(6) imprison**
or perform certain activities. The current Criminal Code of **(7) reform**
the Russian Federation provides for death **(9)** The age of **(8) deprive**
criminal **(10) ...** in Russia is 16.
(9) penal
(10) respond

14. Use the word / words in the box to complete the sentences.

Capital, deprivation, responsibility, misdemeanor, depends on, imposed, degree, sets out, court, order, categories, determine, bear, provides for

1. The criminal law ... both crimes and punishments.
2. The type of sentence an offender gets ... the type of crime committed.
3. In the United States Code, crimes are divided into two broad ...: misdemeanors and felonies.
4. A crime punishable by a fine or incarceration for one year or less is considered to be a
5. Felonies are serious crimes ... by imprisonment or death.
6. ... punishment is reserved for the worst crimes, such as murder.

7. Depending on the nature and ... of social danger, crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of average gravity, grave crimes, and especially grave crimes.

8. This distinction is used to ... sentencing of offenders and the type of correctional institutions to which they are sent.

9. The age of criminal ... is 16.

10. People aged 14 and over will ... responsibility for murder, major bodily injury, rape, kidnapping, larceny, robbery, burglary, stealing of firearms and drugs, terroristic acts and seizure of hostages, etc.

11. Types of criminal punishment used in Russia include fines, imprisonment, life imprisonment, reforming works without imprisonment, ... of the right to hold certain positions or perform certain activities.

12. The ... may impose educational measures on persons under the age of 18 who committed a crime.

13. The current Criminal Code of the Russian Federation ... death penalty.

14. But it hasn't been used since 1996 by the Constitutional Court

15. Find in the sentences gerund and gerund construction.

1. Being a law student is what you want to be.

2. Studying law has its ups and downs.

3. It's absolutely important to ensure that you enjoy studying law.

4. I like learning more about everything, but especially about the law.

5. Many students wonder if they enjoy being a lawyer.

6. Some students ask themselves if a law school is worth making an investment of both time and education.

7. The court can prohibit accessing the Internet to a person, who has committed ordinary crime of fraud or forgery by means of the Internet.

8. The new section of Lithuania Penal Code provides the possibility of being punished for computer data, information or program theft.

9. French courts forbid parents from naming children 'Nutella' or 'Strawberry'.

10. Sentencing is left to the discretion¹ of the judge.

11. Under the Companies Act 1990, a person, convicted on indictment² of a criminal offence related to a company, can be disqualified from holding certain positions related to running a company, such as a director.

12. Carrying a firearm with criminal intention can be punished for minimum of 5 years imprisonment.

13. Motorists always need to be aware that speeding is highly dangerous.

14. After being caught speeding, I was concerned³ about how I could keep my job because driving is an essential part of my work.

15. Marcus Brown died after being shot Saturday at his apartment.

¹ Усмотрение.

² Осужденный по обвинению.

³ Беспокоился.

16. None of the witnesses remembered seeing a man with the indicated features push the victim into the alley.
17. None remembered seeing him with the victim's purse.
18. A judge in England orders father to stop taking 9-year-old son to church.

16. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following. The sentence starts from the word in bold.

1. **The criminal** / both / punishments / sets / law / out / and / crimes.
2. **What** / the type / sentence / of / depend on / does?
3. **What** / in the USA / are / / divided / crimes / into / categories?
4. **What** / a / is / felony?
5. **What** / is / sentence / imposed / felonies / for?
6. **What** / varies with / does / a fine / the amount / of / ?
7. **What** / the most / punishment / serious / is?
8. **Capital** / is / punishment / reserved / for / crimes / the worst.
9. **How** / categories / in the Criminal Code of the Russian Federation / crimes / many / are / classified?
10. **What** / classification / this / does / depend on?
11. **What** / these / are / categories?
12. **Why** / this distinction / is / used?
13. **What** / of / responsibility / the age / criminal / is?
14. **What** / responsibility for / crimes / aged / people / 14 / will / bear / and over?
15. **What** / in Russia / punishment / are / of / criminal / types / used?
16. **Does** / penalty / the current / Code / Criminal / of the Russian / death / Federation / provides for?
17. **Death** / been / Court / used / penalty / since / by the Constitutional / order / 1996 / hasn't.

17. Fill in: degree, set out, deprivation, punishable, determine, provide for, impose, bear especially, hold, reforming, imprisonment, educational.

Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.

1 ... crimes and punishments	9 the amount of a fine
2 ... imprisonment	10 capital punishment
3 ... of social danger	11 ... grave crimes
4 ... by a fine	12 ... sentencing
5 ... responsibility	13 life ...
6 ... works	14 ... of ranks
7 ... certain positions	15 ... measures
8 ... death penalty	

18. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The criminal law sets out
2. The type of sentence an offender gets depends on

3. In the United States Code, crimes are divided into
4. The federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine
5. Felonies are serious crimes imposed by
6. The amount of a fine varies
7. Capital punishment is reserved for
8. There is no crime that is not indicated in
9. Depending on the nature and degree of social danger, crimes are classified into
10. This distinction is used to determine
11. The age of criminal responsibility is
12. People aged 14 and over will bear responsibility for
13. Types of criminal punishment used in Russia include
14. The court may impose educational measures on persons
15. The current Criminal Code of the Russian Federation provides for
16. Death penalty hasn't been used since 1996 by

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching and Speaking

Watching

“What types of punishments do I face if convicted of a crime in Florida?”

Pre-viewing

19. Answer the questions.

1. What is crime classification used in the USA?
2. What punishment is imposed for a misdemeanor?
3. What punishment is given for a felony?

20. Try to remember the words.

convict conviction	осудить, признать виновным (в чём-либо) осуждение, признание виновным
range	колебаться
possession of marihuana	хранение марихуаны
petty	мелкий
probation	пробация, система испытания (вид условного осуждения)
jail	тюрьма

21. Fill in the gaps.

The penalty can ... greatly depending what the crime was. A small misdemeanor such as ... or petty theft can result in a ... or probation. A ... conviction can result in years in jail, up to

22. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Tasks 19, 21. Then, switch roles.

Cadet A: You are a **cadet**. Ask Cadet B about different types of punishment.

Cadet B: You are a **professor** of Criminal Law Department. Talk to Cadet A about punishment.

23. What crime category do the crimes mentioned in Reading 1 belong to? What sentence can they be imposed? Use the Criminal Code if necessary. Fill in the chart.

Crime Categories	Punishment	Crimes
crimes of little gravity	<i>maximum of three years' imprisonment</i>	
crimes of average gravity		<i>robbery</i>
grave crimes		
especially grave crimes		

Useful language

- The punishment for ... is ...
- The offense is punishable by ...
- One can get ... for ...

24. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1 What determines crimes and punishments? 2 What does the type of sentence depend on? 3 What are crime categories in the USA? 4 What crimes are fines or incarceration for one year or less usually given for? 5 Is the amount of fine fixed?	a The type of sentence an offender gets depends on the type of crime committed b The federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine or incarceration for one year or less to be a misdemeanor c The criminal law sets out both crimes and punishments d In the United States Code, crimes are divided into two broad categories: misdemeanors and felonies e Crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity (punishable by a maximum of three years imprisonment), crimes of average gravity (punishable by a maximum of five years imprisonment), grave crimes (punishable by a maximum of

- ten years imprisonment), and especially grave crimes (punishable by more than ten years imprisonment).
- 6** What crimes are punishable by incarceration or death? **f** The amount of a fine varies with the severity of the offense
- 7** What is crime classification in Russia? **g** Felonies are serious crimes imposed by imprisonment or death
- 8** What does the classification depend on? **h** This distinction is used to determine sentencing of offenders and the type of correctional institutions to which they are sent
- 9** Why is the classification used? **i** Crime classification depends on the nature and degree of social danger of the offence
- 10** What is the age of criminal responsibility? **j** Types of criminal punishment used in Russia include fines, imprisonment, life imprisonment, reforming works without imprisonment, deprivation of the right to hold certain positions or perform certain activities, deprivation of special military or other ranks and others. The court may impose educational measures on persons under the age of 18
- 11** What crimes will people aged 14 and over bear responsibility for? **k** The current Criminal Code of the Russian Federation provides for death penalty
- 12** What types of sentence are imposed on someone found guilty in Russia? **l** People aged 14 and over will bear responsibility for murder, major bodily injury, rape, kidnapping, larceny, robbery, burglary, stealing of firearms and drugs, terroristic acts and seizure of hostages, etc.
- 13** Is capital punishment legal in Russia? **m** The age of criminal responsibility is 16
- 14** Why hasn't death penalty been used in Russia since 1996? **n** It hasn't been used since 1996 by the Constitutional Court order

25. *With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 24. Then, switch roles.*

Cadet A: You are a **cadet**. Ask Cadet B about different types of crimes and punishment imposed in Russia and abroad.

Cadet B: You are a **professor** of Criminal Law Department. Talk to Cadet A about crime categories and types of punishment.

26. *Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.*

- Crime categories and types of punishment used the USA
- The Criminal Code of the Russian Federation, its crime classification
- The age of criminal responsibility
- Types of criminal punishment used in Russia
- Death penalty in Russia

27. *Speak on crime and punishment in Russia.*

PROGRESS CHECK

1. *Choose the correct word.*

1. There is no crime that is not specified in the ... Code.
 - a) Civil
 - b) Family
 - c) Criminal
2. ... are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of average gravity, grave crimes, and especially grave crimes.
 - a) Penalties
 - b) Thefts
 - c) Crimes
3. The age of criminal responsibility is
 - a) 16
 - b) 18
 - c) 14
4. Penalty hasn't been used since 1996 by the Constitutional Court order
 - a) Fine
 - b) Death
 - c) Criminal
5. The form of punishment depends on the type of crime....
 - a) solved
 - b) investigated
 - c) committed

2. **Fill in:** punishable, set out, capital, responsibility, reforming, imprisonment, deprivation, grave, provide for, life.

- 1 ... crimes and punishments
- 2 impose
- 3 ... punishment
- 4 ... by a fine
- 5 bear ...
- 6 ... works
- 7 ... imprisonment
- 8 ... death penalty.
- 9 ... crimes
- 10 ... of the right

3. **Choose the correct item.**

1. The criminal law **sets out** / **imposes** both crimes and punishments.
2. The type of sentence an offender gets depends on the type of crime **committed** / **detected**.
3. The federal government generally considers a crime punishable by a fine or incarceration for one year or less to be a **misdemeanor** / **felony**.
4. Felonies are serious crimes imposed by **imprisonment** / **fine**.
5. Capital punishment is reserved for **the least serious** / **the worst** crimes.

4. **Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words from the box.**

bear, responsibility, determine, court, degree

1. Depending on the nature and ... of social danger, crimes are classified into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of average gravity, grave crimes, and especially grave crimes.
2. This distinction is used to ... sentencing of offenders and the type of correctional institutions to which they are sent.
3. The age of criminal ... is 16.
4. People aged 14 and over will ... responsibility for murder, major bodily injury, rape, kidnapping, theft, robbery, etc.
5. The ... may impose educational measures on persons under the age of 18 who committed a crime.

5. **Choose the right answer to the question.**

1. What document determines crime and punishment in Russia?
 - a) The Criminal Code
 - b) Law on Police
 - c) Criminal Procedure law
2. How are crimes in the USA classified?
 - a) Into two categories: felonies and misdemeanors

- b) Into four categories: crimes of little gravity, crimes of average gravity, grave crimes, and especially grave crimes
 - c) Into summary and indictable offences
- 3. What does the form of punishment depend on?
 - a) The place of living
 - b) The age of the guilty person
 - c) The type of crime committed
- 4. What are types of criminal punishment used in Russia?
 - a) Fines, community works, prison sentences
 - b) Life imprisonment, imprisonment, fines, reforming works without imprisonment, deprivation of the right to hold certain positions, etc.
 - c) Imprisonment and capital punishment
- 5. Is capital punishment legal in Russia?
 - a) It hasn't been used since 1996 by the Constitutional Court order
 - b) It is abolished in some areas of RU
 - c) Yes

Module V

ANTI-TERRORISM

TERRORIST CRIME

Part A

Lead-in

- What does the term “terrorism” mean?
- What is the purpose of terrorist violence?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Use of Terror

“Terrorism” comes from the French word *terrorisme*, and originally referred specifically to state terrorism as practiced by the French government during the Reign of terror. The French word *terrorisme* in turn derives from the Latin verb *terreo* meaning “I frighten”.

Terrorism is the systematic use of terror, especially as a means of coercion. In the international community, however, terrorism has no universally agreed, legally binding, criminal law definition. Common definitions of terrorism refer only to those violent acts which are intended to create fear (terror), are perpetrated for a religious, political or, ideological goal, and deliberately target or disregard the safety of non-combatants(civilians). Some definitions now include acts of unlawful violence and war. The use of similar tactics by criminal organizations for protection rackets or to enforce a code of silence is usually not labeled terrorism though these same actions may be labeled terrorism when done by a politically motivated group.

Terrorism has been practiced by a broad array of political organizations for furthering their objectives. It has been practiced by both right — wing and left-wing parties, nationalistic groups, religious groups, revolutionaries, and ruling governments. An abiding characteristic is the indiscriminate use of violence against noncombatants for the purpose of gaining publicity for a group, cause, or individual. The symbolism of terrorism can leverage human fear to help achieve these goals.

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Terrorism comes from:
 - a) the English word “terrorism”
 - b) the French word “terrorisme”
 - c) the Latin word “terreo”

2. Terrorism is used as a means of:
 - a) protection
 - b) safety
 - c) coercion
3. Common definitions of terrorism refer to:
 - a) protection rackets
 - b) violent acts intended to create fear
 - c) lawful wars
4. Terrorism has been practiced by:
 - a) a narrow array of political organizations
 - b) only left-wing political parties
 - c) by both left-wing and right-wing political parties
5. The main characteristic of terrorism is the use of violence against:
 - a) civilians
 - b) criminal organizations
 - c) any targets

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Terrorist Tactics

Terrorism has been correctly described as a strategy of the weak. It is hardly a new **phenomenon**; in one form or another terrorism pervades recorded history. Governments, especially the more liberal ones, find the phenomenon difficult to cope with. Today's terrorists seek to weaken governments by using violence, causing damage to people and property and gaining publicity for their cause. By its very nature, terrorism is engaged in the disruption of norms and **violation** of generally accepted standards of decency. To be effective, terrorism must evoke a severe emotional response. Terrorist crimes, often involving shocking acts of violence, are used by various groups or individuals to promote their purposes. Terrorist attacks are usually carried out in such a way as to maximize the severity and length of the psychological **impact**. Terrorists also attack national symbols to show power and to shake the foundations of the country or society they are opposed to.

By distinguishing terrorists from other types of criminals and terrorism from other forms of crime, experts and scholars come to appreciate that terrorism is:

- ineluctably political in aims and motives
- violent — or, equally important, threatens violence
- designed to have far-reaching psychological repercussions beyond the immediate victim or **target**
- conducted by an organization with an identifiable chain of command or conspiratorial cell structure (whose members wear no uniform or identifying insignia) and
- perpetrated by a transnational group or non-state entity.

Terrorist violence is by its nature random. Its immediate victims are of no real consequence to its perpetrators' goals.

Responses to terrorism are broad in scope. They can include realignments of the political spectrum and reassessments of fundamental values.

Specific types of responses include:

- targeted laws, criminal procedures, deportations and **enhanced** police powers
- target hardening, such as locking doors or adding traffic barriers;
- preemptive or reactive military action
- increased intelligence and surveillance activities
- preemptive humanitarian activities
- more permissive interrogation and **detention** policies.

Terrorism has been of concern to the international community since 1937 when the League of Nations adopted the Convention for the Prevention and Punishment of Terrorism. Subsequently, the United Nations and other international and regional intergovernmental organizations have dealt with terrorism from a legal and political perspective. Since 1963, the international community has developed international legal instruments related to the **prevention** and suppression of international terrorism. In September 2006 UN member states agreed to coordinate their counterterrorism efforts, as well as to gather the UN offices and agencies engaged in counterterrorism activities under the UN Global Strategy, which provides a common strategic and operational framework to fight terrorism.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Terrorism has been correctly described:
 - a) as a strategy of the strong
 - b) as a new phenomenon
 - c) as a strategy of the weak
2. Terrorist attacks are usually carried out in such a way as:
 - a) to minimize the severity of psychological impact
 - b) to maximize the severity of psychological impact
 - c) not to violate generally accepted standards of decency
3. Experts and scholars come to appreciate that terrorism is:
 - a) ineluctably political in aims and motives
 - b) perpetrated only by a transnational group or entity
 - c) perpetrated only by local groups
4. Responses to terrorism are:
 - a) very narrow in scope
 - b) only political
 - c) very broad in scope
5. The United Nations and other international and regional organizations have dealt with terrorism:
 - a) from legal and political perspective
 - b) from humanitarian perspective
 - c) from political perspective only

Study Skills

5. *Learn the vocabulary.*

alignment <i>n</i>	расстановка
apply <i>v to</i>	относиться
appreciate <i>v</i>	понимать, ценить
assessment <i>n</i>	оценка
cell <i>n</i>	ячейка
coercion <i>n</i>	принуждение
coercive <i>a</i>	принудительный
conspiratorial <i>a</i>	законспирированный, тайный
decency <i>n</i>	приличие
detention <i>n</i>	заключение под стражу
disruption <i>n</i>	подрыв
distinguish <i>v</i>	устанавливать различие по существу
engage <i>v</i>	заниматься
enhance <i>v</i>	усиливать, повышать
entity <i>v</i>	организация
evoke <i>v</i>	вызывать, пробуждать
framework <i>n</i>	рамки
frighten <i>v</i>	пугать
further <i>v</i>	способствовать, содействовать
impact <i>n</i>	воздействие, влияние
ineluctably <i>adv</i>	неизбежно, неотвратно
insignia <i>n pl</i>	знаки различия
intelligence <i>n</i>	сведения; разведка
interrogation <i>n</i>	допрос
pervade <i>v</i>	наполнять, охватывать
preemptive <i>a</i>	опережающий
random <i>a</i>	выбранный наугад, случайный
repercussions <i>n pl</i>	последствия
severity <i>n</i>	строгость, жестокость
subsequently <i>adv</i>	впоследствии, затем
surveillance <i>n</i>	надзор
target <i>n</i>	мишень, цель
threaten <i>v</i>	угрожать

6. *Match the English and Russian equivalents.*

1	a strategy of the weak	a	целенаправленные законы
2	difficult to cope with	b	главные ценности
3	by its very nature	c	переоценка
4	evoke a response	d	подрывать основы
5	maximize the severity	e	реакция на терроризм
6	responses to terrorism	f	привести к максимальной жестокости

7	shake the foundations	g	вызывать отклик
8	reassessment	h	по своей природе
9	fundamental values	i	тяжело справиться
10	targeted laws	j	стратегия слабых
11	enhanced police powers	k	деятельность по сбору информации
12	intelligence activity	l	предупреждение и подавление
13	lock doors	m	опережающий
14	preemptive	n	запирать двери
15	prevention and suppression	o	возросшие полномочия полиции

7. Translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Pervade recorded history; weaken governments; a strategy of the weak; disruption of norms; hardly a new phenomenon; gain publicity; a severe emotional response; psychological impact; attack national symbols; shake the foundations of society; distinguish terrorists from other types of criminals; gather the UN offices and agencies engaged in counterterrorism activities; coordinate counterterrorism efforts; develop international legal instruments; wear no identifying insignia; conspiratorial cell structure; non-state entity; immediate victims; preemptive actions; intelligence and surveillance activities.

b) Стратегия слабых; деятельность по сбору информации; возросшие полномочия полиции; ослаблять правительства; непосредственная жертва или цель; допрос; реакция на террористические атаки; совершенствовать международные правовые инструменты; целенаправленные законы; вызывать сильную эмоциональную реакцию; не носить никаких опознавательных знаков; психологическое воздействие; переоценка ценностей.

8. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

acknowledge, arrest, objective, influence, decorations, information, reaction, authority, collect, struggle

1. To be effective, terrorism must evoke a severe emotional response.
2. Terrorist attacks are usually carried out in such a way as to maximize the severity and length of the psychological impact.
3. Experts and scholars come to appreciate that terrorism is ineluctably political in aims and motives.
4. Members of terrorist organizations often wear no uniform or identifying insignia.
5. Specific types of responses include targeted laws, criminal procedures, deportations and enhanced police powers.
6. Specific types of responses include increased intelligence and surveillance activities and more permissive interrogation and detention policies.

7. In September 2006 UN member states agreed to gather UN offices and agencies engaged in counterterrorism activities under the UN Global Strategy, which provides a common strategic and operational framework to fight terrorism.

9. Match the antonyms.

1 weaken	a guilty
2 new	b simplify
3 attack	c open
4 disruption	d unlawful
5 include	e passivity
6 maximize	f strengthen
7 innocent	g old
8 conspiratorial	h defend
9 harden	i creation
10 legal	j exclude
11 activity	k minimize

10. Fill in: weaken, pervade, strategy, immediate, apply, other types, disruption, standards, evoke, be engaged, wear, deal, preemptive, targeted, have, responses. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ... of the weak	9 ... victim or target
2 ... recorded history	10 ... to terrorist attacks
3 ... governments	11 ... laws
4 ... of norms	12 ... psychological impact
5 ... a severe emotional response	13 ... action
6 ... of decency	14 ... no uniform
7 ... of criminals	15 ... with terrorism
8 ... to the innocent and the helpless	16 ... in counterterrorism activities

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the words.

terrorist(s); terrorism

seek to weaken governments, violence, distinguish ... from other types of criminals, attack national symbols, shake the foundation of the society, a strategy of the weak, be engaged in the disruption of norms, responses to, evoke a severe emotional response, threaten violence, prevention and suppression of, fight, international

12. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 use of force or threats to demoralize, intimidate, esp. such use as a political weapon or policy
- 2 any extremely unusual or extraordinary thing or occurrence
- 3 infringement or breach of a law, rule, right
- 4 violent contact, shock
- 5 someone or smth selected as the aim of an attack
- 6 to make greater
- 7 keeping in custody, confinement
- 8 making impossible by prior action

13. Use the correct form.

1. Governments (**to find**) the phenomenon difficult to cope with.
2. Today's terrorist (**to seek**) to weaken governments.
3. Responses to terrorism (**to be**) broad in scope.
4. Terrorism (**to be**) of concern to the international community since 1937.
5. Since 1963 the international community (**to develop**) international legal instruments to fight terrorism.
6. Terrorists (**to distinguish**) from other types of criminals.
7. Terrorism (**to use**) by various groups or individuals as a means of coercion.
8. The United Nations and other international and regional intergovernmental organizations (**to deal with**) terrorism from a legal and political perspective.

14. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences below.

use, recorded, the weak, enhanced police powers, surveillance, terrorists, provides, to fight, reassessments, random, entity, political, evoke, disruption, violence

1. Terrorism is the systematic ... of fear.
2. The main characteristic of terrorism is the use of ... by a politically motivated group.
3. Terrorism has been correctly described as a strategy of
4. In one form or another terrorism pervades ... history.
5. By its very nature, terrorism is engaged in the ... of norms.
6. To be effective, terrorism must ... a severe emotional response.
7. Terrorism is ineluctably ... in aims and motives.
8. Terrorist acts are perpetrated by a transnational group or non-state
9. Terrorist violence is by its nature
10. Responses to terrorism can include ... of fundamental values.
11. Specific types of responses are targeted laws, criminal procedures and
12. Increased intelligence and ... activities are forms of responses to terrorism.
13. The term counterterrorism implies that it is directed at

14. US Global Strategy ... a common strategic and operational framework ... terrorism.

15. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Terrorism has been correctly described as
2. Governments, especially the more liberal ones, find the phenomenon
3. Today's terrorist attacks national symbols to shake
4. Each act of terrorism often involves shocking acts of violence to have an impact on
5. Terrorists also are involved in the disruption of
6. Experts and scholars come to appreciate that terrorism is violent-or, equally important,....
7. By its very nature terrorist violence is
8. Specific types of responses include more permissive interrogation and
9. In 1937 the League of Nations adopted the Convention for
10. In September 2006 UN member states agreed to coordinate

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

16. Look through the contents of the video text "Stay safe". Try to remember the following words:

aware <i>a</i>	сознающий
belongings <i>n pl</i>	вещи
bottleneck <i>n</i>	узкий проход
casualties <i>n pl</i>	потери
cater <i>v for</i>	угождать, подходить
challenge <i>n</i>	вызов
escape <i>v</i>	спастись
eventuality <i>n</i>	возможный случай
hide <i>v</i>	прятаться
hostage <i>n</i>	заложник
maraud <i>v</i>	мародерствовать
perceive <i>v</i>	воспринимать
reinforce <i>v</i>	усиливать
roll <i>v out</i>	произносить отчетливо

17. Watch the film "Stay safe". Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best according to the film.

1. How many people have seen the film "Stay safe"?
 - a) over 100 000
 - b) about 10 000
 - c) more than 1000
2. In what way would you respond to a firearms and weapons attack?
 - a) shoot in reply

- b) cry for help
- c) evacuate
- 3. What will you choose first on hearing gunshots?
 - a) advise others how to stay safe
 - b) consider your route of escape
 - c) decide to act on instinct
- 4. What do you consider when finding a hiding place?
 - a) information about casualties
 - b) your exits and escape routes
 - c) the location of the attackers
- 5. What is the telephone number of police in the UK?
 - a) 901
 - b) 911
 - c) 999

18. Watch the film “Stay safe” again. Answer the following questions..

- What kind of advice is given in the film?
- How can a person respond to a firearms attack and stay safe?
- What are the main recommendations for surviving?

Speaking on the problems you may use the following patterns:

Giving your Opinion	Выражая свое мнение
From my point of view	С моей точки зрения
I am afraid that ...	Боюсь, что ...
I am certain that ...	Я уверен, что ...
I am convinced that ...	Я убежден, что ...
I don't deny, that ...	Я не отрицаю, что ...
I greatly admire	Я глубоко уважаю
I must say that ...	Надо сказать, что ...
I suppose that ...	Я полагаю, что ...
I think it's important to say ...	По-моему, важно сказать ...
I think that ...	Я думаю, что ...
In my opinion	По-моему, на мой взгляд
It seems to me that ...	Мне кажется, что ...
It's obvious that ...	Очевидно, что ...
The fact is that ...	Дело в том, что ...
That's just the point	В том-то и дело

19. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

Work in pairs. Ask your partner a question from the right-hand column. Complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: “Yes, you are right”; “I agree with you (but)”; “I don't agree with you, etc.”

1	How has terrorism been described?	a	Modern governments
2	Why is terrorism hardly a new phenomenon?	b	In the disruption of norms, violation of generally accepted standards of decency
3	What does today's terrorist seek to weaken?	c	As a strategy of the weak
4	What is terrorism engaged in?	d	In one form or another terrorism pervades recorded history
5	Why must terrorism evoke a severe emotional response?	e	Political in aims, violent or threatens violence, perpetrated by a transnational group or non-state entity
6	Why do terrorists attack national symbols?	f	To show power and to shake the foundations of the society they are opposed to
7	What are the main characteristics of terrorism?	g	To be effective
8	What are responses to terrorism?	h	The UN Global Strategy
9	From what perspectives do the United Nations deal with terrorism?	i	Targeted laws, enhanced police powers, criminal procedures, deportations.
10	What document provides a framework to fight terrorism?	j	From a political and legal perspective

20. With a partner, act out the roles based on task 19. Then, switch your roles.

21. Make up conversations discussing the phrase.

- Terrorism has been correctly described as a strategy of the weak.
- To be effective, terrorism must evoke a severe emotional response.
- Responses to terrorism are broad in scope.

22. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on.

- Terrorism is hardly a new phenomenon.
- Terrorist violence is by its nature random.
- Responses to terrorism include reassessment of fundamental values.

23. Speak on one of the problems of terrorist crimes and law enforcement. You may use the following patterns:

In my opinion	По-моему, на мой взгляд
I think it's important to say ...	По-моему, важно сказать ...
I think that ...	Я думаю, что ...
It seems to me that ...	Мне кажется, что ...
It's obvious that ...	Очевидно, что ...
The fact is that ...	Дело в том, что ...
I am convinced that ...	Я убежден, что ...

- In one form or another terrorism pervades recorded history.
- Each act of terrorism has a great psychological impact.
- Terrorism is distinguished from other types of crime.
- Specific types of responses to terrorism are very broad in scope.
- No community is immune to terrorist crimes.

Lead-in

- What does the term “terrorism” mean?
- What is the purpose of terrorist violence?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Use of Terror

“Terrorism” comes from the French word *terrorisme*, and originally referred specifically to state terrorism as practiced by the French government during the Reign of terror. The French word *terrorisme* in turn derives from the Latin verb *terreo* meaning “I frighten”.

Terrorism is the systematic use of terror, especially as a means of coercion. Common definitions of terrorism refer only to those violent acts which are intended to create fear (terror), are perpetrated for a religious, political or, ideological goal, and deliberately target or disregard the safety of non-combatants(civilians). The use of similar tactics by criminal organizations for protecting rackets or for enforcing a code of silence is usually not labeled terrorism though these same actions may be labeled terrorism when done by a politically motivated group.

Terrorism has been practiced by a broad array of political organizations for furthering their objectives. It has been practiced by both right — wing and left-wing parties, nationalistic groups, religious groups, revolutionaries, and ruling governments. Its permanent characteristic is the disorderly use of violence against noncombatants for the purpose of gaining publicity for a group, cause, or individual. The symbolism of terrorism can use human fear to help achieve these goals.

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Terrorism comes from:
 - a) the English word “terrorism”
 - b) the French word “terrorisme”
 - c) the Latin word “terreo”
2. Terrorism is used as a means of:
 - a) protection
 - b) safety
 - c) coercion
3. Common definitions of terrorism refer to:
 - a) protecting rackets
 - b) violent acts intended to create fear
 - c) lawful wars

4. Terrorism has been practiced by:
 - a) a narrow array of political organizations
 - b) only left-wing political parties
 - c) by both left-wing and right-wing political parties
5. The main characteristic of terrorism is the use of violence against:
 - a) civilians
 - b) criminal organizations
 - c) any targets

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Terrorism

“**Terrorism**” comes from the Latin word *terreo* meaning “I frighten”. Terrorism is the systematic use of terror, especially as a means of coercion. It has been practiced by both right-wing and left-wing parties, nationalistic groups, religious groups, revolutionaries, and ruling governments. Its main characteristic is the indiscriminate use of violence against civilians for the purpose of gaining publicity for a group, cause or individual.

Terrorism has been correctly described as a strategy of the weak. It is hardly a new **phenomenon** and governments find the phenomenon difficult to cope with. Today’s terrorists seek to weaken governments. They attack national symbols to show power and to shake the foundations of the country they are opposed to.

Terrorism is:

- 1) political in aims and motives
- 2) violent or threatens **violence**
- 3) conducted by a conspiratorial organization
- 4) **perpetrated** by a transnational group or non-state entity.

To be effective, terrorism must evoke a severe emotional **response**. Responses to terrorism are broad in scope. Specific types of responses include: targeted laws, criminal procedures, deportations, **enhanced** police powers etc.

Terrorism has been of concern to the international community since 1937 when the League of Nations adopted the Convention for the Prevention and Punishment of Terrorism. Subsequently, the United Nations and other international and regional inter- governmental organizations have dealt with terrorism from a legal and political perspective. Since 1963, the international community has developed international legal instruments related to the **prevention** and suppression of international terrorism. In September 2006 UN member states agreed to coordinate their counterterrorism efforts, as well as to gather the broad array of programmers, offices and agencies of the UN engaged in counterterrorism activities under the UN Global Strategy, which provides a common strategic and operational framework to fight terrorism.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text

1. Terrorism comes from:
 - a) the English word “terrorism”
 - b) the Latin word “terreo”
 - c) the Russian “террор”
2. Terrorism is a systematic use of:
 - a) protection
 - b) safety
 - c) terror
3. Terrorism has been practiced:
 - a) since 1920
 - b) since ancient times
 - c) since the end of the 17th century
4. Terrorism has been correctly described:
 - a) as a strategy of the strong
 - b) as a new phenomenon
 - c) as a strategy of the weak
5. Responses to terrorism are:
 - a) very narrow in scope
 - b) only political
 - c) very broad in scope
6. The United Nations and other international and regional organizations have dealt with terrorism:
 - a) from legal and political perspective
 - b) from humanitarian perspective
 - c) from political perspective only

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary.

array <i>n</i>	множество, масса
cause <i>n</i>	дело, причина
coercion <i>n</i>	принуждение
conspiratorial <i>a</i>	законспирированный
deal <i>v</i> with	иметь дело
engage <i>v</i>	заниматься
enhance <i>v</i>	усиливать, повышать
entity <i>v</i>	организация
evoke <i>v</i>	вызывать, пробуждать
framework <i>n</i>	рамки
frighten <i>v</i>	пугать
gather <i>v</i>	собирать
indiscriminate <i>a</i>	беспорядочный
interrogation <i>n</i>	допрос

means <i>n pl</i>	средство
perpetrate <i>v</i>	совершать преступление
relate <i>v to</i>	относиться
severe <i>a</i>	строгий, жестокий
subsequently <i>adv</i>	впоследствии, затем
suppression <i>n</i>	подавление
target <i>v, n</i>	нацеливать; цель
threaten <i>v</i>	угрожать
violence <i>n</i>	насилие

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 a strategy of the weak	a усилия по борьбе с терроризмом
2 difficult to cope with	b реакция на терроризм
3 evoke a response	c подрывать основы
4 responses to terrorism	d трудно справиться
5 shake the foundations	e вызывать отклик
6 targeted laws	f стратегия слабых
7 enhanced police powers	g уголовно-процессуальные нормы
8 prevention and suppression	h возросшие полномочия полиции
9 counterterrorism efforts	i целенаправленные законы
10 criminal procedures	j предупреждение и подавление

7. Translate the following words and word combinations.

a) To weaken governments; a severe emotional response; attack national symbols; to shake the foundations of society; political in aims and motives; a new phenomenon; to gather the broad array of programmers; to coordinate counterterrorism efforts; to develop international legal instruments; non-state entity; prevention and suppression of international terrorism; to fight terrorism.

b) Стратегия слабых; возросшие полномочия полиции; ослаблять правительства; реакция на террористические атаки; совершенствовать международные правовые инструменты; вызывать сильную эмоциональную реакцию; целенаправленные законы; подрывать основы общества; координировать усилия по борьбе с терроризмом.

8. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

Reaction, authority, bombers, central, regular, hard, try, base, brutal, unlawful, involved, struggle, collect, process, aim

1. Terrorism is the systematic use of terror, especially as a means of coercion.
2. Its main characteristic is the indiscriminate use of violence against civilians for the purpose of gaining publicity for a group, cause or individual.
3. It is hardly a new phenomenon and governments find the phenomenon difficult to cope with.

4. Today's terrorists seek to weaken governments.
5. They attack national symbols to show power and to shake the foundations of the country they are opposed to.
6. Terrorism is violent or threatens violence.
7. Specific types of responses include: targeted laws, criminal procedures, deportations, enhanced police powers etc.
8. UN member states agreed to coordinate their counterterrorism efforts, as well as to gather the broad array of programmers, offices and agencies of the UN engaged in counterterrorism activities under the UN Global Strategy, which provides a common strategic and operational framework to fight terrorism.

9. Match the antonyms.

1	weaken	a	lose
2	new	b	narrow
3	attack	c	open
4	broad	d	unlawful
5	include	e	passivity
6	gather	f	strengthen
7	activity	g	old
8	conspiratorial	h	defend
9	legal	i	exclude
10	systematic	j	irregular

10. Fill in: weaken, strategy, other types, evoke, be engaged, deal, targeted, responses, use, gain, political, threaten, types, enhanced. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1	... of the weak	8	... of criminals
2	... publicity	9	... in aims
3	... governments	10	... with terrorism
4	... of violence	11	... in counterterrorism activities
5	... a severe emotional response	12	... laws
6	... of response	13	... to terrorism
7	... violence	14	... police powers

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following.

terrorist(s); terrorism

seek to weaken governments, violence, attack national symbols, shake the foundations of the society, a strategy of the weak, responses to, evoke a severe emotional response, threaten violence, prevention and suppression of, fight, international, political, religious, act

12. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 use of force or threats to demoralize, intimidate, esp. such use as a political weapon or policy
- 2 any extremely unusual or extraordinary thing or occurrence
- 3 to do something criminal
- 4 something said or done in answer
- 5 physical force used so as to injure or destroy
- 6 to make greater
- 7 making impossible by prior action

13. Use the correct form.

1. Governments (**to find**) the phenomenon difficult to cope with.
2. Today's terrorist (**to seek**) to weaken governments.
3. Responses to terrorism (**to be**) broad in scope.
4. Terrorism (**to be**) of concern to the international community since 1937.
5. Since 1963 the international community (**to develop**) international legal instruments to fight terrorism.
6. UN member states (**to agree**) to coordinate their counterterrorism efforts in September 2006.
7. The UN Global Strategy (**to provide**) a common strategic and operational framework to fight terrorism.

14. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences below.

use, the weak, enhanced police powers, provides, to fight, entity, political, evoke, violence, the phenomenon, responses

1. Terrorism is the systematic ... of fear.
2. The main characteristic of terrorism is the use of ... by a politically motivated group.
3. Governments find ... difficult to cope with.
4. ... to terrorism are broad in scope.
5. Terrorism has been correctly described as a strategy of
6. To be effective, terrorism must ... a severe emotional response.
7. Terrorism is ... in aims and motives.
8. Terrorist acts are perpetrated by a transnational group or non-state
9. Specific types of responses are targeted laws, criminal procedures and
10. US Global Strategy ... a common strategic and operational framework ... terrorism.

15. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Terrorism has been correctly described as
2. Governments find the phenomenon

3. Terrorists also attack national symbols to shake
4. Terrorism is violent-or, equally important, ...
5. Specific types of responses include targeted laws, criminal procedures and
6. In 1937 the League of Nations adopted the Convention for
7. In September 2006 UN member states agreed to coordinate

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

16. Look through the video text “Stay safe”. Try to remember the following words:

aware <i>a</i>	сознающий
belongings <i>n pl v</i>	вещи
bottleneck <i>n</i>	узкий проход
casualties <i>n pl</i>	потери
cater <i>v for</i>	угождать, подходить
challenge <i>n</i>	вызов
escape <i>v</i>	спастись
eventuality <i>n</i>	возможный случай
hide <i>v</i>	прятаться
hostage <i>n</i>	заложник
maraud <i>v</i>	мародерствовать
perceive <i>v</i>	воспринимать
reinforce <i>v</i>	усиливать
roll <i>v out</i>	произносить отчетливо

17. Watch the film “Stay safe”. Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best according to the text.

1. How many people have seen the film “Stay safe”?
 - a) over 100 000
 - b) about 10 000
 - c) more than 1000
2. In what way would you respond to firearms and weapons attack?
 - a) shoot in reply
 - b) cry for help
 - c) evacuate
3. What will you choose first on hearing gunshots?
 - a) advise others how to stay safe
 - b) consider your route of escape
 - c) decide to act on instinct
4. What do you consider when finding a hiding place?
 - a) information about casualties
 - b) your exits and escape routes
 - c) the location of the attackers
5. What is the telephone number of police?
 - a) 901

b) 911

c) 999

18. Watch the film “Stay safe”. Answer the following questions:

- What kind of advice is given in the film?
- How can a person respond to a firearms attack and stay safe?
- 3. What are the main recommendations for surviving?

Speaking on the problems you may use the following patterns:

Giving your Opinion	Выражая свое мнение
I am afraid that ...	Боюсь, что ...
I am certain that ...	Я уверен, что ...
I am convinced that ...	Я убежден, что ...
I don't deny, that ...	Я не отрицаю, что ...
I greatly admire	Я глубоко уважаю
I must say that ...	Надо сказать, что ...
I suppose that ...	Я полагаю, что ...
I think it's important to say ...	По-моему, важно сказать ...
I think that ...	Я думаю, что ...
In my opinion	По-моему, на мой взгляд
It seems to me that ...	Мне кажется, что ...
It's obvious that ...	Очевидно, что ...
The fact is that ...	Дело в том, что ...
That's just the point	В том-то и дело

19. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

Work in pairs. Ask your partner a question from the right-hand column. Complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: “Yes, you are right”; “I agree with you (but)”; “I don't agree with you, etc.”

1	What is terrorism?	a	Modern governments
2	How has terrorism been described?	b	Gaining publicity for a group, cause, or individual
3	What is the main purpose of terrorists?	c	As a strategy of the weak
4	What does today's terrorist seek to weaken?	d	The systematic use of terror
5	Why must terrorism evoke a severe emotional response?	e	Political in aims, violent or threatens violence, perpetrated by a transnational group or non-state entity
6	Why do terrorists attack national symbols?	f	To show power and to shake the foundations of the society they are opposed to
7	What are the main characteristics of	g	To be effective

terrorism?

8	What are responses to terrorism?	h	The UN Global Strategy
9	From what perspectives do the United Nations deal with terrorism?	i	Targeted laws, enhanced police powers, criminal procedures, deportations
10	What document provides a framework to fight terrorism?	j	From a political and legal perspective

20. With a partner, act out the roles based on task 19. Then, switch your roles.

21. Make up conversations discussing the phrase.

- Terrorism has been correctly described as a strategy of the weak.
- To be effective, terrorism must evoke a severe emotional response.
- Responses to terrorism are broad in scope.

22. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on.

- Terrorism is hardly a new phenomenon.
- Terrorist violence is by its nature random.
- Responses to terrorism include reassessment of fundamental values.

23. Speak on the problem of terrorism and law enforcement. You may use the following plan.

- In one form or another terrorism pervades recorded history.
- Each act of terrorism has a great psychological impact.
- Terrorism is distinguished from other types of crime.
- Specific types of responses to terrorism are very broad in scope.
- No community is immune to terrorist crimes.

ANTI-TERRORISM

Part A

Lead-in

- What places are most vulnerable to acts of terrorism in any country?
- What anti-terrorism procedures are in place at the airport in your city?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Welcome to International Airports

In an effort to prevent acts of terrorism, International Airports adhere to strict security procedures. For your safety, please be aware of the following guidelines at all times. Any violation of these rules will be handled by law enforcement officials.

- Never leave your baggage unattended. Unattended bags will be seized by airport police.
- Only ticketed passengers may pass the security checkpoint. To aid the screening process, have your identification and ticket ready. Remove all objects from your pockets before entering the metal detector.
- No hazardous materials are allowed on flights. Lighters, liquids or sharp items are not allowed in carry-on bags. Such objects must be declared and placed in checked luggage.
- Passengers will be selected at random to be screened by advanced imaging technology. We assure all passengers that International Airports do not engage in profiling. Passengers who do not wish to be screened with this technology may opt for a pat down.
- Airport Security is no laughing matter. Law enforcement treats all potential threats seriously. No mention of a bomb or attack will be taken lightly and passengers should not joke about them. Failure to comply with this policy WILL result in arrest, prosecution and jail time.

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. In an effort to prevent acts of terrorism, International Airports adhere to:
 - a) certain security procedures
 - b) strict security procedures
 - c) mild security procedures
2. For their safety passengers are recommended to be aware of certain guidelines:
 - a) at the moment
 - b) sometimes
 - c) at all times

3. To pass the security checkpoint , passengers must have:
 - a) only their tickets ready
 - b) their identification ready
 - c) their identification and tickets ready
4. Passengers who do not wish to be screened with advanced imaging technology:
 - a) cannot board flights
 - b) can go to jail
 - c) may opt for a pat down
5. Law enforcement treats seriously:
 - a) some potential threats
 - b) certain potential threats
 - c) all potential threats

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Terrorist Threats

The **bomber** has the advantage by picking the time, place and target. The bomber is seldom, if ever detected. The bomber can cause mass disruption of normal activities, can kill, can injure and create extensive property **damage**, while not being present during the actual explosion or **threat**.

Planning, preparation, organization, liaison, coordination and control are all vital factors in the **response** to bomb threats. Only with a properly organized plan will those affected by the bomb threat know how to proceed. Liaison should be maintained between all public safety agencies and facilities likely to be subject to a bomb threat or bombing, to ensure they have a workable response plan.

Most bomb threats are received over the phone. The personnel answering incoming calls should have a bomb threat checklist, to enable them to ask the needed information and also to record the information on. Prior planning should allow for the call to be recorded, this may help identify the bomber and be used later in the **prosecution**. This will also reduce errors in the information given by the bomber.

Depending upon the information given in the threat, such as location, time and type of device, the searcher must take the following into consideration:

The areas to be **searched** first are those given in the threat. The avenues of evacuation must be checked also prior to any other searching being started. Once those areas are clear, the next areas to be searched are those easily accessible to the public, where the bomber could enter and exit without much notice (restrooms, halls, doorways, etc.).

The areas which are more restrictive should be searched last unless the threat indicated otherwise.

Finding a suspicious item

When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is or if it should be there, one must consider it suspicious, and order an evacuation. The nearest bomb unit should be notified of the incident and await their instructions. While waiting for them to respond, the officer must ensure the support agencies, fire and medical aid

are **available**, that the evacuation is completed and the area of 300 feet around the structure is secured, including all entrances and exits. The officer must have available the person receiving the threat, and the individual finding the suspicious item, when the bomb unit arrives, to answer questions. The area around the suspicious item should be vented by opening windows and doors, if doing so will not disturb the item. Small objects surrounding the item can be moved to reduce fragmentation. These steps should only be done if the officer is not in contact or close proximity of the item. The best rule is : locate, vent, evacuate and secure, and await the bomb unit. **DO NOT TOUCH !** Items in the room can be protected by placing bomb blankets, mattresses, or sandbags around them, however, **DO NOT**, cover the item or conceal it from the view. The utilities should be left intact until the bomb unit arrives. The exception would be if the **target** is a utility item, for example, gas meter, electrical breaker box, etc.

Throughout the entire response it must be stressed, **LOOK, DON'T TOUCH!** The decision to move, open, examine, remove the suspicious item is the decision of the bomb technician of the bomb unit.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. People affected by the bomb threat know how to proceed:
 - a) with a bomb threat checklist
 - b) with needed information
 - c) with a properly organized response plan
2. The areas to be searched first are:
 - a) those easily accessible to the public
 - b) those given in the threat
 - c) the areas which are more restrictive
3. When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is one must consider it suspicious and:
 - a) order an evacuation
 - b) reduce error in the information
 - c) should have a bomb threat checklist
4. The area about suspicious item should be:
 - a) vented by opening windows and doors
 - b) concealed from the view
 - c) accessible to the public
5. On finding a suspicious item, the best rule is:
 - a) don't evacuate the people
 - b) don't touch the suspicious item
 - c) cover the item or conceal it from the view

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary.

accessible <i>a</i>	доступный
available <i>a</i>	наличный
await <i>v</i>	ожидать
conceal <i>v</i>	скрывать, утаивать
consider <i>v</i> consideration <i>n</i> take into ~	считать, полагать рассмотрение, соображение принимать во внимание
damage <i>n</i>	вред, повреждение, ущерб
device <i>n</i>	устройство
disruption <i>n</i> mass ~ cause mass ~	подрыв, разрушение массовые разрушения вызывать массовые разрушения
disturb <i>v</i>	беспокоить
entrance <i>n</i>	вход
error <i>n</i>	ошибка
exit <i>n</i>	выход
explosion <i>n</i>	взрыв
identify <i>v</i>	устанавливать личность
injure <i>v</i> injury <i>n</i>	наносить телесное повреждение телесное повреждение
intact <i>a</i>	нетронутый, целый
item <i>n</i>	предмет
liaison <i>n</i>	связь
maintain <i>v</i>	поддерживать
notify <i>v</i>	уведомлять, объявлять
prosecution <i>n</i>	преследование в уголовном порядке
reduce <i>v</i>	уменьшать, сокращать
remove <i>v</i>	убирать, перемещать
respond <i>v</i> response <i>n</i>	реагировать реакция, отклик
search <i>v</i>	обыскивать, досматривать
secure <i>v</i>	обеспечивать безопасность
suspicious <i>a</i>	подозрительный
threat <i>n</i>	угроза
utilities <i>n pl</i>	коммунальные сооружения, предприятия

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	injury	a	установить личность террориста
2	cause mass disruption	b	подозрительный предмет
3	response to bomb threats	c	доступный для людей
4	identify the bomber	d	обыскивать место происшествия
5	reduce errors	e	телесное повреждение
6	a suspicious item	f	скрывать предмет
7	search the area	g	обеспечивать безопасность района
8	accessible to the public	h	сообщить об инциденте
9	reduce fragmentation	i	сократить количество ошибок
10	pick facilities	j	реакция на угрозы взрыва
11	type of device	k	уменьшить количество осколков
12	take into consideration	l	выбирать сооружения
13	conceal the item	m	тип устройства
14	secure the area	n	принимать во внимание
15	notify of the incident	o	вызывать массовые разрушения

7. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Pick the time and the target; create extensive property damage; actual explosion; cause mass disruption; vital factors; response to bomb threats; properly organized plan; public safety agencies; subject to a bomb threat; be used in the prosecution; identify the bomber; information given by the bomber; areas to be searched first; check the avenues of evacuation; areas easily accessible to the public; person receiving the threat; be in close proximity of the suspicious item; leave the utilities intact.

b) Установить личность террориста; подозрительный предмет; информация, предоставленная террористом; реакция на угрозы взрыва; находиться рядом с опасным предметом; подверженный угрозе взрыва; вызвать массовые разрушения; использоваться при проведении расследования; выбрать время, место и цель; наносить большой ущерб имуществу; обыскивать место происшествия; места, подлежащие обыску в первую очередь; план, подготовленный надлежащим образом.

8. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

goal, terrorist, permit, inform, get, thing, place, roadway, control, attention, hide, point to, examine

1. The bomber has the advantage by picking the time, place and target.
2. Prior planning should allow for the call to be recorded, this may help identify the bomber and be used later in the prosecution.
3. The avenues of evacuation must be checked also prior to any other searching being started.

4. Once those areas are clear, the next areas to be searched are those easily accessible to the public, where the bomber could enter and exit without much notice (restrooms, halls, doorways, etc.).
5. When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is or if it should be there, one must consider it suspicious, and order an evacuation.
6. The officer must insure the support agencies, fire and medical aid are available, that the evacuation is completed and the area of 300 feet around the structure is secured, including all entrances and exits.
7. DO NOT cover the suspicious item or conceal it from the view.
8. The nearest bomb unit should be notified of the incident and await their instructions.
9. The areas which are more restrictive, should be searched last unless the threat indicated otherwise.
10. The officer must have available the person receiving the threat, and the individual finding the suspicious item, when the bomb unit arrives, to answer questions.

9. Match the antonyms.

1	seldom	a	rule
2	activity	b	leave
3	vital	c	lose
4	prior	d	prohibit
5	allow	e	insignificant
6	reduce	f	expose
7	entrance	g	passivity
8	find	h	exit
9	arrive	i	often
10	conceal	j	later
11	exception	k	increase

10. Fill in: search, await, do, receive, physical, reduce, leave, find, locate, check, identify, cause, create, be used, have, notify. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1	... mass disruption	9	... utilities intact
2	... property damage	10	... of the incident
3	... a bomb threat check list	11	... evidence
4	... the bomber	12	... a device
5	... in the prosecution	13	... the threat
6	... avenues of evacuation	14	... steps
7	... a suspicious item	15	... bomb unit
8	... fragmentation	16	... the area

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the words

bomb threat(s), area(s), a suspicious item

receive over the phone, a very small percentage of, written, handle properly, be physical evidence, be affected by, be searched first, vent, secure, clear, easily accessible to the public, restrictive, locate, find, be not in contact, do not touch, do not cover, do not conceal from the view, the decision to move, open or remove

12. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 smth said or done in answer; reply or reaction
- 2 a person who uses bombs for illegal purposes
- 3 expressing suspicion
- 4 an indication of imminent danger, harm, evil, etc.
- 5 to examine closely and carefully
- 6 an object of an attack
- 7 the conducting of criminal proceeding in court against a person
- 8 that can be got, had or reached
- 9 injury or harm to a person or thing

13. Choose the correct form.

1. The bomber has the advantage by **pick** / **picking** the time, place and the target.
2. The bomber is seldom, if ever **detected** / **detecting**.
3. The personnel **answering** / **answered** incoming calls should **have** / **to have** a bomb threat checklist.
4. This will also **reduce** / **reducing** errors in the information **gave** / **given** by the bomber.
5. Small objects **surrounding** / **surrounded** the item can be **moving** / **moved** to reduce fragmentation.
6. These steps should only be **done** / **doing** if the officer is not in contact or close proximity of the item.
7. The officer must have available the person **received** / **receiving** the threat, and the individual **found** / **finding** the suspicious item, when the bomb unit **arriving** / **arrives**, to answer questions.

14. Use the words and word combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

threats, calls, identify, the bomb technician, conceal, touch, item, suspicious, accessible, evacuation, the areas, errors, the prosecution, mass disruption, the bomber, disturb

1. ... has the advantage by picking the time, place and target.
2. The bomber can cause ... of normal activities.
3. The personnel answering incoming ... should have a bomb threat checklist.

4. Recording the call may help ... the bomber and be used later in
5. This will also help to reduce ... in the information given by the bomber.
6. Most bomb ... are received over the phone.
7. ... to be searched first are those given in the threat.
8. The avenues of ... must be checked prior to any other searching being started.
9. The next areas to be searched are those easily ... to the public.
10. When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is, one must consider it
11. The area around the suspicious ... should be vented, if doing so will not ... the item.
12. The best rule is: do not
13. Do not cover the item or ... from the view.
14. The decision to move, open or examine the suspicious item is the decision of

15. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The bomber has the advantage by
2. Planning, preparation, organization, liaison, coordination and control are all vital factors in the response to
3. Most bomb threats are received
4. Prior planning should allow for the call to
5. This may help
6. The areas to be searched first are those
7. The avenues of evacuation must be checked also prior to
8. The areas which are more restrictive should be
9. While waiting for the instructions of the nearest bomb unit, the officer must ensure
10. Throughout the entire response to a suspicious item it must be stressed, ...

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and Speaking

16. Listen to a conversation between an officer and a tourist. Choose the correct answers.

1. Why was the tourist removed from line?
 - a) He had a lighter in his bag
 - b) He refused to be screened
 - c) He joked about a terrorist threat
2. What will the man likely to do next?
 - a) Call a lawyer
 - b) Board his plane
 - c) Turn over his knives

17. Listen again and complete the conversation.

Officer: You were pulled out of line because of what is in your bag, and because of what you say.

Tourist: Oh, what, the joke I made? All I said was, “Yeah, I’m going to take over the plane”. Everyone knew I wasn’t serious.

Officer: Listen up. You’re (1) ... you realize. To begin with, you attempted to bring several knives onto a plane in your carry-on bag.

Tourist: Okay, that was just a mistake. I meant to pack them in my luggage and check it. But (2) ..., a mistake.

Officer: Doesn’t matter. You tried to pass weapons through security and made a terrorist threat. And you’ll (3) ... for it.

Tourist: (4) ... a second. This is ridiculous. I didn’t make a threat. (5)

Officer: That’s what (6) ... you. There is no joking about this. Every potential threat is treated equally.

Tourist: Look, I want to (7) Now.

Speaking

18. With a partner, act out the roles based on task 16. Then, switch your roles.

Student A: You are an officer in an airport. Talk to Student B about:

- items in a carry-on bag
- why he or she was pulled from the line
- legal consequences

Student B: You are a tourist. Answer Student A’s questions.

Use language such as:

1 What advantage does the bomber have?	a Over the phone
2 What are the vital factors in the response to bomb threats?	b Recording the call
3 Between whom should liaison be maintained?	c The areas given in the threat
4 In what way are most bomb threats received?	d The avenues of evacuation
5 What may help identify the bomber?	e An evacuation should be ordered
6 What areas are to be searched first?	f Between all public safety agencies and facilities likely to be subject to a bomb threat
7 What must be checked prior to any other searching?	g To pick the time, place and target
8 What should be done on finding a suspicious item?	h Planning, preparation, liaison, organization and control

9 What is the best rule as a response to a suspicious item? 10 Who decides what to do with a suspicious item?	i The bomb technician of the bomb unit j Do not touch!

- You were pulled out of line because...
- To begin with...
- That was just a mistake.

19. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

Work in pairs. Ask your partner a question from the right-hand column. Complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: “Yes, you are right”; “I agree with you (but)”; “I don’t agree with you”, etc.

20. With a partner, act out the roles based on task 19. Then, switch your roles.

21. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Vital factors in the response to bomb threats
- The role of the recorded information about the terrorist threat
- Finding a suspicious item
- The role of the police officer at the place of locating a suspicious item
- The main rule throughout the entire response

22. Speak on:

- the problem of response to terrorist threats
- the role of the police officer at the place of locating a suspicious item

Lead-in

- What places are most vulnerable to acts of terrorism in any country?
- What anti-terrorism procedures are in place at airport in your city?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Welcome to International Airport

In an effort to prevent acts of terrorism, International Airport adheres to strict security procedures. For your safety, please be aware of the following guidelines at all times. Any violation of these rules will be handled by law enforcement officials.

- Never leave your baggage unattended. Unattended bags will be seized by airport police.
- Only ticketed passengers may pass the security checkpoint. To aid the screening process, have your identification and ticket ready. Remove all objects from your pockets before entering the metal detector.
- No hazardous materials are allowed on flights. Lighters, liquids or sharp items are not allowed in carry-on bags. Such objects must be declared and placed in checked luggage.
- Passengers will be selected at random to be screened by advanced imaging technology. We assure all passengers that International Airport does not engage in profiling. Passengers who do not wish to be screened with this technology may opt for a pat down.
- Airport Security is no laughing matter. Law Enforcement treats all potential threats seriously. No mention of a bomb or attack will be taken lightly and passengers should not joke about them. Failure to comply with this policy WILL result in arrest, prosecution and jail time.

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. In an effort to prevent acts of terrorism, International Airport adheres to:
 - a) certain security procedures
 - b) strict security procedures
 - c) mild security procedures
2. For their safety passengers are recommended to be aware of certain guidelines:
 - a) at the moment
 - b) sometimes
 - c) at all times

3. To pass the security checkpoint , passengers must have:
 - a) only their tickets ready
 - b) their identification ready
 - c) their identification and tickets ready
4. Passengers who do not wish to be screened with advanced imaging technology:
 - a) cannot board flights
 - b) can go to jail
 - c) may opt for a pat down
5. Law enforcement treats seriously:
 - a) some potential threats
 - b) certain potential threats
 - c) all potential threats

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

The threat of terrorist attacks

In recent years the world has had to fight terrorist attacks. Some groups have **resorted** to terrorist crime to publicize their political **objectives**. Some of the groups are concerned with domestic problems, others operate on the international arena. Some seek to target particular organizations or individuals, others are more indiscriminate in their targeting. When terrorist incidents occur they attract considerable publicity.

Most bomb **threats** are received over the phone. The personnel answering incoming calls should have a bomb threat checklist, to enable them to ask the needed information and also to record the information on. The call should be recorded, this may help identify the bomber and be used later in the **prosecution**. This will also reduce errors in the information given by **the bomber**.

A public place, such as a shop, railway station or airport, is more at risk of a terrorist attack and the **search** of baggage may be the only available means of protection and deterrent. What happens when a **suspicious** item is found?

When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is or if it should be there, one must consider it suspicious, and order an evacuation. The nearest bomb unit should be notified of the incident and await their instructions. While waiting for them **to respond**, the officer must ensure the support agencies, fire and medical aid are available, that the evacuation is completed and the area of 300 feet around the structure is secured, including all entrances and exits. The officer must have available the person receiving the threat, and the individual finding the suspicious item, when the bomb unit arrives, to answer questions. The area around the suspicious item should be vented by opening windows and doors, if doing so will not disturb the item. Small objects surrounding the item can be moved to reduce fragmentation. These steps should only be done if the officer is not in contact or close proximity of the item. The best rule is : locate, vent, evacuate and secure, and await the bomb unit. **DO NOT TOUCH !** Items in the room can be protected by placing bomb blankets,

mattresses, or sandbags around them, however, DO NOT, cover the item or conceal it from the view. The utilities should be left intact until the bomb unit arrives. The exception would be if the target is a utility item, for example, gas meter, electrical breaker box, etc.

Throughout the entire response it must be stressed, LOOK, DON'T TOUCH! The decision to move, open, examine, remove the suspicious item is the decision of the bomb technician of the bomb unit.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Some terrorist groups have resorted to terrorist crime:
 - a) to operate on the international arena
 - b) to publicize their political objectives
 - c) to record the information
2. Most bomb threats are received:
 - a) through mass media
 - b) by post
 - c) over the phone
3. When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is one must consider it suspicious and:
 - a) order an evacuation
 - b) reduce error in the information
 - c) should have a bomb threat checklist
4. The area about suspicious item should be:
 - a) vented by opening windows and doors
 - b) concealed from the view
 - c) accessible to the public
5. On finding a suspicious item, the best rule is:
 - a) don't evacuate people
 - b) don't touch the suspicious item
 - c) cover the item or conceal it from the view

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary.

attract v	привлекать
available a	наличный
await v	ожидать
conceal v	скрывать, утаивать
consider v	считать, полагать
consideration n	рассмотрение, соображение
take into ~	принимать во внимание
deter v	удерживать
deterrent n	удерживающее средство
domestic a	внутренний

disturb <i>v</i>	беспокоить
ensure (insure) <i>v</i>	обеспечивать
entrance <i>n</i>	вход
error <i>n</i>	ошибка
exit <i>n</i>	выход
fragmentation <i>n</i>	разлет осколков
identify <i>v</i>	устанавливать личность
indiscriminate <i>a</i>	случайный
injure <i>v</i>	наносить телесное повреждение
injury <i>n</i>	телесное повреждение
item <i>n</i>	предмет
means <i>n pl</i>	средство
notify <i>v</i>	уведомлять, объявлять
prosecution <i>n</i>	преследование в уголовном порядке
reduce <i>v</i>	уменьшать, сокращать
remove <i>v</i>	убирать, перемещать
resort <i>v</i>	прибегнуть
respond <i>v</i>	реагировать
response <i>n</i>	реакция, отклик
search <i>v</i>	обыскивать, досматривать
secure <i>v</i>	обеспечивать безопасность
suspicious <i>a</i>	подозрительный
threat <i>n</i>	угроза
utilities <i>n pl</i>	коммунальные сооружения, предприятия

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 the only available means	a установить личность террориста
2 identify the bomber	b уменьшить количество осколков
3 a suspicious item	c угроза террористической атаки
4 search of baggage	d единственное имеющееся в наличии средство
5 ensure fire and medical aid	e обеспечить наличие противопожарной и медицинской помощи
6 reduce fragmentation	f подозрительный предмет
7 means of protection	g сообщить об инциденте
8 notify of the incident	h сократить количество ошибок
9 reduce errors	i средство защиты
10 the threat of terrorist attack	j досмотр багажа
11 respond to a threat	k реагировать на угрозу

7. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Resort to terrorist attacks; domestic problems; receive over the phone; political objectives; operate on the international arena; ask the needed information; be used in the prosecution; identify the bomber; information given by the bomber; reduce errors; order an evacuation; fire and medical aid; check the avenues of evacuation; person receiving the threat; be in close proximity of the suspicious item; all entrances and exits; search baggage; target particular organizations and individuals.

b) Установить личность террориста; информация, предоставленная террористом; находиться рядом с опасным предметом; использоваться при проведении расследования; действовать на международной арене; внутренние проблемы; досмотр багажа; сократить количество ошибок; завершить эвакуацию; прибегнуть к террористической атаке.

8. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms.

Goal, terrorist, internal, aim v, happen, combat, thing, wait for, luggage, finish, hide, examine, react

1. In recent years the world has had to fight terrorist attacks.
2. Some groups have resorted to terrorist crime to publicize their political objectives.
3. Some of the groups are concerned with domestic problems, others operate on the international arena.
4. Some seek to target particular organizations or individuals, others are more indiscriminate in their targeting.
5. When terrorist incidents occur they attract considerable publicity.
6. This will also reduce errors in the information given by the bomber.
7. A public place, such as a shop, railway station or airport, is more at risk of a terrorist attack and to search baggage may be the only available means of protection and deterrent.
8. When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is or if it should be there, one must consider it suspicious, and order an evacuation.
9. The nearest bomb unit should be notified of the incident and await their instructions.
10. While waiting for them to respond, the officer must ensure the support agencies, fire and medical aid are available, that the evacuation is completed and the area of 300 feet around the structure is secured, including all entrances and exits.
11. DO NOT cover the item or conceal it from the view.

9. Match the antonyms.

1	prior	a	rule
2	domestic	b	leave
3	considerable	c	lose
4	entire	d	prohibit
5	allow	e	insignificant
6	reduce	f	expose
7	entrance	g	international
8	find	h	exit
9	arrive	i	later
10	conceal	j	partial
11	exception	k	increase

10. Fill in: search, await, receive, reduce, leave, find, order, identify, secure, respond, answer, means of, operate, have, notify, be used. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1	... of baggage	9	... utilities intact
2	... to the incident	10	... of the incident
3	... a bomb threat checklist	11	... questions
4	... the bomber	12	... protection and deterrent
5	... in the prosecution	13	... the threat
6	... an evacuation	14	... on the international arena
7	... a suspicious item	15	... the bomb unit
8	... fragmentation	16	... the area

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the words

bomb threat(s); area(s); a suspicious item.

Receive over the phone, record, recorded information about, respond to, checklist, vent, secure, clear, don't disturb, locate, find, be in close proximity of, do not touch, do not cover, do not conceal from the view, the decision to move, open or remove

12. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

1	say or do something in answer; reply or react
2	a person who uses bombs for illegal purposes
3	expressing suspicion
4	an indication of imminent danger, harm, evil, etc.
5	close and careful examination
6	the conducting of criminal proceeding in court against a person
7	turn to and adopt (a strategy, etc.) so as to resolve a difficult situation
8	a goal or aim

13. Choose the correct form.

1. The bomb threat should **be recording** / **recorded**.
2. The bomber is seldom, if ever **detected** / **detecting**.
3. This will reduce errors in the information **given** / **giving** by the bomber.
4. The personnel **answering** / **answered** incoming calls should **have** / **to have** a bomb threat checklist.
5. Small subjects **surrounding** / **surrounded** the item **can be moving** / **moved** to reduce fragmentation.
6. The areas to **be searched** / **searching** are those easily accessible to the public.
7. **Conducting** / **having conducted** criminal proceeding in court against a person is called prosecution.
8. When terrorist incidents **occur** / **occurring** they attract considerable publicity.

14. Use the words and word combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

threats, calls, identify, the bomb technician, conceal, touch, item (2), suspicious, objectives, target, errors, the prosecution, utilities

1. The personnel answering incoming ... should have a bomb threat checklist.
2. Some groups have resorted to terrorist crime to achieve their political
3. Some groups seek to ... particular organizations or individuals.
4. Recording the call may help ... the bomber and be used later in
5. This will also help to reduce ... in the information given by the bomber.
6. Most bomb ... are received over the phone.
7. When an item is located and cannot be determined what it is, one must consider it
8. The area around the suspicious ... should be vented, if doing so will not disturb the
9. The best rule is: do not
10. The ... should be left intact until the bomb unit arrives.
11. Do not cover the item or ... from the view.
12. The decision to move, open or examine the suspicious item is the decision of

15. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. In recent years the world has had to fight
2. Some of the groups operate on the international arena, others are concerned with
3. Most bomb threats are received
4. Prior planning should allow for the call to
5. This may help
6. The recorded information about a bomb threat may be used later in the
7. A public place is more at risk of a
8. The only available means of protection and deterrent at such places is

9. When an item is located and one cannot determine what it is or if it should be there, one must consider it
10. While waiting for the instructions of the nearest bomb unit, the officer must ensure
11. Throughout the entire response to a suspicious item it must be stressed, ...

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and Speaking

16. Listen to a conversation between an officer and a tourist. Choose the correct answers.

1. Why was the tourist removed from line?
 - a) He had a lighter in his bag
 - b) He refused to be screened
 - c) He joked about a terrorist threat
2. What will the man likely to do next?
 - a) Call a lawyer
 - b) Board his plane
 - c) Turn over his knives

17. Listen again and complete the conversation.

Officer: You were pulled out of line because of what is in your bag, and because of what you say.

Tourist: Oh, what, the joke I made? All I said was, “Yeah, I’m going to take over the plane.” Everyone knew I wasn’t serious.

Officer: Listen up. You’re (1) ... you realize. To begin with, you attempted to bring several knives onto a plane in your carry-on bag.

Tourist: Okay, that was just a mistake. I meant to pack them in my luggage and check it. But (2) ..., a mistake.

Officer: Doesn’t matter. You tried to pass weapons through security and made a terrorist threat. And you’ll (3) ... for it.

Tourist: (4) ... a second. This is ridiculous. I didn’t make a threat. (5)

Officer: That’s what (6) ... you. There is no joking about this. Every potential threat is treated equally.

Tourist: Look, I want to (7) Now.

Speaking

18. With a partner, act out the roles based on task 16. Then, switch your roles.

Student A: You are an officer in an airport. Talk to Student B about:

- items in a carry-on bag
- why he or she was pulled from the line
- legal consequences

Student B: You are a tourist. Answer Student A’s questions.

Use language such as:

- You were pulled out of line because...
- To begin with...
- That was just a mistake.

19. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

Work in pairs. Ask your partner a question from the right-hand column. Complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: “Yes, you are right”; “I agree with you (but)”; “I don’t agree with you, etc.”

1	What has the entire world had to fight in recent years?	a	Over the phone
2	Why have some groups resorted to terrorist crime?	b	Recording the call
3	Are they concerned with domestic or international problems?	c	To publicize their political objectives
4	In what way are most bomb threats received?	d	With both international and domestic problems
5	What may help identify the bomber?	e	An evacuation should be ordered
6	What is the only available means of protection and deterrent at public places?	f	A located item when we cannot determine what it is and if it should be there
7	What do we call a suspicious item?	g	Terrorist attacks
8	What should be done on finding a suspicious item?	h	The search of baggage
9	What is the best rule as a response to a suspicious item?	i	The bomb technician of the bomb unit
10	Who decides what to do with a suspicious item?	j	Do not touch!

20. With a partner, act out the roles based on task 19. Then, switch your roles.

21. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- The situation with terrorist crime today
- The role of the recorded information about a terrorist threat
- Places which are more at risk of a terrorist attack
- Finding a suspicious item
- The role of the police officer at the place of locating a suspicious item
- The main rule throughout the entire response

22. Speak on:

- the situation with terrorist crime today and places risky of a terrorist attack
- the role of the police officer at the place of locating a suspicious item

HOSTAGE TAKING AND LAW ENFORCEMENT

Part A

Lead-in

- How long has hostage taking existed?
- What is the price of this unique kind of bargain?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

From the History of Hostage Taking

Hostage taking in some form or another has been with us since time immemorial. For a long time, it was a necessary incident of conventional warfare and an essential element in the guarantee of any peace process. It represents a unique kind of bargain struck over the value of human life.

Hostage taking (or, more properly, hostage holding) has not really changed very much over the years. Hostages are seized and held by those who perceive this operation as a way of getting something they want and have been unable to get, or simply could not get, by any other process.

Hostage taking is an ancient form of criminal activity. In fact, hostage “holding” was an accepted strategy of diplomacy when used by legitimate governmental authority. The Roman Empire, for example, suppressed revolts in Italy, Spain and Gaul by requiring the conquered tribes to give hostages as a guarantee of the future good behavior. Similar tactics were used in 16th century Ireland and again during the French Revolution.

Whatever developments may occur in future hostage taking events, police administrators, negotiators, and government officials must be prepared to meet the threat. Perhaps the most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is the role of negotiator. The future of hostage taking will pose numerous challenges to negotiators, police organizations, governments and nations throughout the world. The police, in particular, will be put to the test in designing effective strategies to resolve hostage incidents and secure the safe release of hostages. There are no magic formulas for ending hostage taking. How to confront hostage takers will remain a central problem for the police in the future.

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Hostage taking in some form or another has been with us:
 - a) since the 16th century
 - b) since time immemorial
 - c) over the last 30 years

2. Hostage taking has:
 - a) changed greatly over the years
 - b) not really changed very much
 - c) never been used by legitimate governmental authority
3. Hostage taking is an ancient form of:
 - a) legitimate civil activity
 - b) criminal activity
 - c) resolving any political situation
4. The most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is the role of:
 - a) police organizations
 - b) negotiators
 - c) governments
5. The police will have to design effective strategies to secure the safe release of:
 - a) hostages
 - b) hostage takers
 - c) political extremists

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Hostage Taking and Law Enforcement

Each individual reacts to the **hostage** taking situation differently. The first individual perspective to be reviewed is that of the police. The objective of the police is to secure the safe **release** of the hostage(s) and to apprehend the hostage taker(s). The police perspective is complicated by the dual nature of freeing the hostages and **capturing** the offender. On the one hand, if the apprehension of the hostage taker is considered more important than the safe release of the hostage(s), demands for hostage takers' freedom may be ignored in favor of ending the situation by using force. On the other hand, if the safe release of the hostage is considered the most important aspect of the hostage situation and the demands of the hostage taker(s) cannot be met, then police **marksmen** may attempt to kill the hostage taker. An example of this type of hostage situation most often occurs in correctional facilities. Correctional officials are not going to release prison inmates no matter what the demands of hostage takers are, but at the same time they must attempt to **negotiate** and secure the safe release of hostages.

The hostage taking phenomenon is currently an important part of police training programs. Police hostage taking training programs have been divided into two basic strategies: (1) negotiations and (2) special weapons and tactics, or SWAT. Police administrators recognize the complexity and the difference of each hostage taking incident and view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward resolving the hostage taking crisis.

In each case the golden rule is: *know the hostage taker*. Such knowledge can only come from a careful study of the available evidence, its analysis and sorting for

future reference. The same elements are clearly capable of interpretation from a variety of perspectives.

The control and management of hostage taking incidents may be conveniently treated according to the following scheme of questions: (1) Who are the hostage takers? (2) What do they want? (3) What are they prepared to accept? and (4) What are we prepared to give? The **identity** of the hostage taker(s) is the pivot upon which the entire arrangement depends. The very survival of the **victim(s)** and the success of the **measures** taken to secure their rescue depend largely upon the correct identification of the hostage taker and his acts by type and characteristics.

Police administrators now recognize that maintaining a continuing dialogue with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident. The theory of negotiation concludes that the longer the hostage situation lasts, the greater the probability that the hostages will be released unharmed.

The hostage taker must believe that the police are prepared to use force even if no hostage is injured or killed. Hostage takers should not be led to believe that the use of force by police is contingent upon the hostage takers' treatment of the hostage.

For the police, hostage taking has become commonplace. In fact, some criminal justice institutions can be described as "hostage prone" – particularly courthouses, **jails**, and prisons. Police officials responsible for the administration of such facilities must be prepared for the possibility of hostage taking.

No community or country is immune to the growing phenomenon of hostage taking. How to confront hostage takers will remain a central problem for the police in the future.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The objective of the police in the hostage taking situation is
 - a) to end the situation by using force
 - b) to secure the safe release of the hostages
 - c) to kill the hostage takers
2. The hostage taking phenomenon is currently:
 - a) an important part of police training programs
 - b) a minor part of police training programs
 - c) insufficient part of police training programs
3. The very survival of the victim in any hostage taking incident depends largely upon:
 - a) the hostage takers' treatment of the hostage
 - b) the correct identification of the hostage taker
 - c) the success of negotiations
4. The most effective strategy for ending the hostage taking situation is:
 - a) the use of force by police
 - b) the control and management of hostage taking incidents
 - c) maintaining a continuing dialogue with hostage takers

5. Some criminal justice institutions particularly courthouses, jails and prisons can be described as:
- a) victim prone
 - b) crime prone
 - c) hostage prone

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary

apprehend <i>v</i> apprehension <i>n</i>	задерживать, арестовывать задержание, арест
arrangement <i>n</i>	подготовка
available <i>a</i>	доступный
bargain <i>n</i>	сделка
capture <i>v</i>	захватывать
challenge <i>n</i> pose a challenge	вызов бросать вызов
contingent <i>a</i>	зависящий от обстоятельств, случайный
conveniently <i>adv</i>	удобно
conventional <i>a</i>	обычный
demand <i>n</i> meet the demands	требование отвечать требованиям
hostage <i>n</i>	заложник
injure <i>v</i>	причинять вред, наносить телесные повреждения
marksman <i>n</i>	стрелок, снайпер
measure <i>n</i> security ~s	мера меры безопасности
negotiate <i>v</i>	вести переговоры
negotiator <i>n</i>	переговорщик
perceive <i>v</i>	воспринимать
pivot <i>n</i>	центр, основа
prone <i>a</i>	склонный
release <i>n, v</i>	освобождение; освобождать
remain <i>v</i>	оставаться
rescue <i>n</i>	спасение, освобождение
resolve <i>v</i>	разрешать
secure <i>v</i>	обеспечивать, гарантировать
seize <i>v</i>	захватывать
suppress <i>v</i>	подавлять
survival <i>n</i>	выживание

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	since time immemorial	a	захватить преступника
2	seize and hold hostages	b	применять силу
3	an ancient form of criminal activity	c	попытаться убить террориста, захватившего заложников
4	hostage taking response strategy	d	тщательное изучение имеющихся улик
5	resolve hostage incidents	e	рассматривать в соответствии со следующим планом
6	secure safe release of hostages	f	программы подготовки полицейских
7	dual nature	g	принять меры
8	capture the offender	h	обеспечить спасение заложников
9	attempt to kill the hostage taker	i	древняя форма уголовной деятельности
10	police training programs	j	обеспечить безопасное освобождение заложников
11	a careful study of the available evidence	k	стратегия реагирования на захват заложника
12	treat according to the following scheme	l	разрешать ситуации с захватом заложников
13	correct identification	m	институты уголовного правосудия
14	take measures	n	двойственная природа
15	secure the rescue of hostages	o	с незапамятных времен
16	use force	p	захватить и удерживать заложников
17	criminal justice institutions	q	правильное установление личности

7. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Apprehend the hostage taker; the safe release of the hostages; end the situation by using force; occur in correctional facilities; attempt to negotiate; since time immemorial; police training programs; special weapons and tactics; seize and hold hostages; correct identification; a continuing dialogue with hostage takers; resolve the hostage taking crisis; be prepared to use force; secure the rescue of hostages; be immune to the growing phenomenon of hostage taking.

b) Обеспечить спасение заложников; принять меры; личность террориста, захватившего заложников; рассматривать в качестве альтернативы; работники исправительных учреждений; выживание жертвы; вести переговоры; применение силы полицией; тщательное изучение улик; стратегия реагирования на захват заложников; институты уголовного правосудия; задержать террориста, захватившего заложников.

8. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

Settling, happen, deal with, aim, terrorist(s), authority, plan, centre, preparation, think, respond, stay

1. The objective of the police is to secure the safe release of the hostage(s) and to apprehend the hostage taker(s).
2. An example of this type of hostage situation most often occurs in correctional facilities.
3. Police administrators recognize the complexity and the difference of each hostage taking incident and view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward resolving the hostage taking crisis.
4. The control and management of hostage taking incidents may be conveniently treated according to the following scheme of questions.
5. The identity of the hostage taker(s) is the pivot upon which the entire arrangement depends.
6. The hostage taker must believe that the police are prepared to use force even if no hostage is injured or killed.
7. Confronting hostage takers will remain a central problem for the police in the future.
8. Each individual reacts to the hostage taking situation differently.

9. Match the antonyms.

1	give	a	uniformity
2	victim	b	death
3	last	c	restriction
4	force	d	ignorance
5	complexity	e	stop
6	survival	f	criminal
7	success	g	different
8	freedom	h	simplicity
9	knowledge	i	weakness
10	variety	j	accept
11	same	k	failure

10. Fill in: react, resolve, identity, objective, dual, release, demands, secure, apprehend, end, use, survival, maintain, hostage, growing, free. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ... to the hostage incident	9 ... of the hostage taker
2 ... of the police	10 ... of the victim
3 ... nature	11 ... a continuing dialogue with hostage takers
4 ... the hostage taker	12 ... hostages unharmed
5 ... the hostage situation	13 ... of force by police
6 ... of hostage takers	14 ... phenomenon of hostage taking
7 ... the safe release of hostages	15 ... a hostage
8 ... the hostage taking	16 ... prone

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following:

hostage taking; safe release.

react to, secure, occur in correctional facilities, resolve, control and management of, growing phenomenon of, be prepared for the possibility of, complexity and difference of, consider very important, training programs

12. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 dimensions determined by a standard
- 2 the condition or fact of being the same or exactly alike
- 3 a person taken prisoner by an enemy or terrorist
- 4 try to reach an agreement or compromise by discussion
- 5 a person skilled in shooting
- 6 take into one's possession or control by force
- 7 setting free or liberation
- 8 someone killed, injured or otherwise harmed by
- 9 a building for the confinement of people awaiting trial or convicted of minor offenses

13. Choose the correct form.

1. A continuing dialogue with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for **end / ending** the hostage incident.
2. The police objective is complicated by the dual nature of **freedom / freeing** the hostages and **capturing / capture** the offender.
3. Police administrators view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward **resolution / resolving** the hostage taking crisis.
4. **Design / designing** effective strategies by police is very important for **ending / end** hostage taking.
5. The best strategy for **resolve / resolving** hostage episodes is through negotiations.
6. In each case the golden rule is: **know / knowledge** the hostage taker.

7. **Maintaining / maintenance** a continuing dialogue with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident.
8. No community or country is immune to the **growing / growth** phenomenon of hostage taking.
9. The first individual perspective to be **reviewing / reviewed** is that of the police.

14. Use the words and word combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

safe release, capture, objective, marksmen, hostage taking situations, demands, police training programs, negotiations, hostage taker, available, hostages, identity, survival, prone, negotiator

1. Each individual reacts to ... differently.
2. The ... of the police is to secure ... of hostages.
3. The police objective is to free hostages and ... the offender.
4. If the ... of hostage takers cannot be met, police ... may attempt to kill the hostage taker.
5. The hostage taking phenomenon is currently an important part of
6. Police hostage taking training programs are divided into two basic strategies: ... and special weapons and tactics.
7. In each case the golden rule is: know the
8. The knowledge of the hostage taker can come from a careful study of the ... evidence.
9. The ... of the hostage taker is very important for management of hostage taking incidents.
10. The very ... of the victim depends on the correct identification of the hostage taker.
11. Perhaps, the most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is the role of the
12. The longer the hostage taking situation lasts, the greater the probability that the ... will be unharmed.
13. Some criminal justice institutions can be described as hostage

15. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Hostage taking has been with us
2. Hostage taking is an ancient form of
3. Each individual reacts to ... differently.
4. The police objective is
5. On the one hand, the police are to secure
6. On the other hand, they are to apprehend
7. The hostage taking phenomenon is currently an important part of police
8. Police hostage taking training programs have been divided into two basic strategies:
9. Police administrators view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward

10. In each case the golden rule is:
11. The success of the measures taken to secure the rescue of the hostages largely depends on the correct
12. Maintaining a continuing dialogue with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for ending
13. No community is immune to the growing phenomenon of
14. The police in future will have to design effective strategies to resolve ... and secure

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

16. Watch the film “American Hostages Escape from Algeria Terrorists”
Before watching, try to remember the following words:

affiliation <i>n</i>	присоединение
captivity <i>n</i>	плен
casualties <i>n pl</i>	потери
desert <i>n</i>	пустыня
escape <i>v</i>	совершать побег
explosives <i>n pl</i>	взрывчатка
fate <i>n</i>	судьба
gate <i>n</i>	ворота (врата)
hell <i>n</i>	ад
militant <i>n</i>	боевик
official <i>n</i>	чиновник
remote <i>a</i>	отдаленный
rescue <i>v</i>	спасать
retaliation <i>n</i>	возмездие
revenge <i>n</i>	мечь
shift <i>v</i>	переносить
smuggler <i>n</i>	контрабандист
surveillance <i>n</i>	разведка
untouchable <i>a</i>	неприкасаемый
warning <i>n</i>	предупреждение

17. Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best according to the video.

1. In what country did the hostage taking situation take place?
 - a) In Mali
 - b) In Algeria
 - c) In Afghanistan
2. At what facilities did it occur?
 - a) At a natural gas complex in Sahara desert
 - b) At a great industrial plant
 - c) At an office of an American oil company

3. Who attacked buses with the workers?
 - a) Military forces
 - b) Heavy armed militants
 - c) Political opponents
4. What were the casualties?
 - a) One British citizen killed
 - b) All alive
 - c) Some workers killed
5. Who stood behind the terrorists?
 - a) Local tribes
 - b) Local government
 - c) Alkaida

18. Give some details of the rescue operation using the following words and word combinations: Algerian armed forces, helicopters, kill not only some militants but hostages as well, fate, unknown, remain alive, make one's way out.

19. Say a few words about the political reason of this terrorist attack using the following word combinations:

French intervention to Mali, Algerian support of the intervention, huge consequences, shift terrorist activity to Africa, the gate of hell, Alkaida commander in North Africa.

20. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

Work in pairs. Ask your partner a question from the right-hand column. Complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: "Yes, you are right"; "I agree with you (but)"; "I don't agree with you, etc."

1 In what way do people react to hostage taking situations?	a By the dual nature of freeing the hostages and capturing the offender
2 What is the objective of the police in any hostage taking incident?	b To know the hostage taker
3 What is the police objective complicated by?	c Differently
4 What type of hostage incident most often occurs in correctional facilities?	d To secure the safe release of the hostages and to capture the hostage takers
5 What strategies have police hostage taking training programs been divided into?	e The longer the hostage incident, the greater the probability of the hostages' safe release
6 What are the alternatives toward resolving the hostage taking crisis?	f The administrators are not going to release prison inmates but must attempt to secure their safe

	release
7 What rule is very important in each case of hostage incident?	g Two basic strategies: negotiations and SWAT
8 What depends upon the correct identification of the hostage taker?	h Maintaining a continuing dialogue
9 What is the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident?	i Negotiations and the use of force
1 What does the theory of negotiations conclude?	j The very survival of the victims and the success of their rescue
0	

21. With your partner, act out the roles based on task 20. Then, switch your roles.

22. Make up conversations discussing the phrase.

- In each case of hostage taking the golden rule is: know the hostage taker
- The police objective is complicated by the dual nature of freeing the hostages and capturing the offender

23. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on.

- Dual nature of the police objective in hostage taking incidents
- Hostage taking phenomenon as an important part of police training programs
- The golden rule of every hostage incident
- The scheme of treating the control and management of hostage taking incidents
- The role of negotiations as the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident

24. Speak on any problem of hostage taking and law enforcement you are interested in.

- The objective of the police in hostage taking incidents
- Police hostage taking training programs
- Negotiations as a most effective strategy for resolving hostage taking crisis
- No community is immune to hostage taking phenomenon

Lead-in

- How long has hostage taking existed?
- What is the price of this unique kind of bargain?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

From the History of Hostage Taking

Hostage taking in some form or another has been with us since time immemorial. It represents a unique kind of bargain struck over the value of human life.

Hostage taking (or, more properly, hostage holding) has not really changed very much over the years. Hostages are seized and held by those who perceive this operation as a way of getting something they want and have been unable to get, or simply could not get, by any other process.

Hostage taking is an ancient form of criminal activity. In fact, hostage “holding” was an accepted strategy of diplomacy when used by legitimate governmental authority. The Roman Empire, for example, suppressed revolts in Italy, Spain and Gaul by requiring the conquered tribes to give hostages as a guarantee of the future good behavior. Similar tactics were used in 16th century Ireland and again during the French Revolution.

Whatever developments may occur in future hostage taking events, police administrators, negotiators, and government officials must be prepared to meet the threat. Perhaps the most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is the role of negotiator. The future of hostage taking will pose numerous challenges to negotiators, police organizations, governments and nations throughout the world. The police, in particular, will be put to the test in designing effective strategies to resolve hostage incidents and secure the safe release of hostages. There are no magic formulas for ending hostage taking. How to confront hostage takers will remain a central problem for the police in the future.

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Hostage taking in some form or another has been with us:
 - a) since the 16th century
 - b) since time immemorial
 - c) over the last 30 years
2. Hostage taking has:
 - a) changed greatly over the years
 - b) not really changed very much

- c) never been used by legitimate governmental authority
- 3. Hostage taking is an ancient form of:
 - a) legitimate civil activity
 - b) criminal activity
 - c) resolving any political situation
- 4. The most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is the role of:
 - a) police organizations
 - b) negotiators
 - c) governments
- 5. The police will have to design effective strategies to secure the safe release of:
 - a) hostages
 - b) hostage takers
 - c) political extremists

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Hostage Taking and Law Enforcement

Hostage taking in some form or another has been with us since time **immemorial**. Hostage taking or **hostage** holding has not really changed very much over the years. The basic purposes of this ancient form of criminal activity always remain very much the same. Hostages are seized and held as a way of getting something hostage takers have been unable to get by any other process. People react to the hostage taking situation differently. In the first instance, their response is addressed to one end, namely the rescue of the hostage.

The objective of the police is dual: to secure the safe **release** of the hostage(s) and to apprehend the hostage taker(s). On the one hand, if the apprehension of the hostage taker is considered more important than the safe release of the hostage(s), demands for hostage takers' freedom may be ignored in favor of ending the situation by using force. On the other hand, if the safe release of the hostage is considered the most important aspect of the hostage situation and the demands of the hostage taker(s) cannot be met, then police **marksmen** may attempt to kill the hostage taker.

The hostage taking phenomenon is currently an important part of police training programs. Police hostage taking training programs have been divided into two basic strategies: (1) **negotiations** and (2) special weapons and tactics, or SWAT. Police administrators recognize the complexity and the difference of each hostage taking incident and view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward resolving the hostage taking crisis.

In each case the golden rule is: *know the hostage taker*. Such knowledge can only come from a careful study of the available evidence, its analysis and sorting for future reference. The same elements are clearly capable of interpretation from a variety of perspectives.

The control and management of hostage taking incidents may be conveniently treated according to the following scheme of questions: (1) Who are the hostage takers?; (2) What do they want?; (3) What are they prepared to accept?; and (4) What are we prepared to give? The **identity** of the hostage taker(s) is the pivot upon which the entire arrangement depends. The very survival of the **victim(s)** and the success of the **measures** taken to secure their rescue depend largely upon the correct identification of the hostage taker.

Police administrators now recognize that **maintaining** a continuing dialogue with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident. The theory of negotiation concludes that the longer the hostage situation lasts, the greater the probability that the hostages will be released unharmed.

No community or country is immune to the growing phenomenon of hostage taking.

Perhaps the most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is the role of negotiator. The police will have to design effective strategies to resolve hostage incidents and secure the safe release of hostages. There are no magic formulas. How to confront hostage takers will remain a central problem for the police in the future.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The objective of the police in the hostage taking situation is:
 - a) to end the situation by using force
 - b) to secure the safe release of the hostages
 - c) to kill the hostage takers
2. The hostage taking phenomenon is currently:
 - a) an important part of police training programs
 - b) a minor part of police training programs
 - c) insufficient part of police training programs
3. The very survival of the victim in any hostage taking incident depends largely upon:
 - a) the hostage takers' treatment of the hostage
 - b) the correct identification of the hostage taker
 - c) the success of negotiations
4. The most effective strategy for ending the hostage taking situation is:
 - a) the use of force by police
 - b) the control and management of hostage taking incidents
 - c) maintaining a continuous dialogue with hostage takers
5. The most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is:
 - a) the role of a hostage taker
 - b) the role of a negotiator
 - c) the role of a police officer

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary

apprehend <i>v</i> apprehension <i>n</i>	задерживать, арестовывать задержание, арест
arrangement <i>n</i>	подготовка
available <i>a</i>	доступный
capture <i>v</i>	захватывать
contingent <i>a</i>	зависящий от обстоятельств, случайный
conveniently <i>adv</i>	удобно
demand <i>n</i> meet the demands	требование отвечать требованиям
hostage <i>n</i>	заложник
injure <i>v</i>	причинять вред, наносить телесные повреждения
marksman <i>n</i>	стрелок
measure <i>n</i> security ~s	мера меры безопасности
negotiate <i>v</i>	вести переговоры
negotiator <i>n</i>	переговорщик
perceive <i>v</i>	воспринимать
pivot <i>n</i>	центр, основа
prone <i>a</i>	склонный
release <i>n, v</i>	освобождение; освобождать
remain <i>v</i>	оставаться
rescue <i>n</i>	спасение, освобождение
resolve <i>v</i>	разрешать
secure <i>v</i>	обеспечивать, гарантировать
seize <i>v</i>	захватывать
suppress <i>v</i>	подавлять
survival <i>n</i>	выживание
treat <i>v</i> treatment <i>n</i>	обращаться обращение

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	since time immemorial	a	захватить преступника
2	seize and hold hostages	b	применять силу
3	an ancient form of criminal activity	c	попытаться убить террориста, захватившего заложников
4	hostage taking response strategy	d	тщательное изучение имеющихся улик
5	resolve hostage incidents	e	рассматривать в соответствии со следующим планом
6	secure safe release of hostages	f	программы подготовки полицейских
7	dual nature	g	принять меры
8	capture the offender	h	обеспечить спасение заложников
9	attempt to kill the hostage taker	i	древняя форма уголовной деятельности
10	police training programs	j	обеспечить безопасное освобождение заложников
11	a careful study of the available evidence	k	стратегия реагирования на захват заложника
12	treat according to the following scheme	l	разрешать ситуации с захватом заложников
13	correct identification	m	роль переговорщика
14	take measures	n	двойственная природа
15	secure the rescue of hostages	o	с незапамятных времен
16	use force	p	захватить и удерживать заложников
17	the role of a negotiator	q	правильное установление личности

7. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Apprehend the hostage taker; the safe release of the hostages; end the situation by using force; take measures; attempt to negotiate; special weapons and tactics; resolve the hostage taking crisis; be prepared to use force; since time immemorial; capture the offender; police training programs; the identity of the hostage taker; be immune to the growing phenomenon of hostage taking.

b) Обеспечить спасение заложников; принять меры; личность террориста, захватившего заложников; рассматривать в качестве альтернативы; вести переговоры; применение силы полицией; тщательное изучение улик; задержать террориста, захватившего заложников; роль переговорщика; разрешать ситуации с захватом заложников; безопасное освобождение заложников; установление личности террориста, захватившего заложников.

8. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms.

Aim, settling, deal with, terrorist(s), authority, plan, centre, preparation, think, respond, stay

1. The objective of the police is to secure the safe release of the hostage(s) and to apprehend the hostage taker(s).
2. Police administrators recognize the complexity and the difference of each hostage taking incident and view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward resolving the hostage taking crisis.
3. The control and management of hostage taking incidents may be conveniently treated according to the following scheme of questions.
4. The identity of the hostage taker(s) is the pivot upon which the entire arrangement depends.
5. The hostage taker must believe that the police are prepared to use force even if no hostage is injured or killed.
6. Confronting hostage takers will remain a central problem for the police in the future.
7. People react to the hostage taking situation differently.

9. Match the antonyms.

1 give	a uniformity
2 victim	b death
3 last	c restriction
4 force	d ignorance
5 complexity	e stop
6 survival	f criminal
7 success	g different
8 freedom	h simplicity
9 knowledge	i weakness
10 variety	j accept
11 same	k failure

10. Fill in: react, resolve, identity, release, demands, secure, objective, dual, apprehend, end, use, survival, maintain, hostage, growing, injure. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ... to the hostage incident	9 ... of the hostage taker
2 ... of the police	10 ... of the victim
3 ... nature	11 ... a continuing dialogue with hostage takers
4 ... the hostage taker	12 ... hostages unharmed
5 ... the hostage situation	13 ... of force by police
6 ... of hostage takers	14 ... phenomenon of hostage taking

7 ... the safe release of hostages	15 ... a hostage
8 ... the hostage taking	16 ... prone

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following:

hostage taking; safe release.

react to, secure, incidents, resolve, control and management of, growing phenomenon of, be prepared for the possibility of, complexity and difference of, consider very important, training programs, situations, confront, be immune to, change, of hostages, end

12. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 dimensions determined by a standard
- 2 the condition or fact of being the same or exactly alike
- 3 a person taken prisoner by an enemy or terrorist
- 4 an attempt to reach an agreement or compromise by discussion
- 5 a person skilled in shooting
- 6 keep at the same level or rate
- 7 setting free or liberation
- 8 someone killed, injured or otherwise harmed by
- 9 extending back beyond memory

13. Choose the correct form.

1. A continuing dialogue with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for **end / ending** the hostage incident.
2. The police objective is complicated by the dual nature of **freedom / freeing** the hostages and **capturing / capture** the offender.
3. Police administrators view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward **resolution / resolving** the hostage taking crisis.
4. **Design / designing** effective strategies by police is very important for **ending / end** hostage taking.
5. The best strategy for **resolving / resolve** hostage episodes is through negotiations.
6. **Maintaining / maintenance** a continuing dialogue with hostage takers is very effective for ending the hostage incident.
7. No community or country is immune to the **growing / growth** phenomenon of hostage taking.
8. The first individual perspective to be **reviewing / reviewed** is that of the police.

14. Use the words and word combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

safe release, apprehend, objective, marksmen, hostage taking situations, demands, police training programs, negotiations, hostage taker, available, hostages, identity, survival, prone, negotiator

1. Each individual reacts to ... differently.
2. The ... of the police is to secure ... of hostages.
3. The police objective is to free hostages and ... the offender.
4. If the ... of hostage takers cannot be met, police ... may attempt to kill the hostage taker.
5. The hostage taking phenomenon is currently an important part of
6. Police hostage taking training programs are divided into two basic strategies: ... and special weapons and tactics.
7. In each case the golden rule is: know the
8. The knowledge of the hostage taker can come from a careful study of the ... evidence.
9. The ... of the hostage taker is very important for management of hostage taking incidents.
10. The very ... of the victim depends on the correct identification of the hostage taker.
11. Perhaps, the most important aspect of any hostage taking response strategy is the role of
12. The longer the hostage taking situation lasts, the greater the probability that the ... will be unharmed.
13. Some criminal justice institutions can be described as hostage

15. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Hostage taking has been with us
2. Hostage taking is an ancient form of
3. Each individual reacts to ... differently.
4. The police objective is
5. On the one hand, the police are to secure
6. On the other hand, they are to apprehend
7. The hostage taking phenomenon is currently an important part of police
8. Police hostage taking training programs have been divided into two basic strategies:
9. Police administrators view negotiations and the use of force as alternatives toward
10. In each case the golden rule is:
11. The success of the measures taken to secure the rescue of the hostages largely depends on the correct
12. Maintaining a continuing dialogue with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for ending
13. No community is immune to the growing phenomenon of
14. The police in future will have to design effective strategies to resolve ... and secure

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

16. Watch the film on taking hostages in the Japanese Embassy in Peru. Before watching, try to remember the following words:

awesome <i>a</i>	внушающий страх
crawl <i>v</i>	ползти
dignitary <i>n</i>	высокопоставленное лицо
drag <i>v</i>	тянуться
embassy <i>n</i>	посольство
frighten <i>v</i>	испугать
militant <i>n</i>	боевик
rebel <i>n</i>	повстанец, мятежник
siege <i>n</i>	осада
wounded <i>n</i>	раненый

17. Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best according to the video.

1. Where did the hostage situation take place?
 - a) In Japan
 - b) In the USA
 - c) In Peru
2. What establishment was held by hostage takers?
 - a) A prison
 - b) An embassy
 - c) A bank
3. Who planned the hostage incident?
 - a) Military forces
 - b) Conservatives
 - c) Leftist rebels
4. How much time did it take them to enter the embassy?
 - a) Half an hour
 - b) Some hours
 - c) Some minutes
5. How many people were taken hostages?
 - a) 9
 - b) 12
 - c) 72
6. How much time did the hostage taking situation last?
 - a) A week
 - b) Half a month
 - c) 4 months
7. In what way were hostages released?
 - a) Peacefully
 - b) By an attack of governmental forces
 - c) Through negotiations

18. Watch the video again and speak on the details and results of the rescue operation.

19. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

Work in pairs. Ask your partner a question from the right-hand column. Complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: "Yes, you are right"; "I agree with you (but)"; "I don't agree with you, etc."

1 Is hostage taking a new phenomenon?	a It consists of two parts: to free the hostage(s) and capture the hostage taker(s)
2 What are the basic purposes of this form of criminal activity?	b To know the hostage taker
3 Why do we call the objective of the police dual?	c No, it isn't. It has been with us since time immemorial
4 What proves the importance of the police role in solving hostage incidents??	d To get something hostage takers cannot have or get by any other process
5 What strategies have police hostage taking training programs been divided into?	e There are no magic formulas. The problem will remain central for the police in the future
6 In what way do police administrators view these strategies?	f The problem of solving hostage crisis is an important part of police training programs
7 What rule is very important in each case of hostage incident?	g Two basic strategies: negotiations and SWAT
8 What depends upon the correct identification of the hostage taker?	h Maintaining a continuing dialogue
9 What is the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident?	i Negotiations and the use of force are viewed as alternatives
10 What are the formulas of confronting hostage takers in the future?	j The very survival of the victims and the success of their rescue

20. With your partner, act out the roles based on task 19. Then, switch your roles.

21. Make up conversations discussing the phrase

- The entire arrangement of the rescue operation by the police depends on the correct identification of the hostage taker(s)
- The police objective is complicated by the dual nature of freeing the hostages and capturing the offender

22. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on.

- Hostage taking has been with us since time immemorial
- Dual nature of the police objective in hostage taking incidents
- Hostage taking phenomenon as an important part of police training programs
- The golden rule of every hostage incident
- The role of negotiations as the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident

23. Speak on the problem of hostage taking and law enforcement.

- The objective of the police in hostage taking incidents
- Police hostage taking training programs
- No community is immune to hostage taking phenomenon

PROGRESS CHECK (part A)

1. Choose the correct word.

1. All International Airports adhere to strict security procedures in an effort ... acts of terrorism.
 - a) to control
 - b) to prevent
 - c) to seize
2. Most bomb ... are received over the phone.
 - a) threats
 - b) attacks
 - c) instructions
3. The areas to be searched first are those given in the
 - a) notice
 - b) threat
 - c) prosecution
4. Each individual reacts to the ... taking situation differently.
 - a) hostage
 - b) police
 - c) offender
5. Police administrators now recognize that ... with hostage takers is the most effective strategy for ending the hostage incident.
 - a) treatment
 - b) negotiations
 - c) measures

2. **Fill in:** find, prevent, cause, receive, areas, secure, correct, know, hostage, resolve.

1 ... identification	6 ...acts of terrorism
2 ... safe release of hostages	7 ... a suspicious item
3 ... to be searched first	8 ...prone
4 ... over the phone	9 ... hostage taking crisis
5 ... mass disruption	10 ... the hostage taker

3. **Choose the correct word / words**

1. Negotiations with hostage takers are the most effective strategy for **end / ending** the hostage situation.
2. The bomber is seldom, if ever **detecting / detected**.
3. The police personnel **answering / answered** calls *should have / to have* a bomb checklist.
4. In hostage taking situations the police task is dual-**freedom / freeing** the hostages and **capture / capturing** the offenders.
5. Negotiations and the use of force are alternatives toward **resolving / resolution** the hostage taking crisis.

4. **Fill in the gaps with appropriate words from the box.**

negotiations, resolving, hostage prone, prosecution, hostage taking, threats

1. Law enforcement officers treat all potential ... seriously.
2. The recorded information about a bomb threat may be used later in the
3. The ... phenomenon is currently an important part of police training programs.
4. Police administrators view ... and the use of force as alternatives toward ... the hostage taking crisis.
5. Criminal justice institutions can be described as ... — particularly courthouses, jails and prisons.

5. **Choose the answer which you think fits best.**

1. What does a recorded information about a bomb threat help to do?
 - a) to identify the bomber
 - b) to control the situation
 - c) to find a suspicious item
2. What is the objective of the police in hostage taking situations?
 - a) to apprehend the hostage taker(s)
 - b) to secure the safe release of hostage(s)
 - c) to free the hostage(s) and to capture the offender(s)
3. What areas should be searched first?
 - a) those given in the bomb threat
 - b) those easily accessible to the public
 - c) more restrictive areas

4. What are the police hostage taking programs divided into?
 - a) demands of hostage takers and release of hostages
 - b) use of force and apprehension of hostage takers
 - c) negotiations and special weapons and tactics
5. What depends upon the correct identification of the hostage taker(s)?
 - a) use of force by the police
 - b) success of the rescue of hostages
 - c) treatment of the hostage

PROGRESS CHECK (part B)

1. Choose the correct word.

1. Most bomb ... are received over the phone.
 - a) threats
 - b) attacks
 - c) instructions
2. Each individual reacts to the ... taking situation differently.
 - a) hostage
 - b) police
 - c) offender
3. The main characteristic of terrorism is the use of ... by a politically motivated group.
 - a) aim
 - b) terror
 - c) strategy
4. To be effective, terrorism must ... severe emotional response.
 - a) fight
 - b) use
 - c) evoke
5. Do not touch and examine the suspicious
 - a) objective
 - b) program
 - c) item

2. Fill in: targeted, response, cause, threaten, find, hostage, capture, resolve, identify, areas.

1 ... laws

2 ... the bomber

3 public ...

4 ... the hostage taking crisis

5 ...people's lives

6 ... mass disruption

7 ... a suspicious item

8 ... prone

9 ... the hostage taker(s)

10 ... to be searched

3. Choose the correct word / words

1. Negotiations with hostage takers are considered the most effective strategy for **solution / solving** the hostage situation.
2. The officer must **have / to have** available the person **receiving / having received** the threat.
3. Prior planning should allow for the call **to have been recorded / to be recorded**.
4. In hostage taking situations the police task is dual-**freedom / freeing** the hostages and **capture / capturing** the offenders.
5. **Conducting / having conducted** criminal proceeding in court against a person is called prosecution.

4. Fill in the gaps with appropriate words from the box.

the weak, evoke, negotiations, resolving, suspicious, threats

1. Law enforcement officers treat all potential ... seriously.
2. Terrorism has been correctly described as a strategy of
3. To be effective, terrorism must ... a severe emotional response.
4. Police administrators view ... and the use of force as alternatives toward ... the hostage taking crisis.
5. The best rule is: do not touch a ... item.

5. Choose the answer which you think fits best.

1. What document provides a framework to fight terrorism?
 - a) UN Charter
 - b) Interpol initiatives
 - c) UN Global Strategy
2. What is the objective of the police in hostage taking situations?
 - a) to apprehend the hostage taker(s)
 - b) to secure the safe release of hostage(s)
 - c) to free the hostage(s) and to capture the offender(s)
3. What areas should be searched first?
 - a) those given in the bomb threat
 - b) those easily accessible to the public
 - c) more restrictive areas
4. Why do terrorists attack national symbols?
 - a) to shake the foundations of society
 - b) to protect the government
 - c) to secure the people
5. What are the police hostage taking programs divided into?
 - a) demands of hostage takers and release of hostages
 - b) use of force and apprehension of hostage takers
 - c) negotiations and special weapons and tactics

Module VI

CRIME PREVENTION

Part A

Lead-in

- What is the main goal of police?

Reading 1

1. Read the text, check your ideas.

Committed¹ to a safer Dorset for you

In 1829 the opening speech made by the first Commissioner of Police included the comment that “The primary object of an efficient Police force is the prevention of crime, the next that of detection and punishment of offenders. To those ends all the efforts of the police must be directed”.

Dorset Police do their best to continue that concept by working in partnership with the community to not only make Dorset Safer, but also to make it feel Safer.

We place a great emphasis on trying to stop crime happening.

Crime Prevention starts at home and often it is not complicated. Many criminals are opportunists.

Working together in partnership, we can make positive steps to stop you becoming a victim of crime.

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. What is the primary object of an efficient Police force?
 - a) detection and punishment of offenders
 - b) the prevention of crime
 - c) partnership with the community
2. Crime prevention is effective if police
 - a) work in partnership with the community
 - b) employ specially trained Crime Prevention
 - c) give advice

Reading 2

3. Read the text.

Crime Prevention Officers

Although crime prevention is a fundamental responsibility of every police officer, nevertheless in some countries law enforcement agencies are staffed by crime

¹ Преданы.

prevention units charged with the duties of developing and implementing crime prevention programs to inform, educate and assist citizens in becoming more crime prevention **oriented**.

The primary goal of crime prevention officers is to increase community **awareness** and motivate citizens to become actively involved in helping to reduce crime.

Crime prevention officers work to bridge the gap between law enforcement officers and community residents through problem-solving and crime prevention initiatives.

Crime prevention officers' duties include:

- Informing the public about personal and property safety;
- Educating the public on the techniques of crime prevention;
- Carrying out security checks for individuals, community groups and local organizations (businesses) to prevent crime from occurring and to reduce the risk of repeat victimization;
- Analyzing crime trends and statistics;
- Liaising with local schools and councils;
- Supporting victims of crime by conducting safety assessments and suggesting treatments to reduce repeat victimization, etc.

The key to preventing crime is through community involvement. Crime prevention officers organize and maintain community-based crime prevention programs such as **Neighborhood Watch**, **Citizen's Police Academies**, Auto Theft, Child Safety, Business Security, Personal Safety, Violence in the Workplace, Home Security, Burglary Prevention and others.

These programs help to prevent crime while providing volunteer resources that assist law enforcement agencies to meet many of their public safety responsibilities.

Crime prevention units work to educate the public on matters of crime prevention and safety through the media, public engagements, website and direct communications with neighborhood associations, schools, businesses and residents.

Moving towards a less centralized model, using a problem-solving approach, involving local communities and working to gain their **confidence** will all increase police to prevent rather than repress crime.

Multiple Choice

4. Read the text again. Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best according to the text.

1. Crime prevention units are charged with:
 - a) repressing crimes
 - b) instructing officers with new methods of fighting crimes
 - c) developing and implementing crime prevention programs to inform, educate and assist citizens in becoming more crime prevention oriented
2. The main goal of crime prevention officers is:
 - a) to increase community awareness and motivate citizens to become actively involved in helping to reduce crime

- b) to protect a crime scene and help victims
- c) to identify, detect, apprehend and interrogate a suspect
- 3. Crime prevention officers' duties include:
 - a) meeting community residents
 - b) informing and educating the public; carrying out security checks; liaising with communities; supporting victims of crime, etc.
 - c) spreading flyers
- 4. Crime prevention officers are responsible for:
 - a) implementing crime prevention strategies such as hot-spot policing
 - b) cooperation with the Ministry of Education and Culture for planning more effective crime prevention programs
 - c) community-based crime prevention programs such as Neighborhood Watch, Citizen's Police Academies, Child Safety, and others
- 5. Crime prevention units educate the public through:
 - a) the media, public meetings, website and communications with neighborhood residents
 - b) special police courses devoted to crime prevention
 - c) website

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary.

approach <i>n</i>	подход (к решению проблемы, задачи), метод
assessment <i>n</i>	оценка, оценивание (качества, эффективности)
awareness <i>n</i>	информированность, осведомлённость бдительность, осторожность
bridge <i>v</i> to bridge the gap	выходить из затруднения ликвидировать, преодолеть разрыв; «навести мосты»
carry out <i>v</i>	выполнять, осуществлять; приводить в исполнение
charge <i>v</i>	поручать, возлагать ответственность
community <i>n</i> community-based	население, жители микрорайона основанный на местном самоуправлении
conduct <i>v</i>	проводить
engagement <i>n</i>	встреча
gain <i>v</i> gain smb's confidence	приобрести, добиться, завоевать завоевать доверие
involve <i>v</i> become involved in smth.	привлекать, вовлекать участвовать в чём-либо
involvement <i>n</i>	участие; задействование
liaise (with) <i>v</i>	поддерживать связь
maintain <i>v</i>	поддерживать

meet v	соответствовать; отвечать; удовлетворять (желаниям, требованиям)
meet responsibilities	осуществлять обязанности
provide v	давать, предоставлять; обеспечивать
repress v	пресекать, подавлять, усмирять; останавливать
resource n	ресурсы, резервы
suggest v	предлагать
support v	поддерживать (морально); помогать
staff v	укомплектовывать штат
treatment n	мера
victimization n	виктимизация (сообщение или приобретение статуса потерпевшего; регистрация в качестве потерпевшего)
watch neighborhood watch	наблюдение надзор соседей; программа наблюдения за микрорайоном, осуществляемая самими жителями

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 charge	a профилактика
2 repress	b поддерживать
3 liaison	c соседство
4 engagement	d бдительность
6 treatment	e осуществлять
5 involvement	f взаимодействовать
7 approach	g вовлечение
8 neighborhood	h доверие
9 awareness	i обязанность
10 confidence	j возлагать
11 implement	k встреча
12 prevention	l разрыв
13 responsibility	m пресекать
14 gap	n подход
15 support	o мера
16 reduce	p сократить

7. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1 be charged with the duties	a ориентированный на профилактику преступности
2 repress crime	b поддерживать связь с местными школами
3 liaison with local schools	c соседский надзор
4 public engagement	d повысить бдительность
6 suggest treatment	e осуществлять программы

5	community involvement	f	оказывать поддержку пострадавшим
7	problem-solving approach	g	вовлечение населения
8	neighborhood watch	h	завоевать доверие
9	increase awareness	i	осуществлять обязанности
10	gain confidence	j	возлагать обязанности
11	implement programs	k	встреча с населением
12	crime prevention oriented	l	преодолеть разрыв
13	meet responsibilities	m	пресекать преступление
14	bridge the gap	n	подход, направленный на решение проблем
15	support victims	o	предлагать меры
16	reduce crime	p	сократить преступность

8. Match the antonyms.

1	awareness	a	doubt
2	actively	b	danger
3	safety	c	lose
4	less	d	passively
5	gain	e	more
6	confidence	f	increase
7	reduce	g	ignorance

9. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

Fundamental responsibility, developing and implementing crime prevention programs; to inform, educate and assist citizens; the primary goal of crime prevention officers; to increase community awareness; to bridge the gap between law enforcement officers and community residents; crime prevention officers' duties; educating the public; liaising with local schools; carrying out security checks for individuals; educating the public on the techniques of crime prevention; the key to preventing crime; personal safety; violence in the workplace; supporting victims of crime; analyzing crime trends and statistics; educate through public engagements; gain public confidence; to prevent rather than repress crime.

10. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

- Несмотря на то, что предотвращение преступлений
- Тем не менее
- Укомплектованы подразделениями по предотвращению преступлений
- Подразделения, на которые возложены обязанности
- Помогать гражданам научиться предотвращать преступления
- Побуждать граждан проявлять активность в борьбе с преступностью
- Предотвращать совершение преступления
- Сократить риск повторной виктимизации
- Проведение оценки безопасности
- Поддерживать профилактические программы, основанные на местном самоуправлении

11. Приглашать волонтеров для оказания помощи правоохранительным органам
12. Осуществлять обязанности по обеспечению безопасности граждан
13. Обучать население методам предотвращения преступности
14. Установление прямых контактов с общественными организациями микрорайона
15. Привлечение местного населения

11. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions:

- 1 a program of systematic local vigilance by residents of a neighborhood to discourage crime, especially burglary
- 2 the feeling or belief that one can have faith in or rely on someone or something
- 3 a person learns about a new situation or course of action and prepares to deal with it
- 4 knowledge or perception of a situation or fact
- 5 a program designed to inform individuals who are not sworn police officers with the activities of their local police department

12. Use the words / phrases in the box on the right to make word combinations with the words on the left:

community, (the) public, crime prevention.

organize and maintain; based; informing; programs; unit; responsibilities; local; initiatives; to educate; involvement; techniques; awareness; officers; residents; oriented

13. Choose the correct word.

1. In some countries law enforcement agencies **are assisted by** / **are staffed by** crime prevention units
2. The primary goal of the crime prevention officers is to increase community **awareness** / **control** and motivate citizens to become actively involved in helping to reduce crime.
3. Crime prevention officers work to **stop** / **bridge** the gap between law enforcement officers and community residents **through** / **across** problem-solving and crime prevention initiatives.
4. Crime prevention officers' duties include informing the **public** / **staff** about personal and property safety.
5. Carrying out security checks for individuals, community groups and local organizations can prevent crime from occurring and reduce the risk of **violent** / **repeat** victimization.
6. The key to preventing crime is through community **centre** / **involvement**.
7. Crime prevention programs help to prevent crime while providing **volunteer** / **community** resources that assist law enforcement agencies.

8. Crime prevention units work to educate the public on matters of crime prevention and safety through the media, **public / official** engagements, website and direct **influence / communications**.

9. Moving towards a **less / more** centralized model and involving local communities and working to gain their **reputation / confidence** will increase the ability of the police to prevent rather than repress crime.

14. Find to the underlined words synonyms given in the box.

Implementing; putting into practice; participation; responsible for; method; inhabitants; comprise; support; interacting; actions; win

1. Although crime prevention is a fundamental responsibility of every police officer, nevertheless in some countries law enforcement agencies are staffed by crime prevention units charged with the duties of developing and implementing crime prevention programs.

2. Crime prevention officers work to bridge the gap between law enforcement officers and community residents through problem-solving and crime prevention initiatives.

3. Crime prevention officers' duties include: carrying out security checks for individuals and businesses; liaising with local schools and councils; suggesting treatments to reduce repeat victimization

4. The key to preventing crime is through community involvement.

5. Crime prevention officers organize and maintain community – based crime prevention programs such as Neighborhood Watch, Citizen's Police Academies. Moving towards a less centralized model, using a problem-solving approach, involving local communities and working to gain their confidence will all increase police to prevent rather than repress crime.

Watching 1

Pre viewing

15. Think and say. What is the Neighborhood Watch Program?

16. Before listening, try to remember the following words.

night out	встреча с жителями микрорайона	Australian NHW  Neighbourhood Watch.
annual	ежегодный	
event	мероприятие	
set aside for	предназначать, выделять	
block	квартал, микрорайон	
invite	приглашать	

fire	пожарная команда	<i>American NHW</i> 
paramedic	парамедик (оказывать первую (доврачебную) медицинскую помощь пострадавшим)	
strengthen	укреплять, усиливать	
partnership	сотрудничество	
spirit	дух	
stand up against	выступать против	
grassy area	травяная площадка	<i>British NHW</i> 
backyard	задний двор (лужайка или сад за домом)	
setting	окружающая обстановка	
willing	проявляющий готовность или желание	
van	микроавтобус	
pull up	остановиться	
suspicious	подозрительный	

While viewing

17. Watch the video “National Night Out with Boise Police Department”. Are these phrases true or false? Correct the false ones.

1. National Night Out (NNO) is held the first Tuesday in July.
2. Police officers, fire fighters, paramedics, and city officials attend the event.
3. National night out is designed to:
 - strengthen neighborhood spirit and police-community partnerships;
 - send a message to criminals letting them know that neighborhoods are organized and fighting back;
 - increase crime and drug prevention awareness.
4. Reasons to have a Night Out are:
 - to meet your neighbors. When you know who lives in your neighborhood, the more likely you are to identify strangers or suspicious people;
 - to increase the sense of belonging in your neighborhood.
5. Neighborhood Watch encourages neighbors to know each other and watch out for each other.
6. Neighborhood Watch:
 - reduces fear of crime;
 - reduces the risk of becoming a crime victim;
 - deters criminal activity;

- stimulates neighborhood awareness by people watching out for each other;
- residents can take precautions, and be the eyes and ears for law enforcement.

7. Residents receive information by the Boise Police Crime Prevention Unit on criminal activity in or near their neighborhood.

Post viewing

ROLE-PLAY *National Night out with the Boise Police Department.*

18. Work in pairs.

Cadet A: You are a police officer of the Ministry of the Interior of Russia coming to <i>the Boise Police Department</i>, the USA, Idaho to learn about crime prevention programs the BPD implement to prevent crime and maintain order. Ask <i>Cadet B</i> about: • programs to prevent crime; • neighborhood watch; • its benefits and goals; • National Night Out event and its aims, reasons and participants	Cadet B: You are a police officer of the Boise Police Crime Prevention Unit. Answer Cadet A's questions.

19. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective	Verb
	enforced	
		staff
education		
	aware	—
		communicate
	motivating	
		analyze
	engaged	
maintenance		
		burglarize
liaison		
		save

20. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Although crime prevention is a fundamental **(0) responsibility** **(0) responsible** of every police officer, nevertheless in some countries law **(1)...** agencies are staffed by crime prevention units. The **(1) enforce** primary goal of crime prevention officers is to increase community **(2)...** and motivate citizens to become actively **(2) aware** involved in helping to reduce crime. Crime prevention officers' duties include: informing the public about **(3) ...** and property **(3) person** **(4)...**; educating the public on the techniques of crime **(4) safe** prevention; **(5)...** with local schools and councils; carrying out **(5) liaison** **(6)...**checks for individuals. Crime prevention officers **(6) secure** organize and maintain Neighborhood Watch, **(7)...** Prevention, **(7) burglarize** etc. The crime prevention unit works to **(8)...** the public on **(8) education** matters of crime prevention through the media, public **(9)...**, **(9) engage** website and direct **(10)...** . **(10) communicate**

21. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

Neighborhood Watch; bridge the gap; carrying out; problem-solving; liaising; staffed; awareness; involvement; confidence; community-based; reduce; volunteer; charged; engagements; trends; centralized

1. In some countries law enforcement agencies are ... by crime prevention units.
2. Crime prevention units are ... with the duties of developing and implementing crime prevention programs.
3. The primary goal of crime prevention officers is to increase community ... and motivate citizens to become actively involved in helping to ... crime.
4. Crime prevention officers work to ... between law enforcement officers and community residents through problem-solving and crime prevention initiatives.
5. Crime prevention officers' duties include educating the public on the techniques of crime prevention, ... security checks, ... with local schools and councils, analyzing crime ... and supporting victims of crime.
6. The key to preventing crime is through community....
7. Crime prevention officers organize and maintain ... crime prevention programs such as, ..., Citizen's Police Academies, Auto Theft, Child Safety etc.
8. These programs help to prevent crime while providing ... resources that assist law enforcement agencies to meet many of their public safety responsibilities.
9. The crime prevention unit works through the media, public ..., website and direct communications with residents.

10. Moving towards a less ... model, using a ... approach, involving local communities and working to gain their ... will increase the ability of the police to prevent rather than repress crime.

22. Find in the sentences infinitive and infinitive construction.

1. This Crime Prevention Portal has been produced to provide you with key information to help reduce your chances of becoming a victim of crime.

2. British Transport Police advise that you only drink in moderation if you have to travel, as it is harder to be aware of your surroundings while drunk and you're more likely to become a victim of crime.

3. It is an offence to be drunk on a train.

4. Keeping computers in family areas (not in the bedroom) proves to keep you children from trouble as parents and children learn how to get the most out of the internet together and to talk about what they find.

5. Young people are more likely to be the victims of theft and assault than any other age group.

6. They are also the least likely to report a crime against them.

7. Analysis of police data reveals that ground floor and basement flats have the highest risk of burglary and are 48 per cent more likely to be burgled than other types of property.

8. Semi-detached houses and upper-floor flats are the least likely to be burgled.

9. To strengthen neighborhood spirit and police-community partnerships is the goal of National Night Out.

10. A good neighbor is considered to be a highly effective crime prevention tool.

11. Police believe Neighborhood Watch Program to be a major factor in reducing crime in these neighborhoods utilizing the program.

12. The initial meeting of a Neighborhood Watch Group will establish the purpose of the program, begin to identify issues that need to be addressed.

13. Experiments need to be designed to test causal hypotheses.

14. The most important intervention program whose success seems to be based mainly on reducing peer risk factors is the Children at Risk program.

15. CCTV cameras have also been shown to be an effective form of situational prevention.

16. The Community Board carries out a risk and protective factor assessment, identifying key risk factors in that particular community that need to be tackled.

17. Researches suppose crime to cluster among a few places, offenders, and victims.

23. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. The sentence starts from the word in bold.

1. **Crime** / is / police / a fundamental / prevention / of every / responsibility / officer.

2. **In some** / are / prevention agencies / countries / law enforcement / staffed / by **crime** / **units**.
3. **What** / units / of crime / responsibilities / prevention / are?
4. **What** / the main / is / of crime prevention / objective / officers?
5. **Which way** / work / to bridge / between / the gap / law enforcement officers / and / community residents / do / crime prevention officers?
6. **What** / duties / does / crime prevention officers' / include?
7. **The key** / is / involvement / crime / community / through / to preventing.
8. **What community-based crime prevention programs** / organize / crime prevention officers / do?
9. **Who** / to implement / programs / crime prevention / helps?
10. **Which way** / educate / do / the public / crime prevention units?
11. **What** / the ability / to prevent / increases / of the police / crime?

24. Fill in: security checks, provide, the duties, confidence, engagement, crime, community, watch, approach, oriented, local schools, treatment, the gap. Awareness, crime prevention units, programs, reduce, responsibilities, victims, educate. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 be charged with ...	11 increase ...
2 repress ...	12 gain ...
3 liaise with ...	13 implement ...
4 public	14 crime prevention ...
6 suggest ...	15 meet ...
5 ... involvement	16 bridge ...
7 problem-solving ...	17 support ...
8 neighborhood ...	18 ... crime
9 staffed by ...	19 ... through the media
10 carry out ...	20 ... volunteer resources

25. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Crime prevention is a fundamental responsibility
2. In some countries law enforcement agencies are staffed by
3. Crime prevention units are charged with the duties of developing and implementing
4. The primary goal of crime prevention officers is to increase
5. Crime prevention officers work to bridge the gap between
6. Crime prevention officers' duties include informing the public about personal and property ...; educating the public on ...; carrying out ...; analyzing ...; liaising with ...; supporting victims of crime by
7. The key to preventing crime is through
8. Crime prevention officers organize and maintain community-based crime prevention programs such as

9. Crime prevention programs help to prevent crime while providing volunteer resources that assist law enforcement agencies to
10. The crime prevention unit works through the media, ...
11. Using a problem-solving approach, involving local communities and working to gain their confidence will all increase

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching and Speaking

Watching 2

Pre-viewing

26. Think and say.

- Is it safe to walk at night?
- Is it safe to use mobile devices or ear phones while walking?
- Do you always lock doors and windows leaving the house?

27. Before watching, try to remember the following words:

alert	бдительный, внимательный
avoid	избегать
brief	короткий, недолгий
bug bug store	букашка, мелкое насекомое «блошиный рынок»
confidence	уверенность
convey	выражать
device	устройство
hide	прятаться, скрываться
jewelry	драгоценности, ювелирные изделия
profile	заметность, примечательность
receipt	чек
shortcut	кратчайшее расстояние; путь напрямик
surroundings	окружение, окрестность
trunk	багажник
wallet	бумажник
wander	блуждать (о мыслях, взгляде и т. п.), быть невнимательным, рассеянным

While viewing

28. Watch the video «Robbery Prevention Tips». Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best.

1. What should you do walking at night?
 - a) Take shortcuts through unlit, lightly traveled paths
 - b) Walk with at least one other person avoiding shortcuts
 - c) Wear expensive looking jewelry to attract attention
2. What is the best way to walk safe?
 - a) Convey a sense of confidence, be aware of people around you, make a brief eye contact with them
 - b) Walk with your head down and let your mind wander
 - c) Use mobile devices or ear phones decreasing you own awareness
3. If a person, place or situation make you uncomfortable what should you undertake?
 - a) Take a cup of coffee
 - b) Trust your instincts, avoid uncomfortable situations, just leave
 - c) Give a high profile
4. Whether you go shopping to a big bug store or run around your neighborhood what way should you be alert?
 - a) Walk with an open bag
 - b) Avoid checking your receipts
 - c) Do not wear expensive jewelry or clothing and carry the cash you need
5. Where should you park your vehicle?
 - a) Anywhere
 - b) Down a dark alley
 - c) In well-lighted areas
6. What should you consider leaving the vehicle?
 - a) Avoid leaving items of value in the car, secure them in the trunk and be sure you lock the doors
 - b) Leave the car open
 - c) Ask a security officer to keep an eye on the car
7. What should you do before getting into the car?
 - a) When walking to the car make use of a taxi cab even for a short trip
 - b) Walk with at least one other person
 - c) Have your car keys ready, look into the car to check for anyone hiding inside

Post viewing

29. Fill the table with crime prevention measures dividing phrases into four groups based on the object of safety. Use tasks 15 and 17 if necessary.

Safety	Preventive Measures
Personal	don't use mobile devices or ear phones decreasing you own awareness
Property	• never leave your luggage unattended • carry bags close to you
Vehicle	
Home	

30. Use the ideas below and appropriate language to say some sentences relevant to crime prevention tips.

- wear money belt / under clothes / keep travel documents and money / out of sight
- fix lock / onto all bags and suitcases / stop thieves getting into them
- keep photocopies / passport and other travel documents / in separate place / in case of theft
- use / in the hotel / hotel safety deposit boxes or safes / leave / valuable

e.g. While travelling or visiting any mass sport event you should find ways to guard your belongings and to prevent yourself from being robbed.

A useful suggestion would be to keep photocopies of your passport and other travel documents, in a separate place. In this way, you can replace your significant documents quickly in case of theft.

Another way to protect your belongings is ...

31. With a partner act out the roles of a police officer and a tourist who is planning to attend an international sporting event. Discuss precaution measures following which the tourist is unlikely to become a victim of crime. Use ideas from the video «Robbery Prevention Tips».

Useful language	
Asking for advice	Giving advice
Do you think I should ...?	You should / shouldn't ...
What do you advise?	The best thing to do is ...
What can / should I do?	It's best not to ...
What items are prohibited in your country?	Another idea is to

e.g. Tourist: *Do you think I should leave my valuables in the hotel?*

Police officer: *It's best not to leave the valuables in the hotel. You should use hotel safety deposit boxes or safes. Another idea is to keep a record of your personal belongings.*

Tourist: *Well, is it safe to walk alone? What do you advise?*

Police officer: *Be smart, be alert. In this way, you should ...*

32. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1	What are responsibilities of crime prevention units?	a	Crime prevention officers work to bridge the gap between law enforcement officers and community residents through problem-solving and crime prevention initiatives
2	What is the main objective of crime prevention officers?	b	Crime prevention officers organize and maintain community-based crime prevention programs such as Neighborhood Watch, Citizen's Police Academies, Child Safety, Business Security, Personal Safety, Violence in the Workplace, Home Security, and others
3	What do crime prevention officers strive to do?	c	Crime prevention units are charged with the duties of developing and implementing crime prevention programs to inform, educate and assist citizens in becoming more crime prevention oriented
4	What are crime prevention officers responsible for?	d	Moving towards a less centralized model, using a problem-solving approach, involving local communities and working to gain their confidence will all increase police to prevent rather than repress crime
5	What community-based crime prevention programs do crime prevention officers implement?	e	Crime prevention officers' duties include to inform the public about personal and property safety; to educate the public on the techniques of crime prevention; to carry out security checks; to analyze crime trends and statistics; to liaise with local schools and councils; to support victims of crime by conducting safety assessments and suggesting treatments to reduce repeat victimization, etc.

33. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 32. Then, switch roles.

Cadet A: You are a **cadet**. Ask Cadet B about his duties and responsibilities.

Cadet B: You are an **officer** of the Boise Police Crime Prevention Unit. Talk to Cadet A about the goals of your unit, officers' duties, education programs and services provided to residents and the community

PROGRESS CHECK (part A)

1. Choose the correct item.

1. Crime prevention units develop and implement crime prevention programs to inform, educate and assist citizens in becoming more crime prevention:

- a) aware
- b) influenced
- c) oriented

2. To ... citizens to become actively involved in helping to reduce crime is the primary goal of crime prevention officers.

- a) influence
- b) motivate
- c) assist

3. Crime prevention officers carry out security checks to ... crime from occurring.

- a) investigate
- b) prevent
- c) repress

4. Crime prevention officers suggest treatments to reduce ... victimization.

- a) repeat
- b) public
- c) individual

5. Using a problem-solving approach, involving local communities and working to gain their confidence will ... police to prevent rather than repress crime.

- a) increase
- b) meet
- c) maintain

2. **Fill in:** programs, crime, involvement, awareness, with local schools, watch, with the duties, the gap, confidence, engagement.

- 1 be charged ...
- 2 liaise ...
- 3 public ...
- 4 community ...
- 5 problem-solving approach
- 6 neighborhood ...
- 7 increase ...
- 8 gain ...
- 9 implement ...
- 10 bridge ...
- 11 support victims ...
- 12 reduce ...

3. Choose the correct word / words.

1. In some countries law enforcement agencies **are assisted by / are staffed by** crime prevention units.
2. The primary goal of the crime prevention officers is to increase community **awareness / control**.
3. Crime prevention officers work to **stop / bridge** the gap between law enforcement officers and community residents **through / across** problem-solving and crime prevention initiatives.
4. Crime prevention officers' duties include informing the **public / staff** about personal and property safety.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. Crime prevention units are ... with the duties of developing and implementing crime prevention programs.
2. The key to preventing crime is through community
3. Crime prevention officers organize and maintain ... crime prevention programs such as, ..., Citizen's Police Academies etc.
4. The crime prevention unit works through the media, public ..., website and direct communications with residents.

5. Choose the correct sentence.

- 1.1. What are the main objective of crime prevention officers?
- 1.2. What are crime prevention officers main objective?
- 1.3. What is the main objective of crime prevention officers?

- 2.1. What does crime prevention officers strive to do?
- 2.2. What do crime prevention officers strive to do?
- 2.3. What crime prevention officers strive to do?

- 3.1. What are community-based crime prevention programs crime prevention officers implement?
- 3.2. What do community-based crime prevention programs crime prevention officers implement?
- 3.3. What community-based crime prevention programs do crime prevention officers implement?

- 4.1. What units are law enforcement agencies staffed by?
- 4.2. What units do law enforcement agencies staffed by?
- 4.3. What units law enforcement agencies are staffed by?

- 2.1. Why does crime prevention officers carry out security checks?
- 2.2. Why do crime prevention officers carry out security checks?
- 2.3. Why do out security checks crime prevention officers carry?

Lead-in

- What is the main aim of police?

Reading 1

1. Read the text minding the definition and principles of crime prevention.

Crime Prevention Principles

Crime prevention is the attempt to reduce victimization and to deter crime and criminals.

The Principles of Crime Prevention are

- Crime prevention is everybody's business, and is more than security
- Crime prevention is linked with solving social problems and requires education
- Crime prevention is a responsibility of all levels of Government
- Crime prevention is cost effective
- Crime prevention requires a central position in law enforcement
- Crime prevention requires cooperation from all elements of the community
- Crime prevention improves the quality of life for every community, its businesses, and its residents

Crime prevention means working in partnership, rather than in isolation, working with citizens to address ways to prevent crime. Communities and individual citizens learn how to protect themselves and work together to keep their business and neighborhood crime and drug free.

Reading 2

2. Read the text minding the work of the crime prevention officers.

Crime Prevention Officers

Crime prevention units are charged with a duty to reduce criminal opportunities.

The goal of the crime prevention officer is to **decrease** residents' chances of being a victim of crime and enhance the quality of life in the neighborhood.

The crime prevention officer is responsible for maintaining strong police-community relations through informational and educational programs designed to all ages and all community.

The crime prevention units **familiarize** residents with current crime trends and educate them what steps can be taken to reduce these crimes.



McGruff Prevention Program

To remove criminal opportunity in the community crime prevention units implement a range of crime prevention programs such as **Neighborhood Watch**, Personal Safety, Businesses Watch, Senior Citizen Safety, **McGruff Program**, etc.

Crime prevention units offer a number of free services to residents and business owners. Crime prevention officers provide residents with crime prevention **advice** concerning personal, property, home safety, and vehicle security, etc.

A trained crime prevention officer inspects and evaluates a residence and recommends security improvements to make the house a less attractive target. The examination focuses on a building structure, landscape, lighting, alarms, doors and windows and any other necessary measures.

Practical advice helps stay safe, **prevent** crime and keep home secure. For example: never leave your bags unattended; keep documents and money out of sight; keep your bags locked and carry close to you; don't take **shortcuts** through dark alleys and parks; be careful when using personal stereos as you may not hear the traffic or someone approaching you; park in well-lit areas; lock the car doors; never leave valuables in the car, lock doors and windows; install a **burglar alarm**; trim plants and bushes, etc.

Crime prevention units educate community on crime prevention strategies through the media, public engagements, website and direct communications.

Involving local communities and working to gain their **confidence** increase police efforts to prevent crime.

Study Skills

3. Learn the vocabulary.

advice <i>n</i>	совет, рекомендация
alarm <i>n</i>	аварийная, тревожная сигнализация
burglar alarm	охранная сигнализация
approach <i>v</i>	приближаться, подходить
attractive <i>a</i>	привлекательный
belongings <i>n</i>	вещи; принадлежности
careful <i>a</i>	осторожный, осмотрительный
charge <i>v</i>	поручать, возлагать ответственность
community <i>n</i>	население, жители микрорайона
concern <i>v</i>	касаться
current <i>a</i>	текущий, современный
decrease <i>v</i>	уменьшать, сокращать
designed <i>a</i>	предназначенный; рассчитанный
engagement <i>n</i>	встреча
enhance <i>v</i>	увеличивать, усиливать, улучшать
evaluate <i>v</i>	оценивать; давать оценку; составлять мнение
gain <i>v</i>	добиться, завоевать
gain smb's confidence	завоевать доверие
familiarize <i>v</i>	знакомить

focus <i>v</i>	сосредоточивать, обращать (внимание)
free <i>a</i>	бесплатный
implement <i>v</i>	выполнять, осуществлять
improvement <i>n</i>	улучшение, усовершенствование; исправление
install <i>v</i>	установить
landscape <i>n</i>	ландшафт, пейзаж
lock <i>v</i>	закрывать
maintain <i>v</i>	поддерживать, сохранять
neighborhood <i>v</i>	микрорайон; квартал; район
offer <i>v</i>	предлагать
opportunity <i>n</i>	возможность
owner <i>n</i>	собственник, владелец
plant <i>n</i>	растение
provide <i>v</i>	обеспечивать, предоставлять (информацию)
range <i>n</i>	ряд
reduce <i>v</i>	понижать, сокращать, уменьшать
remove <i>v</i>	удалять; устранять
resident <i>n</i>	житель
safety <i>n</i>	безопасность
shortcut <i>n</i>	кратчайшее расстояние; путь напрямик
step <i>n</i> to take steps to do smth	действие принимать меры, чтобы сделать что-либо
sight <i>n</i>	поле зрения, видимость
target <i>n</i>	мишень; объект
tip <i>n</i>	совет
traffic <i>n</i>	транспорт
trim <i>v</i>	подрезать; подстригать
valuables <i>n</i>	ценные вещи, ценности; драгоценности
vehicle <i>n</i>	автомобиль
unattended <i>a</i>	оставленный без присмотра
watch <i>n</i> neighborhood watch	наблюдение надзор соседей; программа наблюдения за микрорайоном, осуществляемая самими жителями

4. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1 enhance	a бесплатный
2 charge	b уменьшать
3 reduce	c улучшать
4 familiarize	d возможность
5 free	e возлагать ответственность
6 offer	f предлагать
7 opportunity	g рекомендация

8	implement	h	знакомить
9	advice	i	вне поля зрения
10	evaluate	j	выполнять
11	improvement	k	путь напрямик
12	unattended	l	тревожная сигнализация
13	out of sight	m	усовершенствование
14	shortcut	n	оценивать
15	alarm	o	доверие
16	confidence	p	оставленный без присмотра

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	возлагать обязанность	a	enhance the quality of life
2	ознакамливать с тенденциями преступности	b	reduce criminal opportunities
3	повысить качество жизни	c	offer free services
4	предлагать бесплатные услуги	d	familiarize with crime trends
5	уменьшение возможности криминальных проявлений	e	be charged with a duty
6	предоставить рекомендацию	f	decrease chances
7	уменьшить шансы	g	implement programs
8	осуществлять программы	h	provide with advice
9	завоевать доверие	i	gain confidence
10	обучать через средства массовой информации	j	recommend security improvements
11	сумки, оставленные без присмотра	k	stay safe
12	рекомендовать улучшение мер безопасности	l	educate through the media
13	выбирать кратчайший путь	m	unattended bags
14	устанавливать охранную сигнализацию	n	keep out of sight
15	держаться вне поля зрения	o	take shortcuts
16	оставаться в безопасности	p	install a burglar alarm

6. Match the antonyms.

1	reduce	a	doubt
2	lock	b	danger
3	safety	c	lose
4	less	d	increase
5	gain	e	more
6	confidence	f	unlock
7	careful	g	far
8	current	h	ugly

9 close
10 attractive

i old
j careless

7. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

Crime prevention unit; reduce criminal opportunities; designed to all ages; familiarize residents; current crime trends; to remove criminal opportunity; Neighborhood Watch; provide residents with crime prevention advice; vehicle security; a trained crime prevention officer; to make the house a less attractive target; lighting; landscape; helps stay safe; prevent crime; keep home secure; keep documents and money out of sight; carry close to you; not hear the traffic; someone approaching you; install a burglar alarm; lock the car doors; trim plants; through the media; gain public confidence; increase police efforts to prevent crime.

8. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Возложены обязанности
2. Уменьшить вероятность стать жертвой преступления
3. Повысить качество жизни в районе
4. Поддержание крепких отношений между полицией и обществом
5. Посредством образовательных программ
6. Обучать мерам, которые необходимо предпринять
7. Осуществлять ряд превентивных программ
8. Безопасность пожилых людей
9. Предлагать ряд бесплатных услуг
10. Оценивать безопасность дома
11. Давать рекомендации по улучшению безопасности
12. Обращать внимание на конструкцию здания и систему безопасности; практические рекомендации
13. Не оставляйте сумки без присмотра
14. Не ходите в темное время суток коротким путем, «напрямик»
15. Не оставляйте ценные вещи в машине
16. Обучать методам предотвращения преступности
17. Встречи с общественностью
18. Привлечение местного населения

9. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 a child crime prevention program using the American National Crime Prevention Council's crime fighting symbol to teach children a variety of basic crime prevention tools
- 2 a program of systematic local vigilance by residents of a neighborhood to discourage crime, especially burglary
- 3 give (someone) knowledge or understanding of something
- 4 the feeling or belief that one can have faith in or rely on someone or something
- 5 keep (something) from happening

- 6 an electric device that makes a bell ring loudly if someone tries to enter a building by force
- 7 make or become smaller or fewer in size, amount, intensity, or degree
- 8 a quicker way of getting somewhere than the usual route
- 9 guidance or recommendations concerning careful future action, typically given by someone regarded as knowledgeable or authoritative

10. Use the words / phrases in the box on the right to make word combinations with the words on the left:

e.g. crime prevention units

crime prevention reduce / decrease programs residents / community(ies)	units; designed to all ages and all community; programs; educate; officer; educate; crimes; criminal opportunities; chances; provide with advice; informational and educational; offer free services to; advice; familiarize; involving

11. Choose the correct word / words.

1. Crime prevention units are charged with a duty to reduce criminal **opportunities / tendencies**.

2. The goal of the crime prevention officer is to enhance the **quantity / quality** of life in the neighborhood.

3. The crime prevention units educate residents what steps **can be taken / can be kept** to reduce crimes.

4. **To familiarize / To remove** criminal opportunity in the community crime prevention units implement a range of crime prevention programs.

5. Crime prevention officers provide residents with crime prevention **model / advice** concerning personal, property, home safety, and vehicle security, etc.

6. A trained crime prevention officer inspects and evaluates a residence and recommends **a sense of security / security improvements** to make the house a less attractive target.

7. The **examination / report** focuses on a building structure, landscape, lighting, alarms, doors and windows and any other necessary measures.

8. Practical advice helps stay **calm / safe**, prevent crime and keep home secure.

9. Involving local communities and working to gain their confidence increase police **efforts / numbers** to prevent crime.

12. Find to the underlined words synonyms given in the box.

win; measures; car; decrease; opportunities; increase; area; activities; put into practice; inhabitants; offer; inspection; modern; tip

1. Crime prevention units are charged with a duty to reduce criminal opportunities.

2. The goal of the crime prevention officer is to decrease residents' chances of being a victim of crime and enhance the quality of life in the neighborhood.

3. The crime prevention units familiarize residents with current crime trends and educate them what steps can be taken to reduce these crimes.

4. To remove criminal opportunity in the community crime prevention units implement a range of crime prevention programs.

5. Crime prevention units offer a number of free services to residents and business owners.

6. Crime prevention officers provide residents with crime prevention advice concerning personal, property, home safety, and vehicle security, etc.

7. The examination focuses on a building structure, landscape, lighting, alarms, doors and windows and any other necessary measures.

8. Involving local communities and working to gain their confidence increase police efforts to prevent crime.

13. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations with the verbs:

**(don't, never) leave; (don't, never) take; lock; keep; (don't) carry;
install; park; trim; avoid using**

personal stereos; bags locked; home secure; valuables in the car; (bags) close to you; the bags unattended; shortcuts through badly-lit areas, in well-lit areas; a burglar alarm; documents and money out of sight; doors and windows; plants and bushes

Watching 1

Pre-viewing

14. Think and say. What practical crime prevention advice do police provide?

15. Learn the words.

Pass	обмениваться (информацией)
parking lot	автостоянка, парковка
waste time	тратить время зря
immediately	тотчас же, сразу
grocery store	продуктовый магазин
recreate	отдыхать

foothill	предгорье
expect	ждать, ожидать
remember	помнить
shopping cart	тележка для покупок
answer the door	открыть дверь
stranger	незнакомец
be aware of one's surroundings	знать, кто тебя окружает
trust instincts	доверять инстинктам

16. Watch the video “Personal Safety Tips” and choose the correct option.

1. Having your keys out and ready in your hand when approaching your vehicle is necessary:
 - a) not to waste time entering the vehicle
 - b) not to lose the key
 - c) to enter the vehicle
2. Getting into the car you should immediately lock the doors:
 - a) and keep the windows locked
 - b) to safeguard from anyone disturbing you
 - c) to safeguard from anyone entering it
3. Always let someone know where you are going, that way:
 - a) they'll know when you are back
 - b) they'll know when expect you back
 - c) they'll know when and where to connect with you
4. When leaving your vehicle always ... and lock your car doors.
 - a) put your valuables into your bag
 - b) ensure you take the keys out of the ignition
 - c) take valuables with you or put them out of sight
5. When out shopping or in public places always:
 - a) keep your valuables on your person at all times, never in a shopping cart
 - b) ask someone to accompany you
 - c) stay calm and be aware of your surroundings
6. When at home:
 - a) keep the record of all your valuables. It may help police to identify them if they get stolen
 - b) keep your doors and windows locked
 - c) lock doors and windows and install a burglar alarm
7. When answering the door to a stranger:
 - a) never tell the visitor you are home alone
 - b) never let a stranger in, even to use the bathroom or the phone
 - c) be cautious about the information you provide
8. When on the phone or online never give out:
 - a) your name, phone number, or address
 - b) your personal information
 - c) your full password or any other security details

Post viewing

17. Fill the table with crime prevention measures dividing phrases into four groups based on the object of safety. Use tasks 13 and 16 if necessary.

Safety	Preventive Measures
Personal	• be aware of your surroundings • if something doesn't feel right, remove yourself from that situation • trust your instincts
Property	• never leave your luggage unattended
Vehicle	
Home	• trim plants and bushes

18. You are a crime prevention officer providing education on personal, property, vehicle and home safety. Use the ideas below and appropriate language to say some sentences relevant to crime prevention advice.

Useful vocabulary

- A useful suggestion would be ...
- It would be a good idea to ...
- Another solution is to ...
- Steps / Measures should be taken in order to solve / deal with
- It would help to deter muggers / burglars
- By doing this you may stop thieves / robbers

*e.g. We all like to feel safe and secure. Each of us is responsible for our own **personal safety**, and the best defense is prevention. Be aware of your surroundings. Trust your instincts. Remember, if something doesn't feel right, remove yourself from that situation. A useful suggestion would be to avoid using mobile devices or personal stereos. You may not hear the traffic or someone approaching you. This would help to deter aggressor. Another solution is ...*

19. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective	Verb
	victimized	
reduction		
	familiar	
		reside
	educated	
		communicate
provision		

	preventive	
maintenance		
	improved	
		save

20. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Crime **(0) prevention** units are charged with a duty to **(0) prevent** reduce criminal opportunities. The goal of the crime prevention officer is to decrease residents' chances of being a **(1) ...** of crime. The crime prevention officer is **(1) victimize** responsible for **(2) ...** strong police — community relations **(2) maintain** through informational and educational programs designed to all ages and all community. The crime prevention units **(3) ...** residents with current crime trends. Crime **(3) familiarity** prevention units offer a number of free services to **(4) ...** and business owners. Crime prevention officers **(5) ...** residents with crime prevention advice concerning **(4) residing** personal, property, home **(6) ...** and vehicle security, etc. A **(5) provided** trained crime prevention officer inspects and evaluates a **(6) safe** residence and recommends security **(7) ...** . Practical advice helps stay safe, **(8)...** crime and keep home secure. Crime prevention units **(9)...** community on crime prevention **(7) improved** strategies through the media, public engagements, website **(8) prevention** and direct **(10)** **(9) education**

(10) communicate

21. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

implement; are charged; safe; familiarize; decrease; community; all ages; advice, educate; improvements; prevent; free

1. Crime prevention units ... with a duty to reduce criminal opportunities.
2. The goal of the crime prevention officer is to ... chances of being a victim of crime and enhance the quality of life in the neighborhood.
3. The crime prevention officer is responsible for maintaining strong police — ... relations through informational and educational programs designed to
4. The crime prevention units ... residents with current crime trends and educate them what steps can be taken to reduce these crimes.
5. Crime prevention units ... a range of crime prevention programs such as Neighborhood Watch, Personal Safety, Businesses Watch, Senior Citizen Safety.
6. Crime prevention units offer ... services to residents and business owners.

7. Crime prevention officers provide residents with crime prevention ... concerning personal, property, home safety, and vehicle security, etc.
8. A trained crime prevention officer inspects and evaluates a residence and recommends security
9. Practical advice helps stay..., prevent crime and keep home secure.
10. Crime prevention units ... community on crime prevention strategies through the media, public engagements, website and direct communications.
11. Involving local communities and working to gain their confidence increase police efforts to ... crime.

22. Find in the sentences infinitive and infinitive construction.

1. We all like to feel safe and secure.
2. Police consider crime prevention to be a primary objective.
3. The Crime Prevention Department exists to 'work in partnership to prevent or ☐ behavior the harm caused by acts of crime and anti-social ☐ behavior'.
4. To reduce the likelihood of being targeted by criminals, we need to use common sense.
5. Learn to trust your instincts.
6. Walk confidently, with a purpose; this will make you less likely to be attacked.
7. As a parent, one of your responsibilities is to teach your children how to protect themselves and respond to threatening situations.
8. We suggest you limit your alcohol consumption, as you are more likely to have an accident or fall victim to crime when drunk.
9. The minimum age to purchase alcohol in the UK is 18.
10. In the UK, it is a criminal offence to carry weapons such as knives and guns.
11. November, the month you're most likely to be burgled.
12. Police data reveals that burglars are more likely to strike during the day when the home is unoccupied.
13. He remembered to lock the doors.
14. He remembers locking the doors.

23. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. The sentence starts from the word in bold.

1. **What duty** / prevention / charged with / are / units / crime?
2. **What** / is / the goal / of the crime / prevention / officer?
3. **What** / responsible for / prevention / the crime / officer / is?
4. **What** / residents / familiarize with / the crime prevention units / do?
5. **What programs** / the crime prevention units / do / implement?
6. **What** / do / provide with / crime prevention officers / residents?
7. **Are** / services / free / these?
8. **What way** / do / community / crime prevention units / educate?
9. **You** / take / not / through / shortcuts / alleys / dark / and parks / should.

10. **What practical advice** / citizens / safe / officers / provide / can / to help stay?

11. **Involving** / local / and working / their **confidence** / to gain / increase / police efforts / crime / communities / to prevent.

24. Fill in: less attractive; familiarize; offer; enhance; designed to; community relations; victim; out of sight; well-lit; recommend; unattended; safe; remove; advice; home; focus on; programs; a burglar alarm; confidence; decrease. **Make sentences based on the text using the phrases.**

1	 with crime trends	11	... of crime
2	... criminal opportunities	12	... free services
3	... chances of being a victim	13	crime prevention ...
4	... the quality of life	14	install ...
5	gain ...	15	... security improvements
6	police — ...	16	... landscape and a building construction
7	stay ...	17	... all ages and all community members
8	make the house ...	18	keep ... secure
9	... bags	19	... areas
10	keep ...	20	implement ...

25. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Crime prevention units are charged with the duties to
2. The goal of crime prevention officers is to decrease
3. The crime prevention officer is responsible for
4. The crime prevention units familiarize residents with
5. To remove criminal opportunity in the community crime prevention units implement
6. Crime prevention units offer free
7. Crime prevention officers provide residents with
8. A trained crime prevention officer inspects and evaluates
9. The examination focuses on a building structure, ...
10. Practical advice helps stay safe, ...
11. Crime prevention units educate community through the media, ...
12. Involving local communities and working to gain their confidence

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and Speaking

Pre-listening

25. Think and say. What home security tips would you recommend?

26. Before listening, try to remember the following words.

alarm	аварийная сигнализация, тревожная сигнализация
burglar alarm	охранная сигнализация
bolt	засов, задвижка
break (into)	вламываться
climb	взбираться, влезать
cut	подстригать
deterrent	сдерживающее средство
empty	пустой
expensive	дорогой
fence	забор, изгородь, ограждение
inside	внутри
internal	внутренний
invitation	приглашение
ladder	лестница
lock n	замок, запор
motion detection lighting	лампочка с датчиком движения
notice	замечать
outside	снаружи
perfect	идеальный; совершенный, безупречный
plant	растение
quiet	тихий, спокойный
remove	убирать, удалять
request	обращаться с просьбой; запрашивать
roof	крыша
spyhole	(дверной) глазок
timer switch	переключатель таймера
tool	инструмент
wooden	деревянный

27. Listen to the conversation between local crime reduction officer Lefkaditis and a home owner who is anxious about protecting his property from the risk of burglary. Make the statements true (T) or false (F).

- 1 The front door is strong
- 2 The homeowner needs to put a bolt on the front door

- 3 There's a spyhole in the front door
- 4 There are timer switches in every room
- 5 There's a door chain on the kitchen door
- 6 Some window locks are broken

28. a) Complete the chart below. Listen to the talk once again to check the task.

Noun (s)	put	close	remove
door chain (front / kitchen door)			
windows			
keys in the window locks			

b) Use the ideas to say some suggestions to the home owner.

e.g. He should put a door chain on the front door.

- put a door chain / on the front door / kitchen door /
- close / some windows
- remove / the keys / from the window locks
- don't leave / so many windows / open

29. a) Look at the picture of the outside of the homeowner's property. Decide what security problems are. Complete the list below.

Wooden fence, no security system, ...



b) Decide what advice should be given to decide each problem. Put down verbs of advice. Use the vocabulary list if necessary.

Change, ...

30. Listen to Part II. Make the statements as true (T) or false (F).

1. Plants and bushes are a perfect place to hide.
2. Mr Riviere should paint his wooden fence.
3. There is a very good security system in the house.

4. Empty boxes should be removed immediately as they show that the owner has just bought some very expensive equipment.
5. The ladder and tools never help a burglar to break into the house.
6. A spyhole should be installed into the garage door.
7. As it is very hot it's better not to close all windows.

31. Listen and complete the conversation.

- Officer:** I always ask people to look at their homes through the eyes of a burglar. How does your house look to you?
- Owner:** I think it's quite **1)** What do you advise?
- Officer:** The plants and bushes in front of your house area are a perfect place to hide. You should **2)** ... your fence and remove or **3)** ... some of the plants.
- Owner:** I'll certainly do that.
- Officer:** You don't have any **4)** I recommend that you **5)** ... a burglar alarm and some motion detection lighting.
- Owner:** OK.
- Officer:** You should **6)** ... those empty boxes immediately as they show that the owner has just bought some very expensive equipment. A burglar could use the ladder and tools to **7)** ... into the house and get into your house through the ... bedroom window. Remove your ladder and toolbox. Don't forget to **8)** ... your garage door and lock your windows.
- Owner:** Absolutely.

32. With a partner, act out the roles of a crime prevention officer and an owner.

Useful language	
Asking for advice	Giving advice
Do you think I should ...?	You should / shouldn't ...
What do you advise?	The best thing to do is ...
What can / should I do?	It's best not to ...
	I recommend that you ...
	Don't forget to ...
	So remember to ...

33. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1 What are the duties of crime prevention units?	A To remove criminal opportunity in the community crime prevention units implement a range of crime prevention programs such as Neighborhood Watch, Personal Safety, Businesses Watch, Senior Citizen Safety, McGruff Program, etc.
2 What are crime prevention officers responsible for?	B Crime prevention units educate community on crime prevention strategies through the media, public engagements, website and direct

		communications
3	What do crime prevention units do to remove criminal opportunity in the community?	C Crime prevention officers provide residents with crime prevention advice concerning personal, property, home safety, and vehicle security, etc. These services are free of charge
4	What do crime prevention officers provide residents with? Are these services free of charge?	D Crime prevention units are charged with duties to reduce criminal opportunities and to decrease residents' chances of being a victim of crime
5	What way do crime prevention units educate community?	E To protect personal safety one should keep the following steps: when waking convey a sense of confidence, be aware of people around, make a brief eye contact with them, try to avoid shortcuts and don't use mobile devices or personal stereos. Useful suggestions to protect your belongings would be: carry bags close to you, carry only the cash you need; keep documents, money out of sight. Recommendations concerning the protection of the house could be the following: install the alarm, lock doors and windows
6	What practical advice can officers provide to help citizens stay safe, prevent crime and keep home secure?	F Crime prevention officers are responsible for maintaining strong police-community relations through informational and educational programs designed to all ages and all community
7	What increases police efforts to prevent crime?	G Involving local communities and working to gain their confidence increase police efforts to prevent crime

34. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 34. Then, switch roles.

Cadet A: You are a **cadet**. Ask Cadet B about his duties and responsibilities.

Cadet B: You are an **officer** of the Boise Police Crime Prevention Unit. Talk to Cadet A about the goals of your unit, officers' duties , education programs and services provided to residents and the community

35. Make notes under the following headings. Use notes to give the summary of the text.

- Crime prevention units
- Crime prevention officers
- Community-based crime prevention programs
- Crime prevention advice

36. Speak on the main responsibilities of crime prevention officers and programs they implement.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The crime prevention officer is responsible for ... strong police-community relations through informational and educational programs designed to all ages and all community.

- a) improving
- b) maintaining
- c) establishing

2. Crime prevention units implement a range of crime prevention programs such as ... Watch, Businesses Watch, Senior Citizen Safety, McGruff Program.

- a) Community
- b) Neighbor
- c) Neighborhood

3. A trained crime prevention officer inspects and evaluates a residence and recommends security improvements to make the house a less ... target.

- a) attractive
- b) beautiful
- c) vulnerable

4. Practical ... helps stay safe, prevent crime and keep home secure.

- a) activity
- b) advice
- c) method

5. While shopping or in public places residents are advised to keep their bags locked and carry close to you and never ... bags unattended.

- a) take
- b) keep
- c) leave

2. **Fill in:** advice; offer; enhance; remove; out of sight; well-lit; unattended; safe; programs; decrease.

- 1 ... free services
- 2 ... criminal opportunities
- 3 ... chances of being a victim
- 4 ... the quality of life
- 5 implement ...
- 6 provide ...
- 7 stay ...
- 8 ... areas
- 9 ... bags
- 10 keep ...

3. Choose the correct word / words.

1. Crime prevention units are charged with a duty to reduce criminal **opportunities / tendencies**.
2. The goal of the crime prevention officer is to enhance the **quantity / quality** of life in the neighborhood.
3. The crime prevention units educate residents what steps **can be taken / can be kept** to reduce crimes.
4. **To familiarize / To remove** criminal opportunity in the community crime prevention units implement a range of crime prevention programs.
5. Crime prevention officers provide residents with crime prevention **model / advice** concerning personal, property, and home safety etc.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. Crime prevention units offer ... services to residents and business owners.
2. Crime prevention officers provide residents with crime prevention ... concerning personal, property, home safety, and vehicle security, etc.
3. A trained crime prevention officer inspects and evaluates a residence and recommends security
4. Practical advice helps stay..., prevent crime and keep home secure.
5. Involving local communities and working to gain their confidence increase police efforts to ... crime.

5. Choose the correct sentence.

- 1.1. What the duties of crime prevention units are?
- 1.2. What are the duties of crime prevention units?
- 1.3. Are the duties of crime prevention units?

- 2.1. What are crime prevention officers responsible for?
- 2.2. What crime prevention officers are responsible for?
- 2.3. What is crime prevention officers responsible for?

- 3.1. What does crime prevention officers provide residents with?
- 3.2. What are crime prevention officers provide residents with?
- 3.3. What do crime prevention officers provide residents with?

- 4.1. What practical advice can officers provide to help citizens stay safe?
- 4.2. What practical advice is officers provide to help citizens stay safe?
- 4.3. What practical advice can officers provided to help citizens stay safe?

- 5.1. What does police efforts to prevent crime increase?
- 5.2. What do increases police efforts to prevent crime?
- 5.3. What increases police efforts to prevent crime?

Module VII

CRIMINAL INVESTIGATION

Part A

Lead-in

- What does investigation mean?
- When is criminal investigation conducted?
- Who usually conducts criminal investigation?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

US Federal Agencies Conducting Criminal Investigations

There are four primary investigative agencies in the US federal government. Most agencies have investigative elements but do not focus on investigations. Primary jurisdiction for investigations of violations of all United States Codes is granted to the Secret Service, Federal Bureau of Investigation, Internal Revenue Service Criminal Investigations and Immigrations and Customs Enforcement offices. Each of these agencies has offices located across America and are also represented in U.S. offices abroad.

The Federal Bureau of Investigation (the FBI) conducts national security and criminal investigations, helping to protect against terrorism and foreign intelligence threats. They have jurisdiction for investigations involving more than 200 categories of federal laws including organised crimes, human trafficking, election fraud and crimes committed on Indian reservations. The agency also has jurisdiction over investigations involving multiple states and when other countries are involved in crimes committed within the United States.



Federal Bureau of Investigation Building

The Criminal Investigative Division (the CID) is a division within the Criminal, Cyber, Response, and Services Branch of the Federal Bureau of Investigation. The CID is the primary component within the FBI responsible for overseeing FBI investigations of traditional crimes such as narcotics trafficking and violent crime.

United States Secret Service (the USSS) is the primary investigative agency for crimes related to counterfeiting.

U.S. Immigration and Customs Enforcement (the ICE) is responsible for investigating violations of immigration and customs laws. This includes human smuggling, drug smuggling and violations of human rights.

Internal Revenue Service Criminal Investigation (the IRS-CI) conducts investigations of violations of the Internal Revenue Code. Their investigations can also include violations of the Bank Secrecy Act laws and money laundering though they do not have jurisdiction over those crimes.

Note:

Internal Revenue Service — Служба внутренних государственных доходов (Налоговое управление).

Multiple Choice

2. Read the text again. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. What federal agencies conduct criminal investigations in the USA?
 - a) The Federal Bureau of Investigation
 - b) The Criminal Investigative Division
 - c) The Secret Service, Federal Bureau of Investigation, Internal Revenue Service Criminal Investigations and Immigrations and Customs Enforcement offices
2. Which service conducts national security and criminal investigations, protects against terrorism and foreign intelligence threats?
 - a) The Secret Service
 - b) The Federal Bureau of Investigation
 - c) The Internal Revenue Service
3. What crimes does the U.S. Secret Service investigative?
 - a) Robberies
 - b) Violations of immigration and customs laws
 - c) Crimes related to counterfeiting
4. Who is responsible for investigations of violations of the Internal Revenue Code?
 - a) The Criminal Investigation division of the Internal Revenue Service
 - b) The U.S. Secret Service
 - c) The Immigrations and Customs Enforcement offices
5. Whose responsibility is the investigation of violations of immigration and customs laws?
 - a) The U.S. Secret Service
 - b) The Federal Bureau of Investigation
 - c) The Immigrations and Customs Enforcement offices

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Investigation Process

A criminal **investigation** is the process of discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and preserving evidence to prove the truth or falsity of an issue of law.

The goals of criminal investigation are to:

- Determine if a crime has been committed
- Legally obtain information and evidence to learn the identity of the individual(s) committing a crime
- Locate and arrest the suspect(s)
- Recover stolen **property**
- Present the best possible case to the prosecutor

The numerous functions performed by investigators include:

- Providing emergency assistance
- Securing the crime scene
- Photographing, videotaping and sketching
- Taking notes and writing reports
- Searching for, obtaining and processing physical evidence
- Obtaining information from witnesses and suspects
- Identifying suspects
- Conducting raids, **surveillances**, stakeouts and undercover assignments
- **Testifying** in court



The first officer to arrive at a crime scene is usually a patrol officer assigned to the area. In any preliminary investigation it is critical to establish priorities. It's necessary to handle **emergencies** first, and then secure the scene. Emergencies include a dangerous **suspect** at or near the scene or a gravely injured person. Any suspects at the scene should be detained and questioned, and then either released or arrested, depending on the circumstances. If a suspect has recently fled the scene, a general description of the suspect should be obtained, any vehicles, direction of travel, and any items taken. The information must be dispatched to headquarters immediately.

After emergencies are dealt with, the first and most important function is to protect the crime scene and evidence. All necessary measures are taken to secure the crime scene until the preliminary investigation is completed.

Once the scene is secured, the investigator proceeds with preliminary investigation. This includes measuring, photographing, videotaping and sketching the scene; searching for evidence: identifying, collecting, examining and processing physical evidence; questioning **victims**, witnesses and suspects; and recording all **statements** and observations in notes. The crime scene is preserved through these records.

As soon as possible, establish if a crime has been committed and determine when the crime occurred.

Despite a thorough preliminary investigation, many cases require a follow-up investigation. The follow-up investigation builds on what was learned during the preliminary investigation. It can be conducted by the officers who **responded** to the original call or, most often, by detectives or investigators, depending on seriousness and complexity of the crime.

The follow-up investigation includes checking the victim's **background**; talking to informants; determining who would benefit from the crime and who could plan the crime; tracing weapons and stolen property; and searching modus operandi and fingerprint files.

Even in those police departments having highly specialized investigation departments, the ultimate responsibility for solving crimes lies with all police personnel. It must be a cooperative, coordinated departmental effort. Cooperation and coordination of efforts is also required outside the police department. Investigations must interrelate not only with uniformed police officers but also with prosecutor's office, the defense counsel, physicians, the coroner or medical examiner and citizens. Criminal investigation is, indeed, a mutual effort.

All investigators, patrol officers or detectives, are more effective if they possess certain intellectual, psychological and physical characteristics. Effective investigators develop and retain information, apply technical knowledge, remain open-minded and objective and use logic. They are emotionally well-balanced, detached, inquisitive, suspecting, discerning, humble, self-disciplined and perseverant. Further, they are healthy, physically fit and have good vision and hearing.

Multiple Choice

4. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The first officer to arrive at a crime scene is usually:
 - a) a divisional inspector
 - b) a sergeant
 - c) a patrol officer assigned to the area
2. Emergencies at the crime scene include:
 - a) collecting physical evidence
 - b) a dangerous suspect at or near the scene or a gravely injured person
 - c) interviewing witnesses
3. After securing the crime scene the investigator:
 - a) proceeds with preliminary investigation
 - b) releases the suspect
 - c) talks to informants
4. Checking the victim's background; talking to informants; tracing weapons and stolen property; and searching modus operandi is done during:
 - a) the preliminary investigation
 - b) apprehending the criminal
 - c) the follow-up investigation

5. The ultimate responsibility for solving crimes:
 - a) depends on the crime committed
 - b) lies with all police patrol
 - c) lies with all police personnel
6. All investigators, patrol officers or detectives, are more effective if:
 - a) they have good cars
 - b) they possess certain intellectual, psychological and physical characteristics
 - c) they are well-paid

Study Skills

5. Learn the vocabulary.

apply <i>v</i>	применять
ascertain <i>v</i>	выяснить, устанавливать
assign <i>v</i>	назначать
assignment <i>n</i>	возложение обязанностей, назначение
assistance <i>n</i> emergency assistance	помощь, содействие помощь в чрезвычайных обстоятельствах
benefit <i>v</i>	извлекать пользу
circumstance <i>n</i>	обстоятельство
complete <i>v</i>	завершить
cooperation <i>n</i>	сотрудничество, содействие
coroner <i>n</i>	коронер (следователь, расследующий насиловственную или внезапную смерть)
defense <i>n</i> defense counsel	защита защитник, адвокат
depend on <i>v</i>	зависеть от
detached <i>a</i>	беспристрастный, независимый
detain <i>v</i>	задерживать, брать под стражу
discerning <i>a</i>	проницательный
discover <i>v</i>	обнаруживать
dispatch <i>v</i>	отправлять
effort <i>n</i> mutual effort	усилие общее усилие
emergency <i>n</i>	чрезвычайная (экстренная) ситуация
evidence <i>n</i> physical evidence searching for physical evidence obtaining physical evidence processing physical evidence	доказательство, улика вещественные доказательства поиск вещественных доказательств получение вещественных доказательств обработка вещественных доказательств
flee (fled, fled) <i>v</i>	бежать, исчезнуть
handle <i>v</i>	рассматривать, регулировать, управлять, обращаться с кем-либо

humble <i>a</i>	скромный
identify <i>v</i>	опознавать, устанавливать личность
injured <i>a</i> gravely injured	потерпевший получивший серьезные телесные повреждения
inquisitive <i>a</i>	любопытный
interrelate <i>v</i>	взаимодействовать
investigation <i>n</i> criminal investigation preliminary investigation follow-up investigation conduct investigation	расследование уголовное расследование предварительное расследование вторичный этап расследования провести расследование
issue <i>n</i> issue of law	вопрос спорный вопрос права
item <i>n</i>	предмет, вопрос
measure <i>n</i> take measures	мера принимать меры
modus <i>n</i> modus operandi	способ способ совершения преступления
occur <i>v</i>	случаться, происходить
open-minded <i>a</i>	с широким кругозором
perseverant <i>a</i>	настойчивый
physician <i>n</i>	врач
prepare <i>v</i>	приготавливать(ся)
preserve <i>v</i>	сохранять
prosecutor <i>n</i>	обвинитель
proceed <i>v</i>	продолжать
prove <i>v</i>	доказывать
provide <i>v</i>	обеспечивать
questioning <i>n</i>	допрос
recover <i>v</i>	взыскивать в судебном порядке, получать возмещение по суду
release <i>n, v</i>	освобождение, освобождать
remain <i>v</i>	оставаться
require <i>v</i>	требовать
responsibility <i>n</i>	ответственность, функция
retain <i>v</i>	сохранять
scene <i>n</i> crime scene secure the crime scene	место происшествия место совершения преступления защитить место происшествия
stakeout <i>n, v</i>	наблюдение, вести наблюдение
statement <i>n</i>	заявление, утверждение, показания
sufficient	достаточный

surveillance <i>n</i>	наблюдение, надзор
testify <i>v</i>	давать показания, свидетельствовать
thorough <i>a</i>	тщательный
tracing <i>n</i>	выслеживание
undercover <i>a</i>	тайный, секретный
vehicle <i>n</i>	транспортное средство
vision <i>n</i>	зрение, проницательность

6. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 detain	a требовать(ся)
2 circumstance	b утверждение, показания
3 release	c любознательный
4 dispatch	d обстоятельство
5 statement	e беспристрастный
6 questioning	f зависеть от
7 preserve	g оставаться
8 occur	h сотрудничество
9 remain	i допрос
10 depend on	j настойчивый
11 detached	k отправлять
12 inquisitive	l случаться, происходить
13 perseverant	m освобождение, освобождать
14 cooperation	n сохранять
15 require	o задерживать, брать под стражу

7. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1 процесс обнаружения, сбора, подготовки, идентификации и сохранения доказательств (улик)	a apply technical knowledge
2 определить, было ли совершено преступление	b after emergencies are dealt with
3 обнаружить место нахождения и арестовать подозреваемых	c securing the crime scene
4 вернуть украденную собственность	d searching for, obtaining and processing physical evidence
5 обеспечение экстренной помощи	e the process of discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and preserving evidence
6 охрана места преступления	f despite a thorough preliminary investigation
7 поиск, получение и обработка вещественных доказательств	g tracing weapons and stolen property
8 проведение рейдов, наблюдение	h gravely injured person

- ний, засад и операций под прикрытием
- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>9 человек, получивший серьезные телесные повреждения</p> <p>10 после того, как урегулированы экстренные ситуации</p> <p>11 принимаются все необходимые меры</p> <p>12 несмотря на тщательное предварительное расследование</p> <p>13 окончательная ответственность за раскрытие преступлений лежит на всем полицейском персонале</p> <p>14 применять технические знания</p> <p>15 обнаружение оружия и украденной собственности</p> | <p>i all necessary measures are taken</p> <p>j locate and arrest the suspect(s).</p> <p>k recover stolen property</p> <p>l conducting raids, surveillances, stakeouts and undercover assignments</p> <p>m providing emergency assistance</p> <p>n the ultimate responsibility for solving crimes lies with all police personnel</p> <p>o determine if a crime has been committed</p> |
|---|---|

8. Match the antonyms.

1 preserve 2 truth 3 writing 4 the first 5 arrive 6 arrest 7 preliminary 8 effective 9 healthy 10 include	a the last b ineffective c leave d reading e release f final g unhealthy h lose i exclude j falsity

9. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and preserving evidence; an issue of law; determine; legally obtain information; individual(s) committing a crime; recover stolen property; providing emergency assistance; securing the crime scene; conducting raids and surveillances; testifying in court; emergencies include; a gravely injured person; either released or arrested; vehicles; direction of travel; dispatched to headquarters; once the scene is secured; examining and processing physical evidence; ultimate responsibility; solving crimes; prosecutor's office; the defense counsel; emotionally well-balanced.

b) Определить, было ли совершено преступление; обнаружить местонахождение и арестовать преступника; поиск, получение и обработка веществен-

ных доказательств; получение информации от свидетелей и подозреваемых; опознание подозреваемых; патрульный офицер, назначенный на участок; предварительное расследование; крайне необходимо; определить приоритеты; должны быть задержаны; в зависимости от обстоятельств; недавно покинул место преступления; любые унесенные предметы; охранять место совершения преступления и улики; все необходимые меры должны быть приняты; приступить к предварительному расследованию; требуется также сотрудничество и координация усилий; должны взаимодействовать; коронер или судебно-медицинский эксперт; они обладают определенными интеллектуальными, психологическими и физическими характеристиками; применяют технические знания.

10. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Уголовное расследование — это процесс обнаружения, сбора, подготовки, идентификации и обработки информации, чтобы доказать правдивость или ошибочность спорного вопроса права
2. Обеспечение экстренной помощи
3. Законным способом получить информацию и доказательства, чтобы определить личность человека (личности людей), совершающего (совершающих) преступление
4. Представить дело обвинителю в наилучшем виде
5. Поиск, получение и обработка вещественных доказательств
6. Проведение рейдов, наблюдений, засад и операций под прикрытием
7. Дача показаний в суде
8. Первый офицер, который прибывает на место преступления (происшествия), — обычно патрульный офицер, назначенный на участок
9. Если подозреваемый недавно покинул место преступления, должно быть получено общее описание подозреваемого, описание транспортных средств, направление движения и любые взятые вещи
10. Когда место преступления защищено, следователь продолжает предварительное расследование
11. Последующее расследование (вторичный этап расследования) основывается на том, что было изучено во время предварительного расследования
12. При расследовании должно осуществляться взаимодействие не только с полицейскими, но также и с прокуратурой, адвокатами, врачами, патологоанатомом или судебно-медицинским экспертом и гражданами
13. Эффективно работающие следователи разрабатывают и сохраняют информацию, применяют технические знания, остаются непредвзятыми и объективными и используют логику

11. Match the words in bold in the text to their definitions.

- 1 giving evidence to make a formal statement , especially as a witness in court
- 2 a person injured or killed as a result of an event or circumstance
- 3 give a spoken or written answer; do something as a reaction to something
- 4 an official inquiry
- 5 a formal account of facts, especially to the police or in a court
- 6 a person deserving suspicion or distrust
- 7 something owned; a possession, esp. a house, land, etc.
- 8 a sudden state of danger, conflict, etc requiring immediate action
- 9 close observation, especially of a suspected person
- 10 a person's past experience, work, type of education, training, etc.

12. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the followings:

An(a) ... investigation...

An investigator...

is the process of discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and preserving evidence; proves the truth or falsity of an issue of law; provides emergency assistance; identifies suspects; locates and arrests the suspect(s); recovers stolen property; secures the crime scene; takes notes and writes reports; provides emergency assistance; searches for, obtains and processes physical evidence; obtains information from witnesses and suspects; testifies in court; preliminary; handles emergencies; is completed; is critical to establish priorities; questions victims, witnesses and suspects; follow-up; can be conducted by detectives or investigators; includes checking the victim's background; must be a cooperative, coordinated departmental effort; must interrelate with prosecutor's office, the defense counsel, physicians, the coroner or medical examiner and citizens; is a mutual effort; develops and retains information; applies technical knowledge; remains open-minded and objective and uses logic; is emotionally well-balanced, detached, inquisitive, suspecting, discerning, humble, self-disciplined and perseverant

13. Choose the correct word.

1. The first officer **to arrive / to leave** at a crime scene is usually a patrol officer assigned to the area.
2. Emergencies include a dangerous suspect at or near the scene or a gravely injured **vehicle / person**.
3. Any **suspects / witness** at the scene should be detained and questioned, and then either released or arrested, depending on the circumstances.
4. The first and most **interesting / important** function is to protect the crime scene and evidence.

5. Once the scene is secured, the investigator ***proceeds / stops*** with preliminary investigation.
6. The ***final / follow-up*** investigation builds on what was learned during the preliminary investigation.
7. The follow-up investigation includes checking the ***victim's / witnesses'*** background.
8. The follow-up investigation most often can be conducted by detectives or ***authorities / investigators***.
9. The ultimate responsibility for solving ***problems / crimes*** lies with all police personnel.
10. Investigations must ***interrelate / visit*** with prosecutor's office, the defense counsel, physicians, the coroner or medical examiner and citizens.
11. Criminal investigation is a ***mutual / difficult*** effort.
12. All investigators, patrol officers or detectives, are more ***known / effective*** if they possess certain intellectual, psychological and physical characteristics.

14. Match the words underlined in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

inquiry, have, establish, doctors, apprehended, happened, persons, protect, very important, beat, carried out, aims, giving testimony, seriously, looking for, has recently escaped from, things, at once, interrogating (interviewing), cooperate, defender, get, use

1. A criminal investigation is the process of discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and preserving evidence to prove the truth or falsity of an issue of law.
2. The goals of criminal investigation are to:
 - Determine if a crime has been committed.
 - Legally obtain information and evidence to learn the identity of the individual(s) committing a crime.
 - The numerous functions performed by investigators include:
 - Testifying in court
3. The first officer to arrive at a crime scene is usually a patrol officer assigned to the area.
4. In any preliminary investigation it is critical to establish priorities.
5. It's necessary to handle emergencies first; then secure the scene.
6. Emergencies include a dangerous suspect at or near the scene or a gravely injured person.
7. Any suspects at the scene should be detained and questioned, and then either released or arrested, depending on the circumstances.
8. If a suspect has recently fled the scene, a general description of the suspect should be obtained, any vehicles, direction of travel, and any items taken.
9. The information must be dispatched to headquarters immediately.
10. This includes measuring, photographing, videotaping and sketching the scene; searching for evidence: identifying, collecting, examining and processing physical evidence; questioning victims, witnesses and suspects.

11. As soon as possible, establish if a crime has been committed and determine when the crime occurred.

12. Investigations must interrelate not only with uniformed police officers but also with prosecutor's office, the defense counsel, physicians, the coroner or medical examiner and citizens.

13. All investigators, patrol officers or detectives, are more effective if they possess certain intellectual, psychological and physical characteristics.

14. Effective investigators develop and retain information, apply technical knowledge, remain open-minded and objective and use logic.

15. Complete the chart.

Verb	Adjective / Participle	Noun
discover		
	identified	
		information
locate		
	presented	
		prosecution
assign		
	established	
		injury
describe		
	stated	
		coordination
require		
	interrogated	
		investigation

16. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Criminal (0) **investigation** is an (1) ... science

that involves the study of facts, (2) ... to identify, locate and prove the guilt of a criminal. A complete criminal investigation can include (3) ..., interviews, (4) ..., evidence collection and preservation and (5) ... methods of investigation. Modern- day criminal investigations (6) ... employ many modern (7) ... techniques known collectively as forensic science. (8) ... investigation is an ancient science that may have (9) ... as far back as 1700 BC in the writings of the Code of Hammurabi. In the code it (10) ... suggested that both the accuser

(0) **investigate**

(1) **apply**

(2) **use**

(3) **search**

(4) **interrogate**

(5) **vary**

(6) **common**

(7) **science**

(8) **Crime**

(9) **root**

(10) **be**

and (11) ... had the right to present evidence they
(12) In the modern era criminal investigations
are most often done by (13) ... police (14)

(11) **accuse**
(12) **collect**
(13) **govern**
(14) **force**

17. Use the words and word combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

Emergencies, apply; department; circumstances; to protect; preliminary investigation; has been committed; follow-up; responsibility; a crime scene; characteristics

1. The first officer to arrive at ... is usually a patrol officer assigned to the area.
2. ... include a dangerous suspect at or near the scene or a gravely injured person.
3. Any suspects at the scene should be detained and questioned, and then either released or arrested, depending on the
4. After emergencies are dealt with, the first and most important function is ... the crime scene and evidence.
5. Once the scene is secured, the investigator proceeds with
6. It should be established if a crime ... and determined when the crime occurred.
7. Despite a thorough preliminary investigation, many cases require a ... investigation.
8. The ultimate ... for solving crimes lies with all police personnel.
9. Cooperation and coordination of efforts is also required outside the police
10. All investigators are more effective if they possess certain intellectual, psychological and physical
11. Effective investigators develop and retain information, ... technical knowledge.

18. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. The emergencies **to be dealt with** / **to deal with** are a dangerous suspect at the scene or a gravely injured person.
2. The first officer **to arrive** / **to be arriving** at the crime scene is usually a patrol officer assigned to the area.
3. After the scene is secured, the investigator should **proceed** / **to proceed** with preliminary investigation.
4. The crime laboratory is equipped **to deal with** / **dealing with** a wide range of physical evidence by means of chemical and other analysis.
5. Once an investigator arrives at a crime scene, he or she is responsible for collecting evidence **to use** / **to be used** in a case.
6. The investigator's job is **to prepare** / **to be prepared** the materials of the case for court hearing.
7. Investigators must record and preserve evidence **to ensure** / **to be ensuring** that it is available at trial and to prove that the articles produced at trial are those that were seized at the time of investigation.

8. **To solve / to have solved** a crime an investigator must conduct an investigation properly.

9. The members of Patrol Force usually are the first **to arrive / to be arrived** at the criminal scene.

10. The investigator interrogates the suspects **to determine / to be determined** if they are telling the truth or not.

11. The jobs **to be done / to do** by criminal investigators should be done correctly.

12. A basic function of investigators is **to conduct / to be conducted** a thorough, legal search at the scene of crime.

13. The goal of any search during an investigation, at the crime scene or elsewhere, is **to discover / to have discovered** evidence.

14. Evidence **to find / to be found** at crime scenes will help to establish that a crime was committed and what the specific crime was.

15. Crime scene investigators must **collect / to be collecting** and **preserve / to be preserving** material evidence found at the crime scene.

16. It is very important to understand what kind of evidence is necessary **to build / to have built** a case.

17. The goal of this process is to collect and preserve information **to aid / to be aided** in the investigation

19. Choose the correct item.

1. Protection of the crime scene and evidence were likely / is likely to be the first and most important function after emergencies are dealt with.

2. If a suspect appeared **to have fled / to flee** the crime scene, a general description of the suspect and vehicles should be obtained, and direction of travel.

3. The investigator is unlikely **to proceed / to be proceeded** with preliminary investigation before the scene is secured.

4. Immediate arrival of police at a crime scene is believed **to have resulted / to be resulted** in effective investigation.

5. The suspect is unlikely **to be identified / to identify** without witnesses and prints at the crime scene.

6. The investigation seems **to complete / to be completed**.

7. The victim appeared **to have known / to be known** the offender.

8. The victim appeared **to have been known / to know** by the offender very well.

9. Many cases **is supposed / are supposed** to require a follow-up investigation.

10. All investigators **are thought / was thought** to be healthy and physically fit.

20. Find in the text (Reading 2) and translate sentences with Infinitive or Infinitive Constructions.

21. Make up sentences (positive, negative, and interrogative from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **The first** / to arrive / at a crime / officer / scene / usually / is / officer / a patrol.
2. **It's** / to handle / first / the scene / emergencies; / then / secure / necessary.
3. **Emergencies** / a suspect / dangerous / or / a gravely / include person / injured.
4. **Any** / at the scene / be / should / questioned / and / detained / suspects.
5. **The information** / immediately / must / headquarters / be / dispatched / to.
6. **The first** / and / protect / function / important / is / to / the most / crime / scene.
7. **Many** / a follow-up / require / cases / investigation.
8. **The follow-up** / the victim's / includes / checking / investigation / background.
9. **Criminal** / a mutual / investigation / effort / is.
10. **Effective** / logic / apply / technical / investigators / and / use // knowledge.

22. Fill in: the suspects; emergency assistance; in court; priorities; information; committing a crime; technical knowledge; the crime scene; law; evidence; the area; the individuals; suspects; crimes; investigation; all statements; the suspect; emergencies; stolen property; person. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 preserving ...	11 testifying ...
2 an issue of ...	12 assigned to...
3 obtain ...	13 preliminary ...
4 the identity of ...	14 establish ...
5 individual(s) ...	15 handle ...
6 locate and arrest ...	16 gravely injured ...
7 recover ...	17 description of ...
8 providing ...	18 recording ...
9 securing ...	19 solving ...
10 identifying ...	20 apply ...

23. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. A criminal investigation is the process of discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and
2. The goals of criminal investigation are to:
 - Determine if a crime
 - Legally obtain information and evidence to learn
 - Locate and
 - Recover stolen
 - Present the best possible case to....

3. The numerous functions performed by investigators include:

- Providing emergency
 - Securing
 - Taking notes and writing....
 - Searching for, obtaining and processing
 - Obtaining information from
 - Identifying....
 - Testifying
4. The first officer to arrive at a crime scene is usually
 5. It's necessary to handle emergencies first; then
 6. Emergencies include a dangerous suspect at or near the scene or....
 7. Any suspects at the scene should be detained and questioned, and then either....
 8. Once the scene is secured, the investigator proceeds with....
 9. Preliminary investigation includes measuring, photographing, videotaping and ...; searching for evidence: ...; questioning ...; and recording
 10. The follow-up investigation builds on what was learned
 11. The follow-up investigation includes
 12. The ultimate responsibility for solving crimes lies with
 13. All investigators, patrol officers or detectives, are more effective if they possess
 14. Effective investigators develop and retain ..., apply ..., remain ... and objective and use....
 15. They are emotionally well-balanced, ...

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching a video and speaking

24. Watch the video “Criminal Investigation Career Overview” and do the tasks.

Before watching the video:

a) Revise the vocabulary.

investigate	detective
murder	operate
burglary	collect evidence
give first aid	interview witnesses
stop a fight	examine written records
patrol an area	interrogate prisoners
prevent crime	dangerous
work behind the scene	neighborhoods
fingerprints	safe

b) Learn the vocabulary.

few	мало
vital	жизненно важный, необходимый
well being	благополучие
however	однако
expert in firearm identification	эксперт, проводящий баллистическую экспертизу
handwriting	почерк
microscopic analysis	микроскопический анализ
emergency respond team	отряд особого реагирования
experience	опыт
promote	содействовать, продвигать (по службе)
plain clothes	обычная одежда
gather	собирать
conduct suspect surveillance	осуществлять наблюдение за подозреваемым
it goes without saying	само собой разумеется
satisfaction	удовлетворение

25. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	vital	a	содействовать, продвигать (по службе)
2	expert in firearm identification	b	почерк
3	handwriting	c	собирать
4	microscopic analysis	d	отряд особого реагирования
5	emergency respond team	e	опыт
6	experience	f	эксперт, проводящий баллистическую экспертизу
7	promote	g	микроскопический анализ
8	gather	h	осуществлять наблюдение за подозреваемым
9	conduct suspect surveillance	i	удовлетворение
10	satisfaction	j	жизненно важный, необходимый

26. While watching the video. Fill in the blanks.

1. Few people are more vital to everyone's safety and well being than
2. ... work behind the scenes as experts in firearms identification.
3. After three to five years of experience, some police officers may be promoted to....
4. Operating as plain clothes investigators, detectives ... for criminal cases.

5. They ... conduct suspect surveillance and interrogate prisoners.
6. It goes without saying, that the work of both — police officers and detectives
7. But people in this line of work have a satisfaction of knowing that they are making their cities, towns and neighborhoods

27. With a partner, act out the roles based on the video.

a) Cadet A is a second-year cadet of a Police College.

Cadet B is an investigator. Then, switch the roles.

Use such language as:

Cadet A:

- Could you tell me about ...?
- What are your duties as a police officer?
- What is the purpose of patrolling?
- Do all officers work at a crime scene?
- What is their work behind the scene?
- Can a policeman become a detective?
- How can a policeman become a detective?
- Does a detective wear a uniform?
- What are detectives' responsibilities?
- Is the work of detectives and policemen dangerous?
- Are you always satisfied with your work?
- When do you feel satisfaction with your work?

Cadet B:

- investigate murder or burglary
- give first aid
- stop a fight
- patrol an area to prevent crime
- few people are more vital to everyone's safety and well being than
- police officers and detectives
- work behind the scene as
- experts in fire-arms identification, handwriting and fingerprints or
- microscopic analysis
- members of special emergency respond teams
- may be promoted to detective
- operating as plain clothes investigators
- gather facts and collect evidence for criminal cases
- interview witnesses,
- examine written records,
- conduct suspect surveillance
- interrogate prisoners
- it goes without saying
- can be dangerous
- have a satisfaction of knowing
- they are making their cities, towns and neighborhoods safer for everybody

28. Watch the video about law students learning how to process a crime scene. Be ready to answer the questions on what you have seen.

1. What crime is the crime scene associated with?
2. What do the law students do first?
3. How do they mark each item at the crime scene?
4. What do they use for collecting evidence?
5. What do they write on evidence bags?

29. Before watching the video, learn the vocabulary.

securing	охрана
evidence evidence bag	улика, доказательство пакет для сбора доказательств (улик)
separating	разделение, отделение
separately	отдельно
seeing	осмотр
scanning	внимательное рассмотрение, изучение
sketching	зарисовка
collecting	сбор
documentation	документация
dusting	напыление
location	определение, обнаружение точного места нахождения
initials	инициалы
case case number	судебное дело номер дела
cloth	ткань
dry	сухой
rope	отгородить канатом (веревкой)

30. Watch the video and put the statements in the order they go in the video.

1. Separating the witnesses
2. Sketching the scene
3. Securing and collecting evidence
4. Securing the scene
5. Scanning the scene (for evidence)
6. Interviewing witnesses
7. Documentation

31. Answer the questions from task 28.

32. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1	How can criminal investigation be defined?	a	It's necessary to handle emergencies first; then secure the scene
2	What are the goals of criminal investigation?	b	Any suspects at the scene should be detained and questioned; a general description of the fled suspect, any vehicles, direction of travel, and any items taken should be obtained. The information must be dispatched to headquarters immediately
3	What are the main investigative functions?	c	Effective investigators develop and retain information, apply technical knowledge, remain open-minded and objective and use logic. They are emotionally well-balanced, detached, inquisitive, suspecting, discerning, humble, self-disciplined and perseverant. They are healthy, physically fit and have good vision and hearing
4	What are priorities in any preliminary investigation?	d	The follow-up investigation builds on what was learned during the preliminary investigation. It includes checking the victim's background; talking to informants; determining who would benefit from the crime and who could plan the crime; tracing weapons and stolen property; and searching modus operandi and fingerprint files
5	What are the main stages of the process of catching a suspect?	e	Providing emergency assistance; securing the crime scene; searching for, obtaining and processing physical evidence and information from witnesses and suspects; identifying suspects; testifying in court
6	What do emergencies include?	f	The investigator proceeds with preliminary investigation. This includes measuring, photographing, videotaping and sketching the scene; searching for evidence: identifying, collecting, examining and processing physical evidence; questioning victims, witnesses and suspects; and recording all statements and observations in notes

7	How are emergencies handled?	g	The ultimate responsibility for solving crimes lies with all police personnel. It must be a cooperative, coordinated departmental effort
8	What should be done after the emergencies are dealt with?	h	Determine if a crime has been committed; identify the individual(s) committing a crime; locate and arrest the suspect(s); recover stolen property, and present the case to the prosecutor
9	What does an investigator do after securing the crime scene?	i	After emergencies are dealt with, the first and most important function is to protect the crime scene and evidence
10	What does follow-up investigation include?	j	The process of catching a suspect has three stages: detection of a crime, preliminary investigation, and follow-up investigation
11	Who conducts the follow-up investigation?	k	Emergencies include a dangerous suspect at or near the scene or a gravely injured person
12	Who is mostly responsible for solving crimes?	l	A criminal investigation is the process of discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and preserving evidence to prove the truth or falsity of an issue of law
13	Who must investigators interrelate with?	m	It can be conducted by the officers, who responded to the original call or, most often, by detectives or investigators, depending on seriousness and complexity of the crime
14	How can effective investigator be characterized?	n	Investigations must interrelate not only with uniformed police officers but also with prosecutor's office, the defense counsel, physicians, the coroner or medical examiner and citizens. Criminal investigation is a mutual effort

33. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Definition and goals of criminal investigation
- Main functions of criminal investigation
- Preliminary investigation
- Follow-up investigation
- Characteristics of an effective investigator

34. Speak on criminal investigation.

Part B

Lead-in

Think and say:

- What are the main duties of an investigator?
- What is the man in the picture and what is he doing?



Reading 1

1. Read the text. Choose the most suitable headings from the list (A–I) for each part of the article. There is one extra heading which you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Criminal Investigator Job Duties

0	C	A criminal investigator does different things on different days, depending on how the case he or she is working on is proceeding. Every criminal case goes through a certain process before it is complete
1		Before a case can even begin, a criminal investigator has to evaluate it to make a plan of attack. That plan is what determines the order of the steps below
2		Once an investigator arrives at a crime scene, he or she is responsible for collecting evidence to be used in a case. This may involve taking fingerprints, taking pictures, conducting chemical tests, finding weapons, and anything else along those lines. This is one of the most crucial steps in crime scene investigation, and it must be done as soon as possible to preserve the crime scene evidence
3		In many cases, the evidence a criminal investigator collects will be sent to a forensics lab for analysis. The lab will then test the evidence for chemicals, DNA samples, traces of blood, etc.
4		Once the lab produces some results from a collection of evidence, the criminal investigators can begin identifying possible suspects for a case. There is no guarantee that these suspects actually committed the crime at hand, but this information gives investigators a chance to weed out the innocent
5		Most of the suspects that the crime scene investigators identify must be brought in for questioning. The investigators will then interrogate the suspects to determine if they are telling the truth or not
6		With the potentially guilty parties identified, the crime scene investigators can then go to court to testify about their findings. Their efforts will serve as a major part of the prosecution on a criminal case
7		If the criminal investigators did their jobs correctly, the guilty party or parties will be put behind bars. This is not always the outcome of a case, but it is a goal for most of them

Note:

Weed out the innocent — исключить (из числа подозреваемых) невиновных

- A. Suspect interrogation
- B. Evidence collection
- C. A day in the life of a criminal investigator
- D. Justice
- E. Suspect identification
- F. Release
- G. Case evaluation
- H. Court trial
- I. Forensic analysis

Reading 2

2. Read the text and be ready to do task 3 after the text.

Criminal Investigation

Criminal investigation is an ensemble of methods by which crimes are studied and criminals apprehended. The criminal **investigator** seeks to ascertain the methods, motives, and identities of criminals and the identity of victims and may also search for and interrogate witnesses. Investigations are divided into two parts: preliminary investigation, and follow-up investigation.

Preliminary investigation

The purpose of preliminary investigation is to determine whether or not a crime was committed and to identify a suspect or confirm a suspect's identity.

Most preliminary investigations are conducted by the members of Patrol Force since they usually are the first to arrive at the criminal scene. All officers designated to conduct preliminary investigation gather as much information as possible during this stage of investigation. The officers **responsible** for a preliminary investigation **interrogate** the suspect, find out personal information about the suspect such as age, address, phone number, family members, and report the incident fully and accurately and lay the responsibility on the follow-up investigators.

Follow-up Investigation

Follow-up investigation will be proceeded by the Senior Lead Officer, Sergeant and Lieutenant because they are usually responsible for deeper investigations. It may be possible for the patrol force to conduct follow-up investigations, but the priority is given to other class officers. In this stage of investigation, police department try to find more detailed information about the offenses and the suspects: review and analyze all previous reports prepared in the preliminary phase: conduct additional interviews with suspects, and preliminary investigating officers if necessary, conduct interrogations of all suspects, plan, organize and conduct crime scene searches for the purpose of gathering additional evidence: check criminal records of potential **suspects**; **identify** and apprehend suspects and interview apprehended suspects in order to determine their involvement in other crimes.

Criminal Investigator Job Duties

A criminal investigator is a person who conducts investigations for criminal cases. The job duties of a criminal investigator vary based on the crime on hand at the time. Each investigator goes through a different set of tasks each day but there are some common duties that happen in most cases. Those include:

- Examining case files
- Using law enforcement equipment
- Preparing evidence before a trial
- **Testifying** in court about a criminal case
- Gathering evidence at a crime scene
- Working with forensic scientists and psychologists
- Identifying suspects on a crime
- Recruiting witnesses for a criminal court **trial**

Notes:

On hand — *под рукой; имеющийся в распоряжении*

Senior Lead Officer — *старший офицер*

Study Skills

3. Learn the vocabulary.

ascertain v	устанавливать
a set (of) n	набор
based on a	основанный на
case n criminal case case file	случай, дело (судебное) уголовное дело картотека дел
common a	общий, обычный
confirm v	подтверждать, санкционировать
designate v	назначать, определять, устанавливать
determine v	определять
duty n common duty	обязанность общая обязанность
equipment n	оборудование, оснащение, техника
evidence n	улики, доказательства
examining n	рассмотрение, исследование, проверка
forensic a forensic scientist	судебный судебный эксперт
gather v	собирать
happen v	случаться, происходить
identify v	опознавать, устанавливать личность
identity n	личность
interrogate v	допрашивать, опрашивать

investigation <i>n</i> criminal investigation preliminary investigation follow-up investigation conduct investigation proceed investigation	расследование, дознание уголовное расследование предварительное расследование, дознание вторичный этап расследования провести расследование продолжить расследование
involvement <i>n</i>	вовлечение
prepare <i>v</i>	приготавливать(ся); подготавливать(ся)
questioning <i>n</i>	допрос
record <i>n</i> criminal record	запись, протокол, дело, досье досье преступника
report <i>n, v</i>	отчет, запись; записывать, отчитываться
responsibility <i>n</i> lay the responsibility (on)	ответственность, функция возлагать ответственность
scene <i>n</i> crime scene	место происшествия место совершения преступления
search <i>n</i> search for <i>v</i>	поиск, обыск, исследование искать
seek <i>v</i>	искать, пытаться, стремиться
since <i>adv</i>	так как
testifying <i>n</i>	дача показаний
vary <i>v</i>	изменять(ся)
victim <i>n</i>	пострадавший
witness <i>n</i>	свидетель

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 criminal investigation	a дача показаний
2 responsibility	b изменять(ся)
3 victim	c досье преступника
4 testifying	d определять
5 prepare	e уголовное расследование
6 criminal record	f свидетель
7 questioning	g уголовное дело
8 witness	h пострадавший
9 determine	i продолжить расследование
10 evidence	j оборудование
11 criminal case	k улики, доказательства
12 equipment	l подготавливать
13 vary	m судебный
14 forensic	n ответственность
15 proceed investigation	o допрос

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	совокупность методов, при помощи которых изучается преступление	a	working with forensic scientists and psychologists
2	предварительное расследование должно определить	b	confirm a suspect's identity
3	все офицеры, назначенные проводить предварительное расследование	c	review and analyze all previous reports prepared in the preliminary phase
4	вторичный этап расследования будет осуществляться	d	conduct crime scene searches for the purpose of gathering additional evidence
5	приоритет отдается другой категории офицеров	e	recruiting witnesses for a criminal court trial
6	рассмотреть и проанализировать все предыдущие отчеты, подготовленные на предварительном этапе	f	examining case files
7	провести осмотр места преступления с целью сбора дополнительных доказательств	g	an ensemble of methods by which crimes are studied
8	проверить досье потенциальных подозреваемых	h	in order to determine their involvement in other crimes
9	чтобы определить их причастность к другим преступлениям	i	each investigator goes through a different set of tasks each day
10	подтвердить личность подозреваемого	j	all officers designated to conduct preliminary investigation
11	ежедневно каждый следователь выполняет множество разнообразных задач	k	follow-up investigation will be proceeded by
12	проверка картотек дела	l	check criminal records of potential suspects
13	использование полицейского оборудования	m	using law enforcement equipment
14	работа с судебными экспертами и психологами	n	the priority is given to other class officers
15	подбор свидетелей для дачи показаний в суде	o	preliminary investigation is to determine

6. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Ensemble of methods; criminals are apprehended; ascertain the methods; the identity of victims; preliminary investigation; conduct investigation; conduct follow-up investigations; gather as much information as possible; lay the responsibility on;

stage of investigation; find out personal information; the follow-up investigators; responsible for deeper investigations; information about the offenses and the suspects; conduct interrogations of all suspects; gathering additional evidence; check criminal records; apprehend suspects; investigations for criminal cases; different set of tasks; common duties; preparing evidence before a trial; using law enforcement equipment; examining case files; testifying in court about a criminal case.

b) Вторичный этап расследования; следователь по уголовным делам; провести предварительное расследование; сотрудники патрульного подразделения; место преступления; собрать как можно больше информации; допросить подозреваемого; члены семьи; сообщить о происшествии; старший офицер; найти более детальную информацию; провести дополнительные опросы подозреваемых; организовать и провести осмотры места преступления; для того чтобы определить причастность к другим преступлениям; сбор информации на месте преступления; опознание подозреваемых в совершении преступления; работа с судебными экспертами и психологами; нахождение свидетелей для слушания дела в уголовном суде.

7. Match the antonyms.

1 apprehended	a leave
2 usually	b civil court
3 arrive	c impossible
4 responsible	d the last
5 possible	e exclude
6 necessary	f sometimes
7 include	g unnecessary
8 criminal court	h victim
9 witness	i released
10 the first	j irresponsible

8. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Уголовное расследование — это набор методов, при помощи которых изучаются преступления и задерживаются преступники.

2. Следователь по уголовным делам стремится определить методы, мотивы преступления, устанавливает личности преступников и потерпевших, а также может разыскивать и опрашивать свидетелей.

3. Цель предварительного расследования — определить, было ли совершено преступление, и опознать подозреваемого или подтвердить личность подозреваемого.

4. Офицеры, ответственные за предварительное расследование, допрашивают подозреваемых, находят персональную информацию о подозреваемом, такую как: возраст, адрес, номер телефона, члены семьи.

5. Вторичный этап расследования будет проводиться старшим офицером, сержантом или лейтенантом, потому что они обычно ответственны за более тщательное расследование.

6. На этом этапе расследования полицейский департамент пытается найти более детальную информацию о правонарушителях и подозреваемых: рассмотреть и проанализировать все предыдущие отчеты, подготовленные на предварительном этапе расследования.

7. Должностные обязанности следователя по уголовным делам варьируются в зависимости от преступления, которое он расследует в данное время.

8. Каждый следователь ежедневно выполняет множество различных задач, но есть некоторые общие обязанности, присущие большинству дел. Они включают:

- Проверку картотек дела
- Использование полицейского оборудования
- Подготовку доказательств для суда
- Дачу показаний в суде по уголовному делу
- Сбор доказательств на месте преступления
- Работу с судебными экспертами и психологами
- Идентификацию (опознание) подозреваемых в преступлении
- Подбор свидетелей для дачи показаний в суде

9. Match the words in bold in the text to their definitions.

- 1 a person deserving suspicion or distrust
- 2 a judicial examination and determination of issues between parties by a judge with or without a jury
- 3 to question sb. closely or aggressively and for a long time
- 4 giving evidence; making a formal statement, especially as a witness in court
- 5 establish the identity of; recognize
- 6 a person who investigates
- 7 morally accountable for one's actions

10. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the followings:

**Investigators
Criminals**

Conduct investigations; are apprehended; search for criminals; interview witnesses; commit crimes; are responsible for an investigation; interrogate suspects, violate laws; plan, organize and conduct crime scene searches; are interrogated; gather evidence; check criminal records of potential suspects; are searched for; go through a different set of tasks; are involved in crimes; examine case files; use law enforcement equipment; are identified; testify in court; work with forensic scientists and psychologists; recruit witnesses for a criminal court trial

11. Choose the correct word / words.

1. Criminal investigation is an ensemble of methods by which crimes are **committed / studied** and criminals apprehended.

2. **Investigations / Investigators** are divided into two parts: preliminary investigation, and follow-up investigation.

3. The purpose of preliminary investigation is to determine whether or not a crime was committed and to **identify / examine** a suspect or confirm a suspect's identity / address.

4. Most preliminary investigations **are searched / are conducted** by the members of Patrol Force.

5. All officers designated to conduct preliminary investigation gather as much **interrogation / information** as possible during this stage of investigation.

6. Follow-up investigation will be proceeded by the Senior Lead Officer, Sergeant and Lieutenant because they are usually responsible for **quick / deeper** investigations.

7. Follow-up investigators review and analyze all previous reports prepared in the **preliminary / criminal** phase.

8. In this **stage / day** of investigation, police department try to find more detailed information about the offenses and the suspects.

9. The job **cases / duties** of a criminal investigator vary based on the crime on hand at the time.

10. Each investigator goes through a different set of tasks every day but there are some common **reports / duties** that happen in most cases.

12. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. Evaluating information received during an interview or interrogation is an important area **to be discussed / to discussing**.

2. Sometimes a suspect may **be wanted / to want** for another crime.

3. The suspect had no time **to prepare / to be prepared** his lies.

4. **To establish / To have established** that a crime was committed and what specific crime was is an investigator's priority.

5. The elements of the crime help **to determine / to be determined** what will be useful as evidence.

6. Dogs can be trained **to track and locate / to have tracked and located** suspects, explosives and narcotics.

7. Information **to be processed / to process** is obtained during an investigation.

8. **To search / to be searched** a building an officer must have a warrant.

9. The type of crime determines the area **to be seared / to search**.

10. To be of value the evidence must **be legally seized / to legally seize** and properly and legally processed.

11. Fingerprints are a positive way **to prove / to be proving** that a suspect was at a crime scene.

12. Using dogs **to locate / to be located** narcotics greatly assists law enforcement officers.

13. ***To be searched / To have searched*** a vehicle may be taken to headquarters.

14. ***To search / To have searched*** effectively the investigator must know the legal requirements for searching the items being searched.

13. Use the words and word combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

Patrol Force, crimes; vary; preliminary investigation and follow-up investigation; responsible for; ascertain; conducts; was committed; involvement; duties

1. Criminal investigation is an ensemble of methods by which ... are studied and criminals apprehended.

2. The criminal investigator seeks to ... the methods, motives, and identities of criminals.

3. Investigations are divided into two parts:

4. The purpose of preliminary investigation is to determine whether or not a crime ... and to identify a suspect.

5. Most preliminary investigations are conducted by the members of

6. The Senior Lead Officer, Sergeant and Lieutenant are usually... deeper investigations.

7. The follow-up investigators interview apprehended suspects in order to determine their ... in other crimes.

8. A criminal investigator is a person who ... investigations for criminal cases.

9. The job duties of a criminal investigator ... based on the crime.

10. There are some common ... that happen in most cases.

14. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms.

occur; question; assigned; with the aim; differ; look for; crimes; aim; collect; participation; a set of; offenders

1. Criminal investigation is an ensemble of methods by which crimes are studied and criminals apprehended.

2. The purpose of preliminary investigation is to determine whether or not a crime was committed and to identify a suspect or confirm a suspect's identity.

3. The criminal investigator seeks to ascertain the methods, motives, and identities of criminals and the identity of victims and may also search for and interrogate witnesses.

4. All officers designated to conduct preliminary investigation gather as much information as possible during this stage of investigation.

5. In this stage of investigation, police department try to find more detailed information about the offenses and the suspects.

6. Preliminary investigating officers if necessary, conduct interrogations of all suspects, plan, organize and conduct crime scene searches for the purpose of

gathering additional evidence: check criminal records of potential suspects; identify and apprehend suspects and interview apprehended suspects in order to determine their involvement in other crimes.

7. The job duties of a criminal investigator vary based on the crime on hand at the time.

8. Each investigator goes through a different set of tasks each day but there are some common duties that happen in most cases.

15. Complete the chart.

Verb	Adjective / Participle	Noun
investigate		
	informed	
		identification
apprehend		
	designated	
		commission
interrogate		
	involved	
		preparation
enforce		
	equipped	
		gathering

16. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Criminal (0) **investigation** is an official effort to
 (1) ... information about a crime. In most cases,
 when a crime is (2) ... , officials have two primary
 concerns. They want to know who committed the
 crime, and what the motive was. The reason why a
 person (3) ... a law is called the motive. The motive
 (4) ... not always come after identifying the
 (5) ... in a criminal investigation. Sometimes the
 motive is suspected or (6) ... and used to catch the
 (7) This is often true with crimes such as (8) ...

- (0) **investigate**
- (1) **cover**
- (2) **commit**
- (3) **break**
- (4) **do**
- (5) **perpetrate**
- (6) **know**
- (7) **crime**
- (8) **kidnap**

and murders. Police and other officials may use a
 variety of (9) ... to conduct criminal investigations.
 They may use various (10) ... techniques such as
 fingerprint and ballistics analysis. Some (11) ...
 require investigation techniques that demand (12) ...
 knowledge or training that the (13) ... or their colleagues may
 not have.

- (9) **method**
- (10) **science**
- (11) **case**
- (12) **specialize**
- (13) **investigate**

17. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. A crime **is considered** / **was considered** an act in violation of a penal code.
2. Criminal investigation is known **to become** / **to have become** more scientific over years.
3. Each investigation **were believed** / **is believed** to be unique because no two crimes are identical even if they are committed by the same person.
4. The initial response **is considered** / **are considered** to be crucial to the success of investigation.
5. Photography proved **to become** / **became** important in criminal investigation because it can immediately preserve evidence.
6. Officers **are likely** / **is likely** to stop and question individuals based on information receiving from informants.
7. The search proved **to was** / **to be** reasonable.
8. The interior room search **is certain** / **were certain to** start at the point of entry.
9. A witness **was considered** / **is considered** (to be) a person who saw a crime or some part of it being committed.
10. Some evidence appeared **to have been destroyed** / **to destroy** at a crime scene.

18. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Investigations** / two / divided / into / are / parts: preliminary / follow-up / investigation / , and / investigation.
2. **Most** / investigations / are / preliminary / by / conducted / the members / of / Force / Patrol.
3. **All** / gather / officers / as / possible / as / much / information / during / investigation / preliminary.
4. **Follow-up** / will / investigation / be / by / proceeded / the / Lead / Officer / Senior.
5. **Police** / department / to / find / try / more / information / detailed / about / the / offenses / the / suspects / and.
6. **A criminal** / conducts / investigations / cases / investigator / for / criminal.
7. **Some** / most / include duties / common / in / cases:
 - **Examining** / files / case
 - **Preparing** / a trial / before / evidence
 - **Testifying** / criminal / in court / a case / about
 - **Gathering** / scene / evidence / at / a crime
 - **Working** / scientists / forensic / with / and / psychologists
 - **Identifying** / on / a crime / suspects

19. Fill in: the incident; victims; witnesses; at a crime scene; investigations; suspects; department; evidence; records; investigations; tasks; case files; evidence; in court; methods; witnesses; in other crimes; the responsibility. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1	ensemble of ...	10	check criminal ...
2	the identity of ...	11	records of potential ...
3	interrogate ...	12	determine involvement ...
4	preliminary...	13	different set of ...
5	report ...	14	examining ...
6	lay ...	15	preparing ...
7	conduct follow-up...	16	testifying ...
8	police...	17	gathering evidence ...
9	gathering additional...	18	recruiting ...

20. Complete the sentences according to the text.

- Criminal investigation is defined as ensemble of methods by which
- Investigations are divided into two parts:
- The purpose of preliminary investigation is to determine whether or not
- Most preliminary investigations are conducted by
- All officers designated to conduct preliminary investigation gather
- The officers responsible for a preliminary investigation interrogate the suspect, find out
- Follow-up investigation will be proceeded by the Senior Lead Officer, Sergeant and Lieutenant because
- Follow-up investigation includes: identifying and apprehending suspects; interviewing apprehended suspects in order to
- A criminal investigator is a person who
- The job duties of a criminal investigator vary on
- Some common duties that happen in most cases include:

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching a Video and Speaking

21. Watch the video “Criminal Investigation Process” and do the tasks.

Before watching the video:

1) Remember the vocabulary.

enforce laws	применять правовые нормы, законы
maintain public order	поддерживать общественный порядок
criminal behavior	криминальное поведение
responsibility	обязанность, ответственность
preserve the peace	сохранять мир (спокойствие)
community protection	защита населения

search	поиск, обыск
seize	хватать, схватить
detain	задерживать
interrogate	допрашивать
gather (collect) evidence	собирать доказательства
vehicle	транспортное средство
bail	залог
accomplice	сообщник
description	описание
witness	свидетель
victim	пострадавший, жертва
prosecution	преследование в судебном порядке
suspect	подозреваемый
threaten (with)	угрожать
demand	требовать
grab	хватать
run away	убежать
report a crime to police	сообщить о преступлении в полицию
be armed	быть вооруженным
resist	сопротивляться
catch red-handed	поймать на месте преступления
trace	выслеживать

After watching the video:

1) Be ready to answer the following questions:

1. Where does the action take place?
2. What type of crime is committed?
3. Is the robber armed?
4. Does the shop assistant resist?
5. Are there any witnesses to the crime?
6. Does the robber have an accomplice?
7. Have the police traced the criminal?
8. What is the key role of the police?
9. What are police responsible for when investigating crimes?
10. How should special legal powers influence the work of police?

2) Go through the choices and choose the one that fits best according to the video. (Sometimes there may be more than one choice).

1. The key role police is:
 - a) to enforce criminal laws
 - b) to maintain public order
 - c) to impose a sentence
2. When investigating crimes police are responsible for:
 - a) making arrests
 - b) collecting evidence for the prosecution of a criminal suspect

- c) probation
- 3. Police are also given:
 - a) good vehicles
 - b) firearms
 - c) special legal powers to carry out their role more effectively
- 4. The crime shown in the video is:
 - a) burglary
 - b) shoplifting
 - c) robbery
- 5. Finally one can see that the police:
 - a) apprehended the suspect
 - b) locate the suspect
 - c) release the suspect

22. With a partner, act out the roles based on the video.

Cadet A is a an investigator. Cadets B, C and D are witnesses.

Use such language as:

Cadet A:

- Did you see ...?
- Could you describe the robber?
- How did he look like?
- Was he alone?
- Did he have a weapon? (Was he armed?)
- Did he threaten the shop assistant?
- Did you see him take the money?
- What was he wearing?
- What make (colour) was the car?
- Have the police located the criminal?

Cadets B, C and D:

- the driver
- young
- average height
- dark haired
- dark brown eyes
- oval face
- moustache
- bushy eyebrows
- aquiline nose
- dark trousers
- dark shoulder-length hair
- rather plump
- light sneakers
- a light coat with a hood
- a dark cap
- syringe (шприц)
- rushed to the door
- nearly knocked me down

23. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1	What is criminal investigation?	a	Investigations are divided into two parts: preliminary investigation, and follow-up investigation
2	What does the criminal investigator seek to do?	b	A criminal investigator is a person who conducts investigations for criminal cases
3	How are the two parts of investigation called?	c	The members of Patrol Force are usually the first to arrive at the crime scene, that's why they conduct most preliminary investigations
4	What is the purpose of preliminary investigation?	d	They check criminal records of potential suspects: identify and apprehend suspects and interview apprehended suspects in order to determine involvement in other crimes
5	Who are most preliminary investigations conducted by?	e	All officers designated to conduct preliminary investigation gather as much information as possible during this stage of investigation
6	Why are most preliminary investigations conducted by the members of Patrol Force?	f	In this stage of investigation, police department try to find more detailed information about the offenses and the suspects: review and analyze all previous reports prepared in the preliminary phase: conduct additional interviews with suspects, and preliminary investigating officers if necessary, conduct interrogations of all suspects
7	What do preliminary investigators do?	g	Some common duties that happen in most cases include: examining case files; preparing evidence before a trial; testifying in court; gathering evidence at a crime scene; working with forensic scientists and psychologists; identifying suspects; recruiting witnesses for a criminal court trial
8	Who conducts follow-up investigations?	h	The criminal investigator seeks to ascertain the methods, motives, and identities of criminals and victims and may also search for and interrogate witnesses
9	How do follow-up investigators find more detailed information	i	The job duties of a criminal investigator vary on the crime on hand at the time?

about the offences and suspects?

- 10 How do preliminary investigating officers check the backgrounds of the suspects?



- 11 What investigations does a criminal investigator conduct?

Most preliminary investigations are conducted by the members of Patrol Force since they are usually the first to arrive at the criminal scene

- 12 What do job duties of a criminal investigator depend on?

Criminal investigation is an ensemble of methods by which crimes are studied and criminals apprehended

- 13 What are common investigative duties that happen in most cases?

The follow-up investigation will be proceeded by the Senior Lead Officer, Sergeant and Lieutenant because they are usually responsible for deeper investigations

- 14 What do you think successful crime investigation depend on?

The purpose of preliminary investigation is to determine whether or not a crime was committed and to identify a suspect or confirm a suspect's identity

24. With a partner, act out the roles below based on task 23.

Cadet A: You are a Russian policeman. Ask Cadet B about the investigative process in Britain and the work of a British investigator.

Cadet B: You are a British police officer (investigator). Answer cadet's A questions. *Use the language from task 23.*

25. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

1. The purpose of criminal investigation
2. Preliminary investigation
3. Follow-up investigation
4. Criminal investigator job duties

26. Speak on criminal investigation.

INTERVIEW AND INTERROGATION

Part A

Lead-in

- Do you know the difference between interview and interrogation?
- What is the purpose of interview and interrogation?

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

History of Miranda Warning

On June 13, 1966, the outcome of *Miranda v. Arizona* provided that suspects must be informed of their specific legal rights when they are placed under arrest. This decision was based on a case in which a defendant, Ernesto Miranda, was accused of robbery, kidnapping, and rape. During police interrogation, he confessed to the crimes.

The conviction was overturned due to allegedly intimidating police interrogation methods. After a retrial that included witnesses and other evidence, Miranda was again convicted. His trial was, however, then assured of being fair, and the original conviction was reasonably upheld without question. In 1968, the finalized text for the Miranda Warning was provided by California deputy attorney general Doris Maier and district attorney Harold Berliner. The Miranda Warning protects an individual's rights by explaining their options clearly and upholds police authority.

Ironically, Ernesto Miranda was stabbed to death in Phoenix, Arizona, on January 31, 1976, ten years after the initial decision. The suspect in his murder was arrested the following day and advised of his rights under the Miranda decision. The Miranda Warning is a legal necessity throughout the United States, and varies only slightly in its wording in different states.

Notes:

confess — признаваться

overturn a conviction — отменить осуждение

uphold original conviction — поддержать первоначальное осуждение

the Miranda Warning — «предупреждение Миранды» (зачитывается при аресте; разъясняет арестованному его конституционные права)

varies only slightly in its wording — незначительно отличается в формулировке

Multiple Choice

2. Listen to the text “Miranda Warning”. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text above.

1. The Miranda Warning:
 - a) is a warning against fire
 - b) explains the arrested his constitutional rights
 - c) is a warning against any danger
2. The purpose of the Miranda Warning is:
 - a) to establish corpus delicti
 - b) to punish the wrongdoer
 - c) to protect an individual’s rights and uphold police authority
3. Ernesto Miranda, was accused of:
 - a) robbery, kidnapping, and rape
 - b) burglary
 - c) drug trafficking
4. Ernesto Miranda’s conviction was overturned due to ...
 - a) the fact he was not guilty
 - b) allegedly intimidating police interrogation methods
 - c) the fact he died before his trial
5. What advantage did Miranda’s murderer use?
 - a) He was released
 - b) He was put in a solitary confinement
 - c) The suspect in his murder was arrested and advised of his rights under the Miranda decision

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Interview and Interrogation in the Investigation of Crime

Interrogation room

During the course of investigation an investigator depends on three major tools available to him which are instrumentation, information, and interview and **interrogation**.

An *interview* is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved. An *interview* is conducted in a cordial atmosphere where a witness is more comfortable physically and psychologically. Whenever a person is questioned in an uncomfortable atmosphere (interrogation room) where he or she is under the psychological pressure, it is an *interrogation*. An *interrogation* is the questioning of persons suspected of direct or indirect involvement in the crime. The ultimate **goals** of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion.

Interrogation is an art. You can master it through your study and experience. A good investigator is not necessarily a good interrogator. To be a good interrogator

you need to be a good actor and must have an insight of human psychology. You should be able to act according to age, profession and intellect of the individual suspect, because a suspect could be a lawyer, doctor, scientist, professor, manager or an unskilled laborer, and could be a child, teenager, adult and senior.

Prerequisites of an interrogation:

Before conducting interrogation an interrogator should have the information about:

Suspect:

- Name, age, profession, occupation
- Social and financial situation
- Criminal history
- Relation with the **victim** if any
- Name, age, profession, occupation
- Social and financial situation
- Criminal history if any

Scene of crime:

- Time and place of occurrence
- **Modus operandi**
- Physical evidence collected
- Information collected

Place of Interrogation:

- At the spot when a suspect is apprehended at the scene of crime
- In an interrogation room where the interrogator has more psychological advantage

Time of Interrogation

- As soon as the suspect is apprehended and information collected
- You should always remember that a suspect is innocent and not a criminal unless his **guilt** is proved in court
- Don't ever use third degree method
- Always maintain courtesy
- Be a good listener
- Control your anger because in anger you lose reasoning and the judgment made without reasoning is mostly incorrect
- Never be in a hurry to finish the interrogation

Method of Interrogation

Interrogation of an emotional offender is much easier than non-emotional offender.

1) An emotional offender is usually a first time offender and can be broken down easily when played with his emotion:

- By showing sympathy towards him.
- By telling him that anybody could do what he has done in the similar situation.
- Blaming the society for his action.
- Being friendly with him and offering him coke or cigarettes, which an offender never expects from a police officer.

- Observe his physical reaction to the crime related and non-related questions. When someone is lying he will be under tension.

2) Emotional offender can easily come clean when confronted by the evidence.

Interrogation of non-emotional offender:

Non-emotional offenders are hardened criminals. They are professionals who have gained experience committing series of crime. They don't like to talk much or at all.

- *Question and Answer Method:* This is a common form of interrogation where an interrogator asks several questions to get the facts of a case.
- *Narrative Method:* Let the suspect tell his side of story without interruption. Ask him to repeat it three or four times. He will have to tell more and more lies just to cover up one lie. Verify his story and re-interrogate him.
- *Alibi:* Ask where he was and what he was doing at the time of occurrence of the crime. Verify his alibi and re-interrogate him.
- *Factual method:* The best way to interrogate a hardened and professional criminal is to confront him with the physical and circumstantial evidence, which will eventually lead to his confession.
- *Sweet and sour method:* Interrogation conducted by two different interrogators, one being soft spoken and other being harsh towards the suspect.
- *Overheard conversation method:* Whenever there is more than one offender this method works well. One suspect while being interrogated should be viewed but not heard by another suspect from outside of the interrogation room. When his turn of interrogation starts, tell the offender that his associate has already confessed about the crime and now it is his turn to confess.
- *Hypothetical situation:* Ask a suspect that even he has not done it, how would he have done it in the similar situation. May be some important clue could come out of this.
- *Telling the story backward:* Sometimes you could ask a suspect tell his side of story backward. If he has told you what he has done from yesterday 6 AM to today 10 PM, and then let him start from today 10 PM to yesterday 6 AM.
- *Bluff Method:* Interrogators have used this method for extracting truth from suspects. In this method an interrogator tells a suspect that he has been seen by witness while committing crime or that his fingerprint, footprint or physical evidence has been found at the scene of crime, so there is no choice but to tell the truth. But this is not the right method because if the suspect is innocent, the situation is ridiculous.

There is no hard and fast rule as to what method you apply to extract the fact or the **confession**. But one should always keep in mind that a confession even in writing is nothing more than a piece of paper unless it is supported or corroborated by other independent physical or circumstantial evidence.

There are various kinds of witnesses such as indifference witness, interested witness, **hostile** witness and child witness. Indifference witness is the best kind of witness for a case because the witness does not have any interest in success or failure of the case.

He will always prefer to tell whatever he knows about the case without lying, whereas the interested witness may be a friend, a relative or a potential beneficiary in the case and may exaggerate the fact. As for the hostile witness, he may have close

relation or friendship with the suspect and do want to lie to **protect** the suspect. You may need to interrogate him rather than interview him.

In old cases, also known as cold cases, interviewing becomes much more difficult. Witnesses may have had second thoughts or may have been intimidated by the suspect or those close to him. Witnesses move, change their names, and even die.

Notes:

cordial atmosphere — доброжелательная атмосфера

unskilled laborer — чернорабочий

at the spot — на месте

maintain courtesy — соблюдать правила вежливости

be in a hurry — спешить, торопиться

come clean — признаваться, говорить правду

hardened criminals — закоренелые преступники

rather than — скорее чем (предпочтительнее), лучше

how would he have done it in the similar situation — как бы он поступил в подобной ситуации.

have second thoughts — поразмыслить, передумать

Study Skills

4. Learn the vocabulary.

according to <i>prep</i>	в соответствии с
anger <i>n</i>	гнев
apply <i>v</i>	применять
approach <i>n</i>	подход, отношение к делу
associate <i>n</i>	сообщник, соучастник
available <i>a</i>	доступный, имеющийся в распоряжении
beneficiary <i>n</i>	лицо, извлекающее выгоду
blaming <i>n</i>	обвинение
break (down) <i>v</i>	сломить
confession <i>n</i>	признание
cordial <i>a</i>	искренний, сердечный, дружелюбный
corroborate <i>n</i>	подтверждать; дополнять другими доказательствами
cover (up) <i>v</i>	прикрыть
eliminate <i>v</i>	устранять, исключать
eventually <i>adv</i>	в конечном счете; в конце концов
exaggerate <i>v</i>	преувеличивать
experience <i>n</i>	опыт
gain experience	приобретать опыт
failure <i>n</i>	неудача, провал
hardened <i>a</i>	закоренелый
harsh <i>a</i>	строгий, грубый, суровый

hostile <i>a</i>	враждебный
if any	если это имеет место
indirect <i>a</i>	косвенный
innocent <i>a</i>	невиновный
insight <i>n</i>	проницательность, понимание, интуиция
instrumentation <i>n</i>	применение технических средств
interrogating <i>n</i>	допрос
interruption <i>n</i>	прерывание
interviewing <i>n</i>	опрос
intimidate <i>v</i>	запугивать
involve <i>v</i>	впутывать, вовлекать
judgement <i>n</i>	мнение, судебное решение
lie <i>n</i>	ложь
method <i>n</i> (the)third degree method narrative method: sweet and sour method overheard conversation method telling the story backward bluff method	метод допрос с применением мер физического воздействия (допрос с пристрастием) метод рассказа метод «кнута и пряника» метод подслушанного разговора рассказ с конца «блеф» метод
modus <i>n</i> modus operandi	способ способ действия; способ совершения преступления
occupation <i>n</i>	занятие
occurrence <i>n</i>	случай, происшествие
prerequisite <i>n</i>	предпосылка, необходимое условие
prove <i>v</i>	доказывать
questioning <i>n</i>	допрос
reasoning <i>n</i>	логический ход мысли, обоснование
relate <i>v</i>	иметь отношение, относиться
ridiculous <i>a</i>	нелепый, смешной
senior <i>n</i>	пожилой человек
support <i>v</i>	поддерживать, подтверждать
suspicion <i>n</i>	подозрение
sympathy <i>n</i>	сочувствие
tension <i>n</i>	напряженность, напряженное состояние
tool <i>n</i>	инструмент
ultimate <i>v</i>	окончательный
unless <i>conj</i>	если не, пока не
verify <i>v</i>	проверять, подтверждать
victim <i>n</i>	жертва, пострадавший
view <i>v</i>	рассматривать, видеть

5. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	tension	a	сочувствие
2	relate	b	невиновный
3	reasoning	c	исключать
4	apply	d	предпосылка
5	sympathy	e	прерывание
6	verify	f	подозрение
7	prerequisite	g	поддерживать
8	support	h	доказывать
9	innocent	i	иметь отношение
10	questioning	j	признание
11	confession	k	применять
12	suspicion	l	допрос
13	eliminate	m	напряженность
14	prove	n	проверять
15	interruption	o	логический ход мысли

6. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	следователь зависит от трех главных инструментов, доступных ему	a	you can master it through your study and experience
2	опрос проводится в дружелюбной атмосфере	b	sometimes you could ask a suspect tell his side of story backward
3	когда человека опрашивают в неудобной атмосфере – это допрос	c	be a good listener
4	вы можете освоить его при помощи учебы и опыта	d	he may have close relation or friendship with the suspect
5	никогда не применяйте «допрос третьей степени» (допрос с пристрастием)	e	never be in a hurry to finish the interrogation.
6	всегда будьте вежливым	f	an investigator depends on three major tools available to him
7	будьте хорошим слушателем	g	don't ever use third degree method
8	никогда не торопитесь закончить допрос	h	non-emotional offenders are hardened criminals
9	может быть легко сломлен, когда играют на его эмоциях	i	always maintain courtesy
10	когда кто-то лжет, он будет чувствовать себя напряженно	j	an interview is conducted in a cordial atmosphere
11	неэмоциональные	k	can be broken down easily when played

	правонарушители — закоренелые преступники		with his emotion
12	позвольте подозреваемому рассказать свою версию истории, не прерывая его	l	whenever a person is questioned in an uncomfortable atmosphere (interrogation room) it is an interrogation
13	иногда можно попросить подозреваемого рассказать свою версию (истории) с конца	m	you may need to interrogate him rather than interview him
14	он может быть близким родственником или другом подозреваемого	n	when someone is lying he will be under tension
15	Вам может понадобиться допросить, а не опросить его	o	let the suspect tell his side of story without interruption

7. Match the antonyms.

1	comfortable	a	incorrect
2	direct	b	friendly
3	correct	c	continuation
4	innocent	d	lose
5	interruption	e	forget
6	fast	f	indirect
7	hostile	g	slow
8	skilled	h	unskilled
9	remember	i	uncomfortable
10	gain	j	guilty

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Major tools available to him; questioning of persons; conducted in a cordial atmosphere; direct or indirect involvement in the crime; ultimate goals; responsible for a crime; eliminate the innocent from suspicion; master it through your study and experience; insight of human psychology; be able to act according to age; prerequisites of an interrogation; criminal history; relation with the victim if any; criminal history if any; time and place of occurrence; modus operandi; psychological advantage; is innocent; until his guilt is proved in court; third degree method; always maintain courtesy; indifference witness, interested witness, hostile witness; the witness does not have any interest in success or failure of the case; may exaggerate the fact; may have close relation or friendship with the suspect; want to lie to protect the suspect; to interrogate him rather than interview him.

b) В гневе Вы теряете логический ход мысли; эмоциональный правонарушитель; может быть легко сломлен, когда играют на его эмоциях; проявляя сочувствие к нему; обвиняя общество за его поступок; наблюдайте за его физической реакцией; относящиеся к преступлению и не относящиеся к преступлению вопросы; легко признаться; закоренелые преступники; приобрели опыт,

совершив серию преступлений; позвольте подозреваемому рассказать свою версию случившегося, не прерывая его; чтобы скрыть одну ложь; проверьте его историю и снова допросите его; что он делал во время совершения преступления; всякий раз, когда есть более одного правонарушителя, этот метод работает хорошо; теперь его очередь признаться; как бы он поступил в подобной ситуации; его видел свидетель во время совершения преступления; но это неправильный метод; получить факт признания; признание, даже в письменном виде, — это не более, чем кусок бумаги, если оно не поддерживается или не подтверждается другими независимыми вещественными или косвенными доказательствами.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Конечная цель проведения опроса и допроса — определить ответственных за преступление и исключить невинного из списка подозреваемых.

2. Хороший следователь — не обязательно следователь, который способен хорошо проводить допрос.

3. Чтобы быть хорошим следователем, Вы должны быть хорошим актером и понимать психологию человека.

4. Допрос — это опрос людей, подозреваемых в прямом или косвенном участии в преступлении.

5. Вы всегда должны помнить, что подозреваемый невиновен и не преступник, если не доказана его вина в суде.

6. В течение расследования следователь зависит от трех главных инструментов, доступных ему, которыми являются: применение технических средств, информация, опрос и допрос.

7. Управляйте своим гневом, потому что в гневе Вы теряете рассудок, а решение, принятое без рассудка, главным образом неправильное.

8. Эмоциональный преступник может легко признаться, когда предоставляются доказательства.

9. Проверьте его рассказ и допросите его снова.

10. Не существует жесткого и быстрого правила — какой метод использовать, чтобы извлечь факт или признание.

11. Существуют различные виды свидетелей, такие как: безразличный свидетель, заинтересованный свидетель, враждебный свидетель и свидетель-ребенок.

10. Match the words in bold in the text to their definitions.

- 1 to keep smb / smth from harm, injury , etc.
- 2 the act or an instance of interrogating; the process of being interrogated
- 3 the object of person's ambition or effort, a destination, an aim
- 4 (a formal statement) admitting that one is guilty of a crime, etc
- 5 the fact of having committed a specified or implied offence
- 6 a person injured or killed as a result of an event or circumstance

- 7 showing great dislike, aggressive
- 8 the particular way in which a person performs a task or action

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following:

an interview
an interrogation

is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime; is the questioning of persons suspected of direct or indirect involvement in the crime; has no hard and fast rule to apply to extract the confession; is conducted in a cordial atmosphere; becomes much more difficult in cold cases; is an art; is questioning a person in an uncomfortable atmosphere

12. Choose the correct word / words.

1. During the course of investigation an investigator depends on three major **tools / functions** available to him which are instrumentation, information, and interview and interrogation.
2. An *interview* is the questioning of persons who are not **offenders / suspects** in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved.
3. An *interrogation* is the questioning of persons **suspected / committed** of direct or indirect involvement in the crime.
4. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to **punish / identify** those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion.
5. To be a good interrogator you need to be a good actor and must have an insight of human **psychology / relations**.
6. You should always remember that a **witness / suspect** is innocent and not a criminal unless his guilt is proved in court.
7. Don't ever use third degree **method / modus operandi**.
8. Always maintain **courtesy / order**.
9. Be a good **speaker / listener**.
10. Control your anger because in anger you **lose / find** reasoning and the judgment made without reasoning is mostly incorrect.
11. The best way to interrogate a hardened and professional **victim / criminal** is to confront him with the physical and circumstantial evidence.
12. **Interrogators / detectives** have used *bluff method* for extracting truth from suspects.
13. There are various kinds of **witnesses / investigators** such as indifference witness, interested witness, hostile witness and child witness.

13. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

instruments, gathered, criminal, incident, arrested, final, interference, exclude, watch, politeness, prove

1. During the course of investigation an investigator depends on three major tools available to him which are instrumentation, information, and interview and interrogation.
2. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion.
3. Always maintain courtesy.
4. Interrogation of an emotional offender is much easier than non-emotional offender.
5. Observe his physical reaction to the crime related and non-related questions.
6. Verify his alibi and re-interrogate him.
7. Let the suspect tell his side of story without interruption.
8. *Scene of crime:*
 - Time and place of occurrence
 - Modus operandi
 - Physical evidence collected
 - Information collected
9. *Place of Interrogation:* At the spot when a suspect is apprehended at the scene of crime.

14. Complete the chart.

Verb	Adjective / Participle	Noun
interrogate		
	gained	
		questioning
eliminate		
	interrupted	
		involvement
inform		
	spoken	
		extracting
relate		
	interviewed	
		committing

15. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

(0) **Interviewing** and interrogation

(1) ... have similar aspects to one another. They are both simple ways of (2) ... information, involve purposeful (3) ..., and both have the same purpose and result. However, there are distinct (4) ... between the two. There are several (5) ... tactics, which are: direct confrontation, theme (6) ..., dealing with resistance, alternative questions, and developing details. An interrogation is (7) ... an interview. But unlike (8) ... interviews, interrogations are often (9) ... as

much more hostile, antagonistic, and perhaps to some degree even (10) They begin much like traditional interviews. The (11)... goal is to obtain and secure (12) ... and they do this by having the interviewer ask questions and use purposeful (13)

(0) **interview**

(1) **certain**

(2) **obtain**

(3) **converse**

(4) **differ**

(5) **interrogate**

(6) **develop**

(7) **essential**

(8) **tradition**

(9) **perceive**

(10) **frighten**

(11) **base**

(12) **inform**

(13) **converse**

16. Use the words and word combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

An interrogation; the questioning; to identify; psychology; innocent; reasoning; to finish; degree; easier; is lying; hardened; interest; witness; hostile

1. An interview is ... of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved.

2. ... is the questioning of persons suspected of direct or indirect involvement in the crime.

3. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are ... those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion.

4. To be a good interrogator you need to be a good actor and must have an insight of human

5. You should always remember that a suspect is ... and not a criminal unless his guilt is proved in court.

6. Control your anger because in anger you lose ... and the judgment made without reasoning is mostly incorrect.

7. Never be in a hurry ... the interrogation.

8. Don't ever use third ... method.

9. Interrogation of an emotional offender is much ... than non-emotional offender.

10. When someone ... he will be under tension.

11. Non-emotional offenders are ... criminals.

12. Indifference witness is the best kind of witness for a case because the witness does not have any ... in success or failure of the case.

13. The interested ... may be a friend, a relative or a potential beneficiary in the case and may exaggerate the fact.

14. As for the ... witness, he may have close relation or friendship with the suspect and do want to lie to protect the suspect.

17. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. An emotional offender is believed **to be** / **be** a first time offender.

2. A witness is not expected **to observe** / **to be observed** everything as a police officer needs to observe during an accident.

3. Crime scene investigators are supposed **to assist** / **to be assisted** by forensic scientists.

4. Re-interrogation is considered **to be** / **to being** important to verify the truthfulness of the witnesses.

5. Not every crime which is detected is expected **to have resulted** / **to result** in formal action.

6. Lie detector is supposed **to be** / **to have been** the best means to detect lies.

7. Interview in old cases is known **to become** / **became** much more difficult.

8. Interrogators are supposed **to inform** / **to be informed** the suspect's attorney of the time and date of the interrogation.

9. The investigation function is supposed **to be** / **to being** the responsibility of detectives in close cooperation with patrol officers.

10. The suspect is known **to have been traced and arrested** / **to be traced and arrested** an hour later.

11. Most informants are unlikely **to testify** / **testify** at trials.

12. Re-interrogation is believed **to be** / **to being** a good method to verify the suspect's alibi.

13. Bluff method is not likely **to use** / **to be used** when the suspect is innocent.

14. The crime scene investigators are expected **to go** / **to have gone** to court to testify about their findings.

18. Make up sentences (positive, negative, and interrogative from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **An interview** / a crime / the questioning / of persons / is / who / suspects / are / not / in.

2. **An interrogation** / suspected of / the questioning / of persons / involvement / direct / or indirect / in / the crime / is.

3. **Interrogation** / an art / is.

4. **A suspect** / and / not / a criminal / is / unless / innocent / his / guilt / is / court / proved / in.

5. **Be** / listener / a / good.

6. **Don't** / method / degree / use / third.

7. **Control** / anger / your / lose / because / you / in anger / reasoning.

8. **An emotional** / a first / offender / usually / time / offender / is.

9. **There are** / witnesses / kinds of / various.

10. **In old** / difficult / cases / becomes / interviewing / more.

19. Fill in: occurrence; advantage; confession; tools; persons; atmosphere; reaction; the crime; goals; psychology; his alibi; operandi; from suspicion; evidence; method; courtesy; reasoning; criminals; sympathy, witness. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 major ...	11 third degree ...
2 questioning of ...	12 maintain ...
3 cordial ...	13 lose ...
4 psychological ...	14 showing ...
5 involvement in ...	15 physical ...
6 ultimate ...	16 hardened ...
7 eliminate the innocent ...	17 verify...
8 insight of human ...	18 physical and circumstantial ...
9 time and place of ...	19 fact or the ...
10 modus ...	20 hostile ...

20. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. During the course of investigation an investigator depends on three major tools available to him which are
2. An interview is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know
3. An interrogation is the questioning of persons suspected of direct or indirect
4. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and
5. To be a good interrogator you need to be a good actor and must have an insight....
6. Non-emotional offenders are
7. Ask where he was and what he was doing at the time of
8. The best way to interrogate a hardened and professional criminal is to confront him with
9. Sweet and sour method is conducted by two different interrogators, one being
10. Tell the offender that his associate has already confessed about the crime and now...
11. An interrogator tells a suspect that he was seen by witness while committing a crime or that his fingerprint, footprint or physical evidence was found
12. A confession even in writing is nothing more than a piece of paper unless....
13. There are various kinds of witnesses such as
14. Indifference witness is the best kind of witness for a case because the witness does not have
15. The interested witness may be a friend, a relative or a potential beneficiary in the case and may
16. The hostile witness may have close relation or friendship with the suspect and

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching a Video and Speaking

21. Watch the video “Interrogation or Child Abuse”.

Before watching the video:

a) Learn the vocabulary:

confess confess to a crime make a false confession	сознаться сознаться в преступлении сделать ложное признание
admit	признать(ся)
accuse of keep accusing	обвинить продолжать обвинять
coercive manner	принудительный, силовой принудительным образом
wear ... down	преодолеть, сломать
torture	пытать, мучить
stab	заставлять, принуждать
eventually	в итоге, в конце концов

b) Revise the vocabulary.

tell the truth	сказать правду
lie	солгать
innocent	невиновный
guilty	виновный
pressure	давление
commit a crime	совершить преступление
evidence	показания, доказательство
force	заставлять, принуждать
interrogate	допрашивать
charge with	обвинять в
believe	полагать
cry	плакать
punish	наказывать

22. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the video.

1. The boy who is interrogated is:

- a) 14 years old
- b) 12 years old
- c) 16 years old

2. The boy is accused of:

- a) burglary

- b) pickpocketing
- c) murder
- 3. The interrogation lasts:
 - a) one hour
 - b) ten hours
 - c) forty minutes
- 4. The interrogation is conducted in:
 - a) a friendly manner
 - b) the presence of the child's parents
 - c) coercive manner
- 5. Eventually the boy:
 - a) is forced to make a false confession
 - b) is let go home
 - c) doesn't confess to a crime

23. In pairs, use the information from the video and the language in the box to act out a dialogue.

Speaker A (questions)	Speaker B (answers)
the interrogation conducted properly the manner of interrogation friendly / coercive is accused of the interrogation lasts the boy feels make confession to a crime serve as evidence in court	in a coercive manner abuse their power is accused of lasts 10 hours is frightened; is crying is psychologically tortured is forced to make a false confession cannot serve as

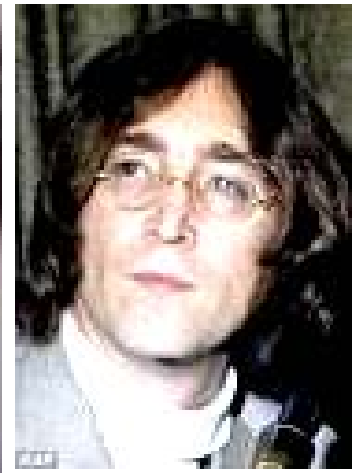
24. With a partner, act out the roles based on the following crimes:

1. You saw a man breaking into a car and running away with a bag. You called the police and gave a description.
2. You saw a man walking out of a jewelry shop with a gun and bag of stolen jewelry. You called the police and gave a description.
3. You saw this young man walking out of a shop with laptop computer (ноутбук) he hadn't paid for.

Choose one of the men from the pictures to describe him as a suspect.

Cadet A is an investigator interviewing a witness.

Cadet B is a witness.



Use such language as:

Cadet A:

- How many suspects did you see?
- What did they do?
- Which way did they go?
- Did he (they) have (use) a weapon?
- Were there any other witnesses?
- What did they (he, she) take?
- Could you describe the suspect(s)?
- Could you tell me your name and address (phone numbers) please?
- Is there any other information you feel is important?

Cadet B:

- He was alone
- There were two men
- One of them was armed
- He was carrying ...
- He ran straight ahead (turned round the corner, turned left)

Build: large, small, tall, short

Face: long, round, square, oval;
Beard, moustache, whiskers

Nose: big, small, straight, narrow, snub, crooked

Hair: dark, fair, shoulder-length, bald-headed, curly, thick, thin, plaits

Clothing: T-shirt, shirt, jacket, coat, jeans

25. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1	What tools does investigator depend on in the course of investigation?	a	To be a good interrogator you need to be a good actor and must have an insight of human psychology; be able to act according to the age, profession and intellect of the individual suspect
2	How is an interview defined?	b	The hostile witness may have close relation or friendship with the suspect and do want to lie to protect the suspect. You may need to interrogate him rather than interview him
3	What is an interrogation?	c	An emotional offender is usually a first time offender and can be broken down easily when played with his emotion; he can easily come clean when confronted by the evidence
4	What are the ultimate goals of interview and interrogation?	d	At the spot when a suspect is apprehended at the scene of crime; in an interrogation room where the interrogator has more psychological advantage
5	What does to be a good interrogator mean?	e	The indifference witness always prefers to tell whatever he knows about the case without lying, whereas interested witness may be a friend, a relative or a potential beneficiary in the case and may exaggerate the fact
6	What information should an investigator have before conducting interrogation?	f	An interview is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved
7	Where does the interrogation take place?	g	Methods of interrogation of non-emotional offender: question and answer method; narrative method; verifying alibi; factual method; sweet and sour method; overheard conversation method; hypothetical situation; telling the story backward; bluff method
8	When is the suspect interrogated?	h	The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion
9	How should an investigator conduct interrogation?	i	During the course of investigation an investigator depends on three major tools available to him which are instrumentation, information, and interview and interrogation
10	How should an emotional offender be interrogated?	j	Before conducting interrogation the investigator should have the information about the suspect, victim and the scene of crime

11 What are the methods of interrogation of non-emotional offender?	k Always remember that a suspect is innocent and not a criminal unless his guilt is proved in court. Never use third degree method. Always maintain courtesy; be a good listener; control anger. Never be in a hurry to finish the interrogation
12 Is a suspect's confession the final step in an investigation?	l An interrogation is the questioning of persons suspected of direct or indirect involvement in the crime
13 How do indifference witnesses and interested witnesses behave during the questioning?	m As soon as the suspect is apprehended and information collected
14 What should an interrogator's attitude to hostile witnesses be?	n A confession even in writing is nothing more than a piece of paper unless it is supported or corroborated by other independent physical or circumstantial evidence

26. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 25.

Cadet A: You are a graduate from the Police Academy assigned to an Investigation Department. Ask Cadet B about the work of an investigator.

Cadet B: You are an investigator. Answer cadet's A questions.

Use (the) language from task 25.

27. Make notes under the headings below. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Three major tools of an investigator
- Interview and interrogation
- Necessary information before interrogation
- Place of interrogation
- Time of interrogation
- Investigator's conduct during an interrogation
- Method of interrogation of:
 - a) emotional offender
 - b) non-emotional offender
- Interviewing of witnesses

28. Speak on interview and interrogation.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. A criminal investigation is the process of discovering, collecting, preparing, identifying and preserving ... to prove the truth or falsity of an issue of law.
 - a) case
 - b) evidence
 - c) information
2. Any ... at the scene should be detained and questioned, and then either released or arrested, depending on the circumstances.
 - a) witnesses
 - b) person
 - c) suspects
3. After emergencies are dealt with, the first and most important function is to ... the crime scene and evidence.
 - a) protect
 - b) clean
 - c) leave
4. An interrogation is ... of persons suspected of direct or indirect involvement in the crime.
 - a) a search
 - b) the questioning
 - c) the sentencing
5. An interview is the questioning of persons who are not ... in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved.
 - a) criminals
 - b) participants
 - c) suspects

2. **Fill in:** suspects, a crime, the scene, investigation, departments, fit, victims, crimes, well-balanced, is completed.

- 1 police ...
- 2 solving ...
- 3 emotionally ...
- 4 physically ...
- 5 follow-up ...
- 6 secure ...
- 7 investigation ...
- 8 questioning ...
- 9 committing ...
- 10 identifying ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. The first officer **to arrive** / **to be arriving** at the crime scene is usually a patrol officer assigned to the area.

2. The emergencies **to be dealt with / dealing with** are a dangerous suspect at the scene or a gravely injured person.
3. **To solve / to have solved** a crime an investigator must conduct an investigation properly.
4. The investigator interrogates the suspects **to determine / to be determined** if they are telling the truth or not.
5. The jobs **to be done / to do** by criminal investigators should be done correctly.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word.

1. Interrogation of an emotional ... is much easier than non-emotional offender.
2. Despite a thorough preliminary investigation, many cases require a ... investigation.
3. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those ... for a crime.
4. In old cases, also known as cold cases, interviewing becomes much more
5. Effective ... develop and retain information, apply technical knowledge, remain open-minded and objective and use logic.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. What is the basic function of an investigator at a crime scene?
 - a) The basic function of investigators at the scene of crime is to talk to witnesses
 - b) The basic function of investigators is to conduct a thorough, legal search at the scene of crime
 - c) The basic function of investigators at the scene of crime is to make a report
2. When are all police officers more effective in performing their duties?
 - a) Police officers are more effective when they are physically fit
 - b) Police officers are more effective when they are well-paid
 - c) All investigators, patrol officers or detectives, are more effective if they possess certain intellectual, psychological and physical characteristics
3. What are the ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating?
 - a) The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to punish a suspect
 - b) The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion
 - c) The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to complete an investigation
4. Is a suspect's confession the final step in an investigation?
 - a) Yes, a suspect's confession is the final step in an investigation
 - b) A suspect's confession is not necessary to complete an investigation
 - c) A confession even in writing is useless unless it is supported or corroborated by other independent physical or circumstantial evidence
5. What information should an investigator have before conducting interrogation?
 - a) Before conducting interrogation an investigator should have a pen and paper
 - b) Before conducting interrogation an investigator should have a room
 - c) Before conducting interrogation the investigator should have the information about the suspect, victim and the scene of crime

Lead-in

Look at the pictures and say in which picture you can see a witness questioning and in which one you see a suspect questioning.



Reading 1

1. Look through the text, listen to it and say whether people in Russia have the same rights when arrested? Are they informed of their rights?

Miranda Warning

The following warnings must be given prior to questioning a person who is in custody or deprived of his freedom:

*You have the right to remain silent. Anything you say can and will be used against you in a court of law.
You have the right to an attorney during interrogation; if you cannot afford an attorney, one will be appointed for you*

Reading 2

2. Read the text and be ready to do tasks after the text.

Interview and the Interrogation

Most of police officer's time is spent meeting people and obtaining information from them, a process commonly referred to by two terms *interviews* and *interrogations*. Information is obtained continuously throughout the investigation.

Most solved cases rely on both physical evidence and information obtained by interviewing and interrogating. An *interview* is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved. An *interrogation* is the questioning of persons suspected of direct or indirect involvement in the crime. The ultimate goals of *interviewing* and

interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion.

Great amount of information come from people with direct or indirect knowledge of a crime. This includes **complainants**, witnesses, victims and **informants**.

Regardless of whether you are *interviewing* or *interrogating*, there are several ways to improve communication: prepare in advance and obtain the information as soon after the incident as possible; be considerate and friendly; sit rather than stand; **encourage** conversation; ask simple questions one a time; listen and observe.

Interviewing a witness is one of the most difficult and least understood tasks.

Witnesses can provide valuable information, but, if the interview is improperly handled, the information may be lost or even incorrectly presented.

There is no reason to interview each witness individually. It is more efficient to have witnesses provide a written statement. Know what you want to ask — write out your questions and then ask them. Take notes and use them at the end of day meeting.

Have a maximum of three people as **interviewers** — any more than that **intimidates** the witness. The investigating officer should do most of interviews.

Interview witnesses separately, if possible. Interview the victim or complainant first, then eyewitnesses and the individuals who did not actually see the crime but who have relevant information. Before beginning the actual questioning, it is important to establish an understanding between individuals. Whichever **approach** you use, obtain information by listening and observing. Repetition of questioning is the best way to uncover lies.

Although many of the same principles apply to interrogating and interviewing, interrogating involves some special considerations. One important consideration is when to give the **Miranda warning**, which may be given to any suspect who is interrogated. It is also important to conduct interrogations in a place that is private and free from interruptions. Third-degree tactics — physical force, threats of force or other physical, mental or psychological abuse — are illegal. Any information so obtained, including confessions, is inadmissible in court.

Special considerations are also observed when questioning juveniles. Obtain parental permission before questioning a juvenile.

Barriers to communication include prejudices, fear, anger and hostility, and self-preservation. The effective interviewer / interrogator overcomes such barriers by being adaptable, self-controlled, patient, confident, optimistic, objective, sensitive to an individual and knowledgeable about the elements of crime.

Notes:

the Miranda warning — предупреждение (правило) Миранды

as soon after the incident as possible — как можно скорее после происшествия

in advance — заранее

rather than — а не; вместо того чтобы

have witnesses provide a written statement — попросить свидетелей дать письменные показания

(the) third-degree — допрос с применением мер физического воздействия

Study Skills

3. Learn the vocabulary.

abuse <i>n</i>	злоупотребление
apply <i>v</i>	применять
complaint <i>n</i>	жалоба, иск, официальное обвинение
complainant <i>n</i>	потерпевший, истец
confession <i>n</i>	признание
considerate <i>a</i>	внимательный, тактичный
consideration <i>n</i>	размышление, рассмотрение, важность, предупредительность
eliminate <i>v</i>	исключать, устранять
encourage <i>v</i>	поощрять, способствовать
fear <i>n</i>	страх
hostility <i>n</i>	враждебность
inadmissible <i>a</i>	неприемлемый, неразрешенный
innocent <i>a</i>	невиновный, честный
interruption <i>n</i>	пауза, нарушение, барьер
intimidate <i>v</i>	запугивать
involve <i>v</i>	включать
involvement <i>n</i>	вмешательство, участие, причастность
knowledgeable <i>a</i>	знающий
lie <i>v</i>	лгать
observe <i>v</i>	наблюдать
overcome <i>v</i>	преодолевать
patient	терпеливый
permission <i>n</i>	разрешение
prejudice <i>n</i>	предвзятость
questioning <i>n</i>	опрос, допрос
reason <i>n</i>	причина
regardless of	невзирая на
relevant <i>a</i>	существенный, относящийся к делу
rely on <i>v</i>	полагаться на
self-controlled <i>a</i>	способный владеть собой
statement <i>n</i>	показания, заявление, утверждение
suspicion <i>n</i>	подозрение
threat <i>n</i>	угроза
ultimate <i>a</i>	последний, конечный

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	involvement	a	способный владеть собой
2	patient	b	причина
3	eliminate	c	подозрение
4	innocent	d	угроза
5	suspicion	e	признание
6	statement	f	терпеливый
7	self-controlled	g	пауза, нарушение
8	abuse	h	предвзятость
9	confession	i	показания, заявление
10	interruption	j	опрос, допрос
11	apply	k	невиновный
12	reason	l	злоупотребление
13	prejudice	m	исключать, устранять
14	threat	n	применять
15	questioning	o	вмешательство, причастность

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	прямая или косвенная причастность к преступлению	a	meeting people and obtaining information from them
2	какой бы подход Вы не использовали	b	who know something about the crime or the individuals involved
3	больше, чем это (количество свидетелей), запугивает свидетеля	c	direct or indirect involvement in the crime
4	место, недоступное для постороннего вмешательства	d	eliminate the innocent from suspicion.
5	которые знают что-то о преступлении или лицах, причастных (к преступлению)	e	there are several ways to improve communication
6	недопустимо в суде	f	if the interview is improperly handled
7	есть несколько способов улучшить общение	g	any more than that intimidates the witness
8	хорошо осведомленный об элементах преступления	h	who have relevant information
9	препятствия к общению	i	whichever approach you use
10	преодолевают такие препятствия	j	questioning juveniles
11	встреча с людьми и получение информации от них	k	a place that is private and free from interruptions

12	исключить невиновных из числа подозреваемых	l	barriers to communication
13	у которых есть относящаяся к делу информация	m	is inadmissible in court
14	если опрос проводится неправильно	n	knowledgeable about the elements of crime
15	опрос несовершеннолетних	o	overcomes such barriers

6. Match the antonyms.

1	important	a	truth
2	private	b	discourage
3	illegal	c	misunderstanding
4	inadmissible	d	self-destruction
5	obtain	e	impatient
6	lie	f	unimportant
7	understanding	g	legal
8	relevant	h	impossible
9	possible	i	irrelevant
10	encourage	j	public
11	self-preservation	k	admissible
12	patient	l	give

7. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Throughout the investigation; most of police officer's time; interviews and interrogations; know something about the crime or the individuals involved; the ultimate goals of interviewing; eliminate the innocent from suspicion; direct or indirect knowledge of a crime; there are several ways to improve communication; be considerate and friendly; ask simple questions one a time; interview each witness individually; take notes; the investigating officer should do most of interviews; barriers to communication; adaptable, self-controlled, patient, confident, optimistic, objective, sensitive to individual; relevant information; establish an understanding; interview the victim or complainant first; obtain information by listening and observing; give the Miranda warning; a place that is private and free from interruptions; physical force, threats of force or other physical, mental or psychological abuse are illegal; including confessions.

b) Информация получается постоянно; тратится на встречи с людьми и получение информации от них; большинство раскрытых дел; как вещественные доказательства, так и информация; подозреваемые в прямом или косвенном участии в преступлении; определить ответственных за преступление; большое количество информации; независимо от того, проводите ли Вы опрос или допрос; получить информацию, как можно скорее после происшествия; поддерживать разговор; слушать и наблюдать; попросить свидетелей дать письменные показания; знающий об элементах преступления; какой бы подход (метод) Вы не использовали; получить повторный ответ и обнаружить ложь;

хотя много таких же принципов применяются; важно также проводить допрос; любая информация, полученная таким способом; особые размышления; опрос несовершеннолетних; получить разрешение родителей; предвзятое отношение, страх, гнев, враждебность и самосохранение.

8. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Большинство времени полицейских тратится на встречи с людьми и получение информации от них
2. Информация получается постоянно в течение расследования
3. Конечная цель опроса и допроса — выявить ответственных за преступление и исключить невиновного из числа подозреваемых
4. Большое количество информации поступает от людей, знающих непосредственно или косвенно что-либо о преступлении
5. Подготовьтесь заранее и получите информацию, как можно скорее после происшествия
6. Опрос свидетелей — одна из наиболее трудных и наименее понятных задач
7. Нет смысла (причины) опрашивать каждого свидетеля отдельно
8. Сначала опросите жертву или истца, затем свидетелей и людей, которые (фактически) не видели преступления, но у кого есть относящаяся к делу информация
9. Повторение вопросов — лучший способ выявить ложь
10. Важным является оглашение правила (предупреждения) Миранды, которое сообщается любому подозреваемому, которого допрашивают
11. Тактика третьей степени (допрос с пристрастием) — физическая сила, угроза применения силы или другого физического, умственного или психологического насилия — незаконна
12. Особая предупредительность соблюдается при опросе несовершеннолетних

9. Match the words in bold in the text to their definitions.

- 1 informs suspects of their rights to remain silent, to have counsel present; warns suspects that anything they say can be used against them in court
- 2 a person who gives information about somebody's activities to the police
- 3 to frighten somebody in order to make them do something
- 4 a person who conducts an interview
- 5 a person who brings a legal action against somebody in a law court
- 6 a way of dealing with a person or thing
- 7 stimulate by help, reward, etc.; give courage, confidence, hope

10. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following:

Questioning deals with...
The effective interviewer / interrogator...

identifying those responsible for a crime; prepares in advance the information; is sensitive to an individual and knowledgeable about the elements of crime; writing out questions and then asking them; encourages conversation; taking notes; eliminating the innocent from suspicion; should be considerate and friendly; interrogating and interviewing; asks simple questions one at a time; confessions; people with direct or indirect knowledge of a crime; is adaptable, self-controlled, patient, confident, optimistic, objective; witnesses, victims and informants; may have witnesses provide a written statement; listening and observing; overcomes barriers

11. Choose the correct word / words.

1. Most of police officer's time is spent meeting people and **obtaining** / **giving** information from them.
2. Most solved **cases** / **problems** rely on both physical evidence and information obtained by interviewing and interrogating.
3. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the **criminal** / **innocent** from suspicion.
4. There are several ways to improve **communication** / **situation**.
5. There is no reason to interview each **witness** / **suspect** individually.
6. The **patrol** / **investigating** officer should do most of interviews.
7. It is important to establish an **understanding** / **barrier** between individuals.
8. It is also important to **conduct** / **stop** interrogations in a place that is **public** / **private** and free from interruptions.
9. It's necessary to obtain parental permission before **arresting** / **questioning** a juvenile.
10. Third-degree tactics — physical force, threats of force or other physical, mental or psychological **test** / **abuse** — are illegal.

12. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms.

final; receiving; exclude; use; beforehand; people; obstacles; usually; in fact;
constantly; reveal

1. Most of police officer's time is spent meeting people and obtaining information from them, a process commonly referred to by two terms interviews and interrogations.
2. Information is obtained continuously throughout the investigation.
3. An interview is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved.

4. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion.
5. Prepare in advance and obtain the information as soon after the incident as possible.
6. Interview the victim or complainant first, then eyewitnesses and the individuals who did not actually see the crime but who have relevant information.
7. Repetition of questioning is the best way to uncover lies.
8. Although many of the same principles apply to interrogating and interviewing, interrogating involves some special considerations.
9. Barriers to communication include prejudices, fear, anger and hostility, and self-preservation.

13. Complete the chart.

Verb	Adjective / Participle	Noun
eliminate		
	solved	
		information
intimidate		
	involved	
		obtaining
improve		
	observant	
		communication
know		
	preserved	
		interruption

14. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

An interview is the (0) **questioning** of persons who are not (1) ... in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individual involved. An (2) ... is the questioning of persons (3) ... of direct or indirect (4) ... in the crime. The ultimate goals of (5) ... and interrogating are to identify those (6) ... for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from (7) Interviewing a witness is one of the most difficult tasks. Interview witnesses (8) ..., if possible, Before (9) ... the questioning, it is important to establish an (10) ... between individuals.

- (0) **question**
- (1) **suspect**
- (2) **interrogate**
- (3) **suspect**
- (4) **involve**
- (5) **interview**
- (6) **response**
- (7) **suspect**
- (8) **separate**
- (9) **begin**
- (10) **understand**

15. Use the words and combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

Barriers; understanding; police officer's; communication; investigation; information; suspect; the questioning; suspected of; knowledge; goals; juveniles; written; principles

1. Most of ... time is spent meeting people and obtaining information from them.
2. Most solved cases rely on both physical evidence and ... obtained by interviewing and interrogating.
3. Information is obtained continuously throughout the
4. An interview is ... of persons who are not suspects in a crime.
5. An interrogation is the questioning of persons ... direct or indirect involvement in the crime.
6. Vast amounts of information come from people with direct or indirect ... of a crime.
7. The ultimate ... of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion.
8. There are several ways to improve
9. It is more efficient to have witnesses provide a ... statement.
10. ... to communication include prejudices, fear, anger and hostility and self-preservation.
11. Before beginning the actual questioning, it is important to establish an ... between the individuals.
12. Many of the same ... apply to interrogating and interviewing.
13. The Miranda warning may be given to any ... who is interrogated.
14. Special considerations are also observed when questioning

16. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. Physical evidence is known **to be** / **to have been** an object that could link a suspect and a victim to a crime scene.
2. DNA analysis is expected **to help** / **to have helped** in investigation.
3. Crime scene investigators are supposed **to assist** / **to be assisted** by forensic scientists.
4. The fingerprints are likely **to belong** / **belong** to the suspect.
5. The informant appeared **to be** / **being** a former prisoner.
6. When patrolling the police are expected **to deter** / **to have deterred** wrongdoing.
7. The use of detector is likely **to have increased** / **increased** during interrogation.
8. Most informants are unlikely **to testify** / **testify** at trials.
9. Informants are believed **to be** / **to being** people who can provide any information about crime.
10. A crime in an emergency is supposed **to be reported** / **have reported** to 999 service in Britain.

11. The suspect is giving evidence and is likely **to plead / plead** guilty.
12. The investigator is supposed **to testify / to have testified** in court next week.
13. The suspect is believed **to leave / to have left** the scene.
14. The investigation was reported **to have been completed / to complete**.

17. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **An interview** / is / suspects / persons / questioning of / who / not / are / in / a crime.
2. **Witnesses** / information / valuable / provide / can.
3. **Interviewing** / difficult / tasks / a witness / is / one / of the most.
4. **There are** / ways / communication / several / to improve.
5. **It is important** / an understanding / between / the individuals / to establish.
6. **The investigating** / should / officer / interviews / do / most of.
7. **Interview** / separately, / if possible / witnesses /
8. **The Miranda** / be given / may / to / suspect / any / warning / who / interrogated / is.
9. **Mental** / abuse / or / psychological / illegal / is.
10. **Obtain** / permission / a juvenile / parental / before / questioning.

18. Fill in: cases; from suspicion; conversation; a crime; friendly; do most of interviews; obtaining information; juveniles; psychological abuse; interrogations; communication; ask them; involvement in the crime; interviewer / interrogator. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 meting people and ...	8 encourage ...
2 most solved ...	9 write out your questions and then ...
3 direct or indirect ...	10 the investigating officer should ...
4 eliminate the innocent ...	11 physical, mental or ...
5 direct or indirect knowledge of...	12 conduct ...
6 several ways to improve ...	13 questioning ...
7 be considerate and ...	14 the effective ...

19. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Most of police officer's time is spent meting people and
2. Information is obtained continuously throughout
3. Most solved cases rely on both physical evidence and information obtained by
4. An interview is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know something
5. An interrogation is the questioning of persons suspected of
6. The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for

7. Vast amounts of information come from people with
8. Obtain the information as soon after
9. Interviewing a witness is one of the most
10. If the interview is improperly handled, the information may be lost or
11. Before beginning the actual questioning, it is important to establish
12. Many of the same principles apply to interrogating and....
13. The Miranda warning may be given to
14. It is also important to conduct interrogations in a place
15. Physical force, threats of force or other physical, mental or psychological abuse
16. Special considerations are also observed when

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Listening and speaking

20. Listen to the conversation between an officer and a witness. Before listening, remember the following words:

make a statement	сделать заявление, дать показания
truthful	правдивый
notice	замечать
sweatshirt	свитер, рубашка
backpack	рюкзак, сумка

21. Listen to the tape and complete the conversation.

- Officer:** Okay. What can you tell me about the ...?
- Witness:** Well, one was tall and the other was ... I'm pretty sure one of them had
- Officer:** Did you notice what they ..., ma'am?
- Witness:** They were both wearing sweatshirts.
- Officer:** Okay. I need you to think hard now, this is important. Was it the tall or the short suspect that was ...?
- Witness:** The taller was holding the gun. The shorter one had
- Officer:** Did you notice anything else about the suspects? Did they say anything that as they ran by? Maybe you saw ...?
- Witness:** No. they just ran by me so quickly. That's all I remember

22. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 7. Then, switch roles.

23. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1 What is most of an investigator's time spent on?	a The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion
2 What is an interview?	b The effective interviewer / interrogator overcomes such barriers by being adaptable, self-controlled, patient, confident, optimistic, objective, sensitive to an individual and knowledgeable about the elements of crime
3 What is an interrogation?	c It is important to conduct interrogations in a place that is private and free from interruptions
4 What are the ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating?	d It is more efficient to have witnesses provide a written statement. During the questioning there shouldn't be more than three interviewers — any more than that intimidates the witness. The investigating officer should do most of interviews; write out questions and then ask them
5 Who does information about crime come from?	e Before beginning the actual questioning, it is important to establish an understanding between individuals
6 What are the ways to improve communication?	f The third-degree tactics — physical force, threats of force or other physical, mental or psychological abuse — is illegal
7 How can efficiency of questioning be improved?	g Barriers to communication include prejudices, fear, anger and hostility, and self-preservation
8 What are barriers to communication during questioning?	h An interview is the questioning of persons who are not suspects in a crime but who know something about the crime or the individuals involved
9 How can barriers to communication be overcome?	i The Miranda warning may be given to any suspect who is interrogated
10 What should an investigator do before beginning the actual questioning?	j Information comes from people with direct or indirect knowledge of a crime: complainants, witnesses, victims and informants

11 Why is it important to repeat questions? 12 Who is the Miranda warning given to? 13 Where is it important to conduct interrogations? 14 Can physical force, threats of force or other physical, mental or psychological abuse be used during interrogation?	k Most of police officer's time is spent meeting people and obtaining information from them l Repetition is the best way to uncover lies m Prepare in advance and obtain the information as soon after the incident as possible; be considerate and friendly; sit rather than stand; encourage conversation; ask simple questions one a time; listen and observe n An interrogation is the questioning of persons suspected of direct or indirect involvement in the crime

24. Make notes under the following headings:

- Two types of questioning: interview and interrogation
- Ways of improving communication
- Handling an interview
- Miranda warning
- Overcoming barriers to communication

25. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

26. Speak on interview and interrogation.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. Criminal ... is an ensemble of methods by which crimes are studied and criminals apprehended.
 - a) records
 - b) suspects
 - c) investigation
2. Investigations are divided into two parts: ... investigation, and follow-up investigation.
 - a) preliminary
 - b) secondary
 - c) criminal
3. Most preliminary investigations are conducted by the members of
 - a) Criminal Investigation Department
 - b) Patrol Force
 - c) community

4. A criminal investigator is a person who ... investigations for criminal cases.
 - a) investigate
 - b) conducts
 - c) apprehends
5. Most solved cases rely on both physical evidence and information obtained by interviewing and
 - a) apprehending
 - b) interrogating
 - c) sentencing

2. Fill in: in court, duties, a suspect, force, evidence, searches, scientists, information, of victims, investigation.

- 1 criminal ...
- 2 identity ...
- 3 identify ...
- 4 patrol ...
- 5 crime scene ...
- 6 testifying ...
- 7 gathering ...
- 8 common ...
- 9 forensic ...
- 10 detailed ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. Sometimes a suspect may **be wanted** / **to want** for another crime.
2. Dogs can be trained **to track and locate** / **to have tracked and located** suspects, explosives and narcotics.
3. Information **to be processed** / **to process** is obtained during an investigation.
4. **To search** / **to be searched** a building an officer must have a warrant.
5. Using dogs **to locate** / **to be located** narcotics greatly assists law enforcement officers.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words from the box.

purpose; information; offenses; to conduct; criminals

1. Criminal investigation is an ensemble of methods by which crimes are studied and ... apprehended.
2. The ... of preliminary investigation is to determine whether or not a crime was committed and to identify a suspect.
3. In this stage of investigation, police department try to find more detailed information about the ... and the suspects.
4. Most of police officer's time is spent meeting people and obtaining ... from them.

5. It is important ... interrogations in a place that is private and free from interruptions.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. How are the two parts of an investigation called?
 - a) The two parts of an investigation are called interrogating and interviewing
 - b) Investigations are divided into two parts: preliminary investigation, and follow-up investigation
 - c) The two parts of an investigation are called the beginning and the end
2. What investigations does a criminal investigator conduct?
 - a) A criminal investigator conducts all kinds of civil and criminal investigations
 - b) A criminal investigator conducts preliminary investigations
 - c) A criminal investigator conducts criminal investigations
3. What are the ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating?
 - a) The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to punish a suspect
 - b) The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to identify those responsible for a crime and to eliminate the innocent from suspicion
 - c) The ultimate goals of interviewing and interrogating are to complete an investigation
4. Why is it important to repeat questions during interrogation?
 - a) Repetition is the best way to uncover lies
 - b) It is it important to repeat questions for a suspect to hear them better
 - c) It is it important to repeat questions for a suspect to understand them
5. What interrogator's actions are considered illegal?
 - a) During interrogation an investigator should not stand
 - b) Physical force, threats of force or other physical, mental or psychological abuse are illegal during interrogation
 - c) During interrogation the investigator should not use a video camera

Module VIII

DRUG ABUSE AND LAW ENFORCEMENT

Part A

Lead-in

- Is drug abuse a global problem now?
- Whose responsibility is solving this problem?



*United Nation's Office
on Drugs and Crime*

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Misuse of Drugs Act 1971

The Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 is the main law to control and classify drugs that are 'dangerous or otherwise harmful' when misused. The main difference from the Medicines Act is that the Misuse of Drugs Act also prohibits unlawful possession. To enforce this law the police have the special powers to stop, detain and search people on 'reasonable suspicion' that they are in possession of a controlled drug.

The act lists all illegal (or controlled) drugs in the UK and divides them into 3 classes — A, B and C — based on the harm they cause to individuals and society. Class A drugs are considered the most harmful. This is commonly known as the drug classification system.

The act makes it illegal for people to:

- possess illegal drugs
- possess illegal drugs with intent to supply
- supply or offer to supply illegal drugs (including giving them away for free or sharing with others)
- produce illegal drugs
- import or export illegal drugs
- allow a house, flat or office to be used by people to undertake any of these unlawful activities

Since 2010, the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 has been amended to control new drugs, including a number of new psychoactive substances.

On 10 June 2013, a temporary class drug order was made on two groups of new psychoactive substances (or 'legal highs') — NBOMe and benzofuran compounds — making them illegal for 12 months.

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The main characteristics of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 is that it is:
 - a) prohibits taking drugs
 - b) gives classification of controlled drugs and prohibits unlawful possession
 - c) allows taking drugs
2. The classification of illegal drugs is based on:
 - a) the price of the drugs
 - b) the age of their users
 - c) the harm they cause to individuals and society
3. The most harmful of all drugs is considered:
 - a) class C
 - b) class B
 - c) class A
4. A temporary class drug order:
 - a) was made on two groups of new psychoactive substances
 - b) revised the drug classification system
 - c) divided all controlled drugs into 2 classes

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Drug Enforcement Agencies in the UK

Serious Organised Crime Agency

The Serious Organised Crime Agency (SOCA) was set up in April 2006 to focus on those who make fortunes from drugs, human **trafficking**, major fraud and **counterfeiting**. It existed from 1 April, 2006 until 7 October, 2013.

SOCA was an intelligence-led agency with law enforcement powers and harm **reduction** responsibilities. Harm in this context is the **damage** caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as drug trafficking and related offences.

Police contribute to the Government's drugs strategy by:

- *Enforcing the law on controlled drugs as set out in the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971.* Controlled drugs are divided into three classes according to their potential harm. Class A drugs (e.g. heroin, cocaine) are believed to be the most dangerous and so carry the highest penalties.
- *Tackling drug-related crime.* Drug-related crime falls into three types: crimes of **supply**, crimes committed as a consequence of dependency or intoxication (drug-related offending) and crimes of possession of illegal substances.

Police actions within these strategy areas include:

- Targeting middle level dealers or importers and local networks of supply.
- Continuing activity against individual suppliers, based on intelligence from sources and **surveillance**.

In June 2011, it was announced that SOCA's operations would be merged into a larger National Crime Agency to launch in 2013. The new agency, created through the Crime and Courts Act 2013, commenced operations on 7 October, 2013. The NCA is a new crime-fighting agency with national and international powers to work in partnership with other law enforcement organisations leading the UK's fight to cut serious and organised crime.

Types of drugs

Class	Drug	Possession	Supply and Production
A	Crack cocaine, cocaine, ecstasy (MDMA), heroin, LSD	Up to 7 years in prison, an unlimited fine or both	Up to life in prison, an unlimited fine or both
B	Amphetamines, barbiturates, cannabis, synthetic cannabinoids	Up to 5 years in prison, an unlimited fine or both	Up to 14 years in prison, an unlimited fine or both
C	Some less potent painkillers, stimulants and sedatives; anabolic steroids, and ketamine	Up to 2 years in prison, an unlimited fine or both	Up to 14 years in prison, an unlimited fine or both
Temporary	None	None, but police can take away a suspected temporary class drug	Up to 14 years in prison, an unlimited fine or both

The Home Office can ban new drugs for 1 year under a “temporary banning order” while they decide how the drugs should be classified.

Police can issue a warning or an on-the-spot fine of £80 if you’re found with cannabis.

Possessing drugs

You may be charged with possessing an illegal substance if you’re caught with drugs, whether they’re yours or not.

If you’re under 18, the police are allowed to tell your parent, guardian or carer that you’ve been caught with drugs.

Your penalty will depend on:

- the class and quantity of drug
- where you and the drugs were found
- your personal history (previous crimes, including any previous drug offences)
- other aggravating or mitigating factors

Dealing or supplying drugs. Drugs penalties

The police will probably charge you if they suspect you of supplying drugs. The penalty is likely to be more severe if you are found to be supplying or dealing drugs. Sharing drugs is also considered supplying.

The penalties depend on which drug and the amount you have, and whether you are also dealing or producing the drug. The most severe **penalty** can be an unlimited fine and life in prison.

Notes:

The Serious Organized Crime Agency (SOCA) — агентство по борьбе с особо опасной организованной преступностью

National Crime Agency (NCA) — Национальное агентство по борьбе с преступностью

make fortunes — делать состояние

temporary banning order — распоряжение на временный запрет

Study Skills

4. Learn the vocabulary

activity <i>n</i>	деятельность
affect <i>v</i>	оказывать воздействие
aggravating	отягчающий, усугубляющий
amount <i>n</i>	количество, величина
ban <i>v, n</i>	запрещать, запрет
cannabis <i>n</i>	конопля, марихуана, гашиш
carer <i>n</i> (syn. guardian)	воспитатель, опекун, попечитель
cause <i>v</i>	заставлять, вызывать
charge <i>v / n</i>	обвинять, обвинение
consequence <i>n</i>	последствие
continue <i>v</i>	продолжать
contribute <i>v</i>	содействовать, способствовать
counterfeiting <i>n</i>	подделка, фальшивомонетчество
damage <i>n</i>	ущерб, вред
drug <i>n</i> drug dealing drug supplying drug trafficking drug possession drug related	лекарство, наркотик распространение наркотиков поставка наркотиков торговля наркотиками хранение наркотиков связанный с употреблением наркотиков
fine <i>n</i> on-the-spot fine	штраф штраф на месте
fraud <i>n</i>	обман, мошенничество
harm <i>n</i>	ущерб, вред
intelligence <i>n</i>	разведка
issue <i>v</i>	выдавать (документ)
launch <i>v</i>	начинать, запускать
merge <i>v</i>	сливаться, объединяться
mitigating <i>a</i>	смягчающий, уменьшающий

network <i>n</i>	сеть
produce <i>n</i>	производить
reduction <i>n</i>	уменьшение, сокращение
relate <i>v</i>	иметь отношение
replace <i>v</i>	заменять
share <i>v</i>	совместно использовать
substance <i>n</i>	вещество
supply <i>v</i>	поставлять, снабжать
surveillance <i>n</i>	наблюдение
tackling <i>n</i> tackling international drug trafficking	борьба борьба с международным незаконным оборотом наркотиков
target <i>n, v</i>	цель; направлять (на)
temporary <i>a</i>	временный
warning <i>n</i>	предостережение, предупреждение

5. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 substance	a имеющий отношение к наркотикам
2 warning	b обвинять
3 activity	c обман, мошенничество
4 drug possession	d торговля наркотиками
5 drug related	e конопля, марихуана
6 network	f фальшивомонетчество
7 affect	g наблюдение
8 cannabis	h вещество
9 carry out	i хранение наркотиков
10 drug trafficking	j штраф
11 charge	k оказывать воздействие
12 surveillance	l предостережение
13 fine	m сеть
14 fraud	n осуществлять, выполнять
15 counterfeiting	o деятельность

6. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1 агентство по борьбе с особо опасной организованной преступностью	a targeting middle level dealers
2 правоприменительные органы, ведущие борьбу Соединенного Королевства, направленную на уменьшение (снижение) особо опасной и организованной преступности	b the police will probably charge you

3	задачи (обязанности) уменьшения причинения вреда	c	falls into three types
4	применение закона о контролируемых наркотиках	d	the new agency created through the Crime and Courts Act 2013
5	делится на 3 вида	e	the penalty is likely to be more severe
6	направлена на дилеров среднего уровня	f	harm reduction responsibilities
7	основанные на данных из источников и наблюдений	g	the Home Office can ban new drugs for 1 year
8	новое агентство, созданное на основании закона о судах и преступности	h	law enforcement organisations leading the UK's fight to cut serious and organised crime
9	агентство с разведывательными функциями	i	the Serious Organised Crime Agency
10	новое агентство, борющееся с преступностью	j	dealing or producing the drug
11	Министерство внутренних дел может запретить новые наркотики на 1 год	k	based on intelligence from sources and surveillance
12	являются ли они Вашими или нет	l	intelligence-led agency
13	наказание, вероятно, будет более серьезным	m	a new crime-fighting agency
14	распространение или производство наркотика	n	enforcing the law on controlled drugs
15	полиция, вероятно, обвинит Вас	o	whether they're yours or not

7. Match the antonyms.

1	misuse	a	safe
2	disorder	b	separate
3	reduction	c	legal
4	dangerous	d	exclude
5	consequence	e	limited
6	finish	f	cause
7	include	g	use
8	controlled	h	allow
9	merge	i	increase
10	unlimited	j	launch
11	ban	k	order
12	illegal	l	uncontrolled

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) Was set up; make fortunes from drugs; human trafficking; intelligence-led agency; with law enforcement powers; harm reduction responsibilities; the damage caused to people and communities; serious organized crime; drug trafficking; related offences; contribute to the Government's drugs strategy; enforcing the law on controlled drugs; as set out in the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971; according to their potential for harm; class A drugs are believed to be the most dangerous; carry the highest penalties; tackling drug-related crime; falls into three types; crimes of supply; crimes committed as a consequence of dependency or intoxication; crimes of possession of illegal substances; targeting middle level dealers; local networks of supply; continuing activity against individual suppliers; based on intelligence from sources and surveillance; SOCA's operations were merged into a larger National Crime Agency; the Crime and Courts Act 2013.

b) Наказание зависит от (вида) наркотика и его количества, которое у Вас есть; самое суровое наказание; неограниченный штраф или тюрьма; Министерство внутренних дел; запретить новые наркотики; распоряжение на временное запрещение; пока они решают, как наркотики должны классифицироваться; полиция может предупредить или оштрафовать на месте; если у Вас найдут марихуану; хранение наркотиков; Вас могут обвинить в хранении нелегального (запрещенного) вещества; если Вам нет 18 лет; опекун или попечитель; Вас поймали с наркотиками; Ваше наказание будет зависеть от; класс и количество наркотиков; включая любые предыдущие преступления, связанные с наркотиками; иные отягчающие или смягчающие факторы; конопля, марихуана.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Агентство по борьбе с особо опасной организованной преступностью было создано в апреле 2006 года.
2. Оно существовало с 1 апреля 2006 года до 7 октября 2013 года.
3. Вред, в этом контексте, — это ущерб, причиненный людям и обществу особо опасной организованной преступностью.
4. Контролируемые наркотики делятся на три класса согласно их потенциальной возможности причинить вред.
5. Новое агентство, созданное на основании закона о преступности и судах 2013 года, начало работать 7 октября 2013 года.
6. Наказание зависит от вида и количества наркотиков, которые у Вас есть, а также от того, распространяете ли Вы его или производите.
7. Полиция может также предупредить Вас или оштрафовать на 80 фунтов, если у Вас нашли марихуану.
8. Если Вам нет 18 лет, полиция может сообщить Вашим родителям, опекуну или попечителю, что у Вас нашли наркотики.
9. Другие отягчающие или смягчающие факторы.
10. Совместное потребление наркотиков также считается распространением.

10. Match the words in bold in the text to their definitions.

- a** a harm or injury impairing the value or usefulness of something or the health or normal function of a person
- b** the act or instance of providing what is needed
- c** the action of reducing smth or the state of being reduced
- d** punishment, especially a fine, for a breach of law or contract
- e** imitate fraudulently (a coin, handwriting, etc.); forge
- f** a careful watch kept on sb. suspected of being wrong
- g** a deal in smth, especially illegally

11. Use the words / phrases in the box to make word combinations / sentences with the following:

**Police
Drug(s)**

operations; importers; activity against individual suppliers; dependency or intoxication; strategy; local networks of supply. activity based on intelligence; targeting middle level dealers; dealing or supplying; are caught with; tackling drug-related crime; related crime; related offending; illegal ...substances; enforcing the law on controlled drugs; the Misuse of... Act 1971; trafficking; will probably charge you; the amount of; sharing; possessing; ban new; types of

12. Choose the correct word / words.

1. SOCA was an intelligence-led agency with **law enforcement / unlimited** powers and harm reduction responsibilities.

2. Controlled drugs are divided into three classes according to their potential **ability / harm**.

3. Drug-related crime falls into three types: crimes of supply, crimes committed as a consequence of dependency or intoxication and crimes of possession of illegal **substances / behaviour**.

4. The new agency, **completed / created** through the Crime and Courts Act 2013, commenced operations on 7 October 2013.

5. The NCA is a new crime-fighting agency with national and international **borders / powers** leading the UK's fight to cut serious and organised crime.

6. The penalties **depend on / consist of** which drug and the amount you have, and whether you are also dealing or producing the drug.

7. The most severe penalty can be an unlimited fine and life **in the country / in prison**.

8. Your penalty will also depend on other **aggravating / personal** or mitigating factors.

9. **The judge / The police** will probably charge you if they suspect you of supplying drugs.

10. **Class A / Class B** drugs (e.g. heroin, cocaine) are believed to be the most dangerous and so carry the highest penalties in England and Wales.

13. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

Fighting, result, was established, punishments, crimes, serious, amount, prohibit; accused of, decrease, began, start

1. The Serious Organised Crime Agency (SOCA) was set up in April 2006.
2. Harm in this context is the damage caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as drug trafficking and related offences.
3. Class A drugs (e.g. heroin, cocaine) are believed to be the most dangerous and so carry the highest penalties.
4. Tackling drug-related crime.
5. In June 2011, it was announced that SOCA's operations would be merged into a larger National Crime Agency to launch in 2013.
6. The new agency, created through the Crime and Courts Act 2013, commenced operations on 7 October 2013.
7. The Home Office can ban new drugs for 1 year under a “temporary banning order” while they decide how the drugs should be classified.
8. You may be charged with possessing an illegal substance if you’re caught with drugs, whether they’re yours or not.
9. Your penalty will depend on the class and quantity of drug.
10. The penalty is likely to be more severe if you are found to be supplying or dealing drugs.
11. NCA is a new crime-fighting agency with national and international powers to work in partnership with other law enforcement organisations leading the UK's fight to cut serious and organised crime.
12. Drug-related crime falls into three types: crimes of supply, crimes committed as a consequence of dependency or intoxication (drug-related offending) and crimes of possession of illegal substances.

14. Complete the chart.

Verb	Adjective / Participle	Noun
charge		
	found	
		consideration
classify		
	possessive	
		counterfeiting
produce		
	reduced	
		aggravation
depend		
	disruptive	
		offender
ban		
	harmful	
		mitigation

15. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Hair sample drug **(0) testing** is a great way to detect whether or not a person has (1) ... drugs in the past 90 days. Hair drug testing serves the purpose of (2) ... questions about an individual's drug use history. Hair drug testing is very simple and (3) ... only a sample of hair in order to be (4) Hair testing (5) ... fast and

(0) test
(1) use
(2) answer

(3) require
(4) complete
(5) be

more accurate than other drug tests. Once the results recorded, you are (6) ... notification of the result. Hair sample drug testing can detect all of the major (7) ... of drugs, (8) ... marijuana, opiates, ecstasy, and cocaine. (9) ... can safeguard their teens against drug abuse, and help them quit the abuse if test (10) ... come back positive.

(6) send
(7) type
(8) include
(9) Parent
(10) result

16. Use the words and combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

The Home Office; enforcing; supplying; possessing; was set up; the damage; the most dangerous; targeting; powers; three classes; make fortunes; penalty; types; record

1. The Serious Organised Crime Agency (SOCA) ... in April 2006.
2. The agency focuses on those who ... from drugs, human trafficking, major fraud and counterfeiting.
3. SOCA was an intelligence-led agency with law enforcement ... and harm reduction responsibilities.
4. Harm is the ... caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as drug trafficking and related offences.
5. Police contribute to the Government's drugs strategy by ... the law on controlled drugs.
6. Controlled drugs are divided into ... according to their potential for harm.
7. Class A drugs are believed to be ... and so carry the highest penalties.
8. Drug-related crime falls into three
9. Police actions within these strategy areas include ... middle level dealers or importers and local networks of supply.
10. The most severe ... can be an unlimited fine and life in prison.
11. ... can ban new drugs for 1 year under a "temporary banning order".
12. You may be charged with ... an illegal substance if you're caught with drugs, whether they're yours or not.
13. The penalty is likely to be more severe if you are found to be ... or dealing drugs.

14. The amount of drugs found and whether a person has a criminal ... will affect the penalty.

17. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **The Serious** / Organised / Agency / Crime / set up / was / April / in / 2006.
2. **It** / existed / 1 April / 2006 / until / 2013 / from / 7 October.
3. **SOCA** / an intelligence-led / agency / was / with / enforcement / powers / law.
4. **Controlled** / divided / are / into / drugs / three / classes / according to / harm / their / potential.
5. **Class A** / are believed / drugs / dangerous / to be / the most.
6. **Drug-related** / falls into / types / crime / three.
7. **The NCA** / crime-fighting / a new / agency / is / with / powers / national / and / international.
8. **The most** / penalty / severe / be / can / an unlimited / life / fine / and / in prison.
9. **The Home** / can / drugs / ban / new / for / 1 year / under / Office / banning / a "temporary / order".
10. **Sharing** / supplying / is / also / considered / drugs.

18. Translate the sentences from the text minding Gerund, Participle, and Infinitive and Infinitive Constructions.

1. The Serious Organised Crime Agency (SOCA) was set up in April 2006 to focus on those who make fortunes from drugs, human trafficking, major fraud and counterfeiting.
2. Harm in this context is the damage caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as drug trafficking and related offences
3. Class A drugs (e.g. heroin, cocaine) are believed to be the most dangerous and so carry the highest penalties.
4. Police actions within these strategy areas include targeting middle level dealers or importers and local networks of supply.
5. NCA is a new crime-fighting agency with national and international powers to work in partnership with other law enforcement organisations leading the UK's fight to cut serious and organised crime.
6. You may be charged with possessing an illegal substance if you're caught with drugs, whether they're yours or not.
7. The penalty is likely to be more severe if you are found to be supplying or dealing drugs.
8. Sharing drugs is also considered supplying.
9. The police will probably charge you if they suspect you of supplying drugs.
10. The penalties depend on which drug and the amount you have, and whether you are also dealing or producing the drug.

19. Fill in: Crime Agency; drugs; importers; powers; the law; suppliers; drugs strategy; trafficking; responsibilities; from drugs; agency; life in prison; substances; penalties; caused to people; Act 1971; crime; offences; Act 2013; order. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 The Serious Organized ...	11 controlled ...
2 make fortunes ...	12 the Misuse of Drugs ...
3 human ...	13 carry the highest ...
4 intelligence-led ...	14 tackling drug-related ...
5 law enforcement ...	15 crimes of possession of illegal ...
6 harm reduction ...	16 targeting middle level dealers or ...
7 damage ...	17 activity against individual ...
8 related ...	18 Crime and Courts ...
9 the Government's ...	19 An unlimited fine and ...
10 enforcing ...	20 temporary banning ...

20. Choose the correct form of the verb.

- Police believe that the addict **must use / must have used** a new type of drug.
- Judging by his behaviour they decided that a boy **might be / might been** a drug addict.
- Ted's neighbours say that he **must charge / must have been charged** with supplying drugs and is waiting for trial.
- The amount of drugs found and his criminal record **could have been influenced / could have influenced** his penalty.
- A doctor says that the boy's death **could cause / could have been caused** by overdose.
- At the moment police **may be searching / might have been searched** a criminal.
- The traffic is stopped. There **must be / must have been** an accident.
- The burglary **might have been committed / might committed** at night.
- Everybody believed the young man **couldn't have committed / couldn't have been committed** a crime.
- Police are questioning all the suspects who **could have taken / can take** part in the robbery.

21. Complete the sentences according to the text.

- The Serious Organised Crime Agency (SOCA) was set up in April 2006 to focus on those who make fortunes from drugs
- SOCA was an intelligence-led agency with law enforcement powers and harm....
- The damage is caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as
- Police contribute to the Government's drugs strategy by enforcing the law on controlled drugs as set out in
- Controlled drugs are divided into three classes according to

6. Class A drugs are believed to be the most dangerous and so carry
7. Drug-related crime falls into three types: crimes of supply, crimes committed as a consequence of dependency or intoxication (drug-related offending) and crimes of
8. Police actions within these strategy areas include targeting middle level dealers or importers and
9. Your penalty will depend on:
10. Sharing drugs is also
11. The police will probably charge you if they
12. The amount of drugs found and whether you have a criminal record

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

Watching videos and speaking

22. Watch the video “2013 European Drug Report” and do the tasks.

a) Before watching the video, try to remember the following words and word combinations:

overview	обзор
data	данные
decline	уменьшаться, сокращаться
solve a problem the problem is far from being solved	решить проблему проблема далека от решения
switch from one substance to another	переходить с одного вещества (наркотика) на другой
illicit	незаконный, нелегальный
seizure	изъятие, конфискация
route	маршрут
substitute	заменять
domestic	внутренний, бытовой
cultivation	выращивание, культивирование
herb	трава
increase	увеличивать. увеличение
treatment	лечение
frequently	часто
early warning system	система раннего предупреждения
chemicals	химикаты
threat	угроза
valuable	ценный
issue drug related issues	вопрос, проблема проблемы, касающиеся наркотиков
spread	распространять(ся)

b) Watch the video “2013 European Drug Report”. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the video.

1. The 2013 European Drug Report includes
 - a) the number of drug-related crimes in Europe
 - b) classification of drugs
 - c) statistical bulletin and country overviews, presenting national data and analysis providing perspectives on drugs
2. The drug problem is far from being solved because:
 - a) the government doesn't want to solve it
 - b) drugs users are switching from one substance to another and more and more drugs are appearing on the licit and illicit markets
 - c) it is not a serious problem
3. The number of Europeans who have used an illicit drug at some point in their lives is:
 - a) 8 million
 - b) 5 million
 - c) 85 million
4. The greatest drug-related health problems are caused by:
 - a) cannabis
 - b) heroine and other opiates
 - c) lack of medicine
5. The most commonly used illicit stimulants in Europe are:
 - a) cocaine, amphetamine and ecstasy
 - b) coffee
 - c) caffeine tablets
6. The seizures of cocaine have decreased in Europe because:
 - a) organised crime groups changed their trafficking routes and methods
 - b) drugs are not supplied any more
 - c) police don't consider it necessary to seize them
7. Between 2002 and 2011 the seizures of methamphetamine in Europe:
 - a) decreased
 - b) were the same as in previous years
 - c) increased
8. Domestic cultivation of herbal cannabis:
 - a) is not practiced any more
 - b) has spread to all countries of Europe
 - c) has spread to the USA
9. Clients entering treatment for the first time most frequently used:
 - a) heroine
 - b) cannabis
 - c) synthetic drugs
10. The number of new drugs in 2012:
 - a) was increasing
 - b) was the same as in previous years
 - c) was decreasing

11. The 2013 European Drug Report and its valuable information will serve as a reference for:

- a) drug addicts
- b) farmers
- c) policymakers, specialists and practitioners working with drug related issues

c) Watch the video once more to make sure that your choices are correct.

23. Watch 3 videos dealing with drug abuse and speak on problems caused by drugs.

Video I

a) Before watching the video “Why do People Take Drugs?”, learn the vocabulary.

cause	вынуждать, заставлять, быть причиной
relieve	уменьшать, облегчать
pain	боль
painkiller	болеутоляющее
condition	состояние, условие
unwanted condition	нежелательное состояние
boredom	скука
come down	спускаться, выходить
destruction	разрушение
echo	отражаться
reason	причина
affect	влиять
mention	упоминать
experience	опыт

b) Watch the video. Combine logically the words / word combinations from the 2 columns according to the video.

1	cause	a	to relax themselves
2	relieve	b	echoes on a body
3	take painkillers	c	this boredom or the stress or nervousness
4	smoke marijuana	d	a person of unwanted condition
5	comes down	e	to relieve pain
6	temporarily relieve	f	people to take drugs
7	the destruction	g	to a slightly lower position

c) Watch the video and answer the questions.

1. What is the main reason for taking drugs?
2. What are 3 unwanted conditions when people may want to take drugs?
3. How do drugs affect (influence) a person?
4. How does a person feel after he “comes down”?
5. What experience does a person have after taking drugs?

Video II

a) Before watching the video “Why are Drugs So Hard to Quit?”, learn the vocabulary.

quit	оставлять,прекращать
slip	освобождаться
addiction	пристрастие, наркомания
brain	мозг
affect	влиять
chemical	химический
send out	посылать
choice	выбор
way the way you feel stay that way	путь, способ то, как Вы чувствуете оставаться в этом состоянии
pleasure	удовольствие
experience	испытывать (чувствовать)
enjoy	получать удовольствие
feel rush at high	пребывать в состоянии эйфории
keep from	удерживать от

b) Watch the video. Combine logically the words / word combinations from the 2 columns according to the video.

1 quit drugs	a a control tower
2 slip and start	b rush of a high
3 addiction is	c it can be done
4 your brain is like	d using again
5 chemical signals in your brain	e a brain disease
6 this affects	f for ever
7 normally this pleasure centre acts when	g change
8 he first feels	h the high is not so strong
9 but overtime	i your choices, your actions and even the way you feel
10 you need a drug	j you experience something you enjoy
11 quitting drug is hard, but	k to keep you from feeling bad

c) Answer the questions.

1. What is addiction?
2. Can people easily quit taking drugs?
3. Why is brain compared to a control tower?
4. What happens to the chemical signals in the human's brain after taking drugs?
5. What does this change affect?
6. Why can't a person quit taking drugs?
7. Is it necessary to quit?

Video III

a) Before watching the video “An Epidemic of Prescription Drugs in the USA”, learn the vocabulary”.

abuse deadly abuse abuser (addict)	злоупотребление злоупотребление со смертельным исходом наркоман
half	половина
approval	одобрение
prescription people being addicted to prescription drugs	предписание, рецепт люди, у которых сформировалась зависимость от отпускаемых по рецепту лекарств наркотического действия
overdose	передозировка
pain pain reliever (pain killer)	боль болеутоляющее
methadone	метадон
morphine	морфий
hydrocodone (vicodin)	гидрокодон, викодин
oxycodone	оксикодон
decade	десятилетие
seek help	обращаться за помощью
anxiety	беспокойство, боязнь, неприятности
pill	таблетка
counseling	консультирование
treatment	лечение
obesity	ожирение
aging	старение
manage their pain	справляться с болью
lose weight	сбросить вес

2. Watch the video. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the video.

1. More than half of the overdoses involved:
 - a) taking drugs for pleasure
 - b) heroine
 - c) drugs that need doctor's prescription
2. Death rates from prescription drugs were highest:
 - a) among people 20–25 years old
 - b) among teenagers
 - c) among people 45–54 years old
3. Recent Government report says that in the past decade pain killer deaths:
 - a) increased more than 3 times
 - b) increased 3 times
 - c) haven't increased
4. At Malibu Beach Recovery Center near Los Angeles drug abusers:
 - a) undergo medical treatment
 - b) learn yoga and other ways to deal with anxiety, stress and pain
 - c) attend special lectures
5. There is a special program on TV that:
 - a) collects money for drug abusers' treatment
 - b) delivers lectures on drug abuse
 - c) shows the effect of drugs on users and their families
6. Many patients may be able to manage their pain if:
 - a) they lose weight and get exercise and physical therapy
 - b) used other drugs
 - c) did some physical work

c) Answer the questions.

1. Do you think taking prescription drugs may become the cause of many problems in other countries as well? Why do you think so?
2. Do you think that getting exercise and physical therapy may help patients to recover without taking prescription drugs?

24. With a partner, work out the roles based on 3 videos. Then switch the roles.

Cadet A is a journalist visiting a drug abuser's Recovery Center.

Cadet B is a doctor from the centre.

Use the language from 3 videos and such language as:

Cadet A:

- What is the main reason for taking drugs?
- Can people easily quit taking drugs?
- Why is brain compared to a control tower?

Cadet B:

- echoes on a body
- relax themselves
- abuse
- deadly abuse
- abuser (addict)

- What happens to the chemical signals in the human's brain after taking drugs?
- How do drugs affect (influence) a person?
- Why can't a person quit taking drugs?
- Is it necessary to quit?
- How does a person feel after he "comes down"?
- What experience does a person have after taking drugs?
- Is drug abuse a personal or social problem?
- What is the reason of taking prescription drugs?
- How can people quit taking prescription drugs?
- people being addicted to prescription drugs
- take reliever (pain killer) to relieve pain
- overdose
- feel rush at high
- counseling
- treatment
- unwanted condition
- keep from
- a brain disease
- to relax themselves
- manage their pain
- seek help
- destruction
- experience pleasure
- this effects your choices, your actions, even the way you feel
- smoke marijuana
- quit drugs
- addiction
- obesity
- lose weight
- morphine
- anxiety

26. Match the questions in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1 What did the Serious Organised Crime Agency (SOCA) focus on?	a Police can issue a warning or an on-the-spot fine of £80 if you're found with cannabis
2 What were the powers and responsibilities of the Serious Organised Crime Agency ?	b Drugs (e.g. heroin, cocaine) are believed to be the most dangerous and so carry the highest penalties
3 What is the harm caused to people and communities by serious organised crime?	c Your penalty will depend on: the class and quantity of drug; where you and the drugs were found; your personal history (previous crimes, including any previous drug offences); other aggravating or mitigating factors
4 How do police contribute to the Government's drugs strategy?	d Police contribute to the Government's drugs strategy by enforcing the law on controlled drugs as set out in the

- Misuse of Drugs Act 1971
- 5 How are controlled drugs divided? **e** The most severe penalty can be an unlimited fine and life in prison
 - 6 What drugs carry the highest penalties? **f** The Home Office can ban new drugs for 1 year under a 'temporary banning order' while they decide how the drugs should be classified
 - 7 What types is drug-related crime divided into? **g** The penalty is likely to be more severe if you are found to be supplying or dealing drugs. Sharing drugs is also considered supplying
 - 8 What are police actions within the Government's drugs strategy? **h** SOCA was an intelligence-led agency with law enforcement powers and harm reduction responsibilities
 - 9 What can police do if you're found with cannabis? **i** Controlled drugs are divided into three classes according to their potential for harm
 - 10 What is the most severe penalty associated with drugs? **j** Drug-related crime falls into three types: crimes of supply, crimes committed as a consequence of dependency or intoxication (drug-related offending) and crimes of possession of illegal substances
 - 11 How does a "temporary banning order" work? **k** Police actions within these strategy areas include: targeting middle level dealers or importers and local networks of supply; activity against individual suppliers; working with drug action teams to disrupt local drugs markets
 - 12 When may a person be charged with possessing an illegal substance? **m** Harm is the damage caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as drug trafficking and related offences
 - 13 What does punishment on drugs depend on? **n** The Serious Organised Crime Agency was set up in April 2007 to focus on those who make fortunes from drugs, human trafficking, major fraud and counterfeiting
 - 14 When is the penalty on drugs more severe? **o** The NCA has the national and international powers together with other law enforcement organizations to lead the UK's fight to cut serious and organised crime
 - 15 What agency was SOCA merged into in 2013? **p** You may be charged with possessing an illegal substance if you're caught

- with drugs, whether they're yours or not
- 16 What are the powers of the NCA? **q** The SOCA was merged into a larger National Crime Agency created through the Crime and Courts Act 2013

27. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- The tasks and responsibilities of The Serious Organised Crime Agency
- The powers and responsibilities of the NCA
- Police contribution to the Government's drugs strategy
- Police actions within the Government's drugs strategy
- Drug classification
- Drugs penalties
- Possessing drugs
- Dealing and supplying drugs

28. Speak on drugs and law enforcement.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. The Serious Organised Crime Agency (SOCA) was set up in April 2007 to focus on those who make fortunes from drugs, human ..., major fraud and counterfeiting.
 - a) trafficking
 - b) investigation
 - c) interrogation
2. Controlled drugs are divided into three classes according to their potential
 - a) use
 - b) harm
 - c) cost
3. Class A drugs are believed to be the most ... and so carry the highest penalties.
 - a) useful
 - b) expensive
 - c) dangerous
4. Drug-related crime falls into three ...: crimes of supply, crimes committed as a consequence of dependency or intoxication, and crimes of possession of illegal substances.
 - a) types
 - b) cases
 - c) methods
5. The Home Office can ... new drugs for 1 year under a 'temporary banning order' while they decide how the drugs should be classified.
 - a) let
 - b) ban
 - c) search

2. Fill in: markets, prison, crimes, possession, penalty, classes, harm, drugs, fine, trafficking.

- 1 illegal ...
- 2 unlawful ...
- 3 three ...
- 4 drug-related ...
- 5 human ...
- 6 potential ...
- 7 drug ...
- 8 unlimited ...
- 9 severe ...
- 10 life in ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. All drivers and pedestrians **must observe / must have observed** traffic rules.
2. The accident **could cause / could have been caused** by bad weather conditions.
3. Police believe that one of the drivers **must take / must have taken** drugs.
4. Police suspect that the dealers **may selling / might be selling** drugs to children.
5. The traffic is stopped, there **must be / must have been** an accident.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. SOCA was an intelligence-led agency with law enforcement ... and harm reduction responsibilities.
2. Harm in this context is the ... caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as drug trafficking and related offences.
3. The penalties ... which drug and the amount you have, and whether you are also dealing or producing the drug.
4. The most severe ... can be an unlimited fine and life in prison.
5. Sharing drugs is also considered

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b or c).

1. What were the powers and responsibilities of the Serious Organised Crime Agency?
 - a) The SOCA was responsible for combating organised crime
 - b) The SOCA was an intelligence-led agency with law enforcement powers and harm reduction responsibilities
 - c) The agency was responsible for drug addicts' treatment
2. What is the harm caused to people and communities by serious organised crime?
 - a) Drug addicts can become criminals
 - b) Drug addicts can die from overdose
 - c) Harm is the damage caused to people and communities by serious organised crime such as drug trafficking and related offences

3. How are controlled drugs divided?
 - a) Controlled drugs are divided into expensive and cheap drugs
 - b) Controlled drugs are divided into three classes according to their potential for harm
 - c) Controlled drugs are divided into useful and harmful drugs
4. When may a person be charged with possessing an illegal substance?
 - a) You may be charged with possessing an illegal substance if you're caught with drugs, whether they're yours or not
 - b) A person may be charged with possessing an illegal substance while using it
 - c) A person may be charged with possessing an illegal substance while buying it
5. What is the most severe punishment associated with drugs?
 - a) The most severe penalty associated with drugs is 10 years in prison
 - b) The most severe penalty can be an unlimited fine and life in prison
 - c) The most severe penalty associated with drugs is an unlimited fine

DRUG ABUSE AND LAW ENFORCEMENT IN RUSSIA

Lead-in

- Whose responsibility is drug problem in Russia?
- How can police help solve this problem?



US Drug Enforcement Administrator Michele M. Leonhart and Russia's Federal Drug Control Service Director Victor Ivanov attending the 30th International Drug Enforcement Conference

Reading 1

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Drug Classification in Great Britain

There are different approaches to dealing with drugs around the world. Some countries place a greater emphasis on law enforcement — while others do not. The British system revolves around the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971. This legislation classifies drugs into three groups — A, B and C. Class A drugs are the most harmful and include heroin and cocaine. Class B includes cannabis, strong synthetic stimulants and class C includes steroids and some less potent painkillers and tranquilisers (sedatives).

Drugs which are classified are illegal for sale and consumption. That means it is a criminal offence to possess or sell the drugs, and the courts can fine and jail offenders or order some other form of community-based sentence. Recently, European countries have started to differentiate between the drug trafficker, who is considered a criminal, and the drug user, who can be considered more as a sick person who needs medical treatment.

In most of Europe, the penalties for drug-related offences are less severe for possession and more severe for trafficking or production.

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (A, B or C) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. According to the British system all drugs are divided into
 - a) two groups
 - b) three groups — A, B and C
 - c) five groups
2. The most harmful are
 - a) class C drugs
 - b) class B drugs
 - c) class A drugs
3. Drugs which are classified are
 - a) legal for sale.
 - b) illegal for consumption.
 - c) illegal for sale and consumption.
4. In most of Europe, the penalties for drug-related offences are
 - a) less severe for possession and more severe for trafficking or production.
 - b) severe for consumption.
 - c) the most severe for possession.

Reading 2

3. Read the text and be ready to do task 4 after the text.

Drug Abuse and Law Enforcement in Russia

Drugs and Crime

According to the annual report of the UN International Narcotics Control Board (INCB), the estimated number of drug users worldwide in 2009 was between 172 million and 250 million people. There are 2.5 million drug addicts and more than 5.1 million drug users in Russia, according to the report by the International Narcotics Control Board. These figures have nearly doubled since 2002. Russia ranks first in the world in the consumption of heroin; 21% of the world's heroin production and 5 % of all opium-based drugs are consumed in Russia, according to the UN Office on Drugs and Crime Prevention report, published in October 2009. There are an estimated 1.68 million opiate users in Russia. Every year 80,000 new drug addicts are registered in Russia, and among the drug dependent population, approximately 2–2.5 million are between the ages of 18 and 39. Many of them are **unemployed**, have a chronic history of offending and commit a large number of crimes to finance their addiction. About 200 million crimes related to the sale of opiates to users occur every year in Russia.

Russian Federal Drug Law Enforcement Agencies

The Federal Drug Control Service of the Russian Federation (FSKN) was a federal law enforcement agency of executive authority responsible for drafting state policy, legal regulation, control and monitoring in combating drug trafficking and psychotropic substances.

On April 5, 2016, the Federal Drug Control Service was dissolved, and its functions and authorities were transferred to Main Drugs Control Directorate of the Ministry of Internal Affairs of Russia (GUKON). The Directorate is a part of the Public Security Service of the MIA (MVD) within the Russian Federation). Like FSKN before, the Directorate is responsible for combating drug **smuggling** and investigating drug crimes.

In June 2012, the government launched the “State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020” that calls all agencies and all levels of government to join in the fight against illicit drugs. The Strategy urges improvements in supply and demand reduction, and outlines new legislation aimed at deterring drug trafficking. The new legislation is aimed at deterring drug trafficking and stipulating life **sentences** for trafficking large quantities of drugs. Previously, the maximum sentence was 20 years. The law also allows for the **confiscation** of property and money obtained by drug dealing as punitive measures and also mandatory **treatment** for drug addicts.

Law Enforcement and National Drug Policy:

- monitoring the trafficking of drugs
- detection, prevention, suppression, and preliminary investigation of drug-related crimes
- coordination of enforcement authorities to combat drug trafficking establishment and maintenance of a unified data bank on issues related to drug trafficking

In combating drug flows, Moscow welcomed 120 top anti-drug officials from around the world on June 5–7, 2013 to discuss possibilities for cooperation in curbing an issue responsible for an estimated 200,000 deaths annually.

The Russian president stressed that it was necessary to more actively find, arrest and confiscate money assets received as a result of illegal operations with drugs and to resist laundering money received from selling opiates of the Afghan origin.

At the same time, the president **warned** against the legalization of any type of drugs, including “soft” ones.

He also supported the central coordinating role of the UN in the fight against the global drug **threat**.

In his opinion, the Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and NATO should fight the drug threat together.

Notes:

The law also allows for the confiscation of property and money obtained by drug dealing — Закон также предусматривает конфискацию имущества и денег, полученных в результате наркобизнеса

The Federal Drug Control Service of the Russian Federation (FSKN) — Федеральная служба Российской Федерации по контролю за оборотом наркотиков (ФСКН)

Main Drugs Control Directorate of the Ministry of Internal Affairs of Russia (GUKON) — Главное управление по контролю за оборотом наркотиков Министерства внутренних дел Российской Федерации (ГУКОН)

the Collective Security Treaty Organization — Организация Договора о коллективной безопасности

The International Narcotics Control Board — Международный комитет по контролю над наркотиками

resist money laundering — противостоять отмыванию денег

«soft» drugs — «легкие» наркотики

Study Skills

4. Learn the vocabulary.

abuse <i>n, v</i> abuse drugs	злоупотребление; злоупотреблять злоупотребление наркотиками
addict <i>n</i> addiction <i>n</i>	наркоман пристрастие, наркомания
annual <i>a</i>	ежегодный
asset <i>n</i>	средства, активы
authority enforcement authorities	власть органы исполнительной власти
authorized <i>a</i>	разрешенный, санкционированный
cannabis <i>n</i>	конопля, марихуана, гашиш
combat <i>v, n</i>	бороться, противодействовать; борьба, противодействие
consume <i>v</i>	потреблять
cooperation <i>n</i>	сотрудничество
curb <i>v</i>	обуздывать
detection <i>n</i>	выявление, обнаружение
detering <i>n</i>	сдерживание
dissolve <i>v</i>	ликвидировать
drafting <i>n</i>	разработка
drug <i>n</i> drug trafficking drug dealing	наркотик, лекарство торговля наркотиками наркобизнес
establishment <i>n</i>	создание
estimate <i>v</i>	оценивать, считать
figure <i>n</i>	цифра, показатель
implement <i>v</i>	реализовывать, осуществлять
issue <i>n</i>	вопрос
join <i>v</i>	присоединяться
launch <i>v</i>	запускать, начинать
mandatory <i>a</i>	обязательный, необходимый
mintenance <i>n</i> maintenance of a unified data bank	сохранение в силе, поддержание ведение единого банка данных
monitoring <i>n</i>	контроль

number <i>n</i>	количество
occur <i>v</i>	случаться, происходить
punitive <i>a</i>	карательный
relate <i>v</i>	иметь отношение
seizure <i>n</i>	изъятие, задержание, конфискация
sentence <i>n</i>	приговор, наказание
smuggling <i>n</i>	контрабанда
staff <i>n</i>	штат, личный состав, сотрудники
stipulate <i>v</i>	обуславливать, предусматривать,
substance <i>n</i>	вещество
supply <i>v, n</i>	снабжать, поставлять; поставка
support <i>v</i>	поддерживать
suppression <i>n</i>	пресечение, подавление
target <i>v</i>	нацеливать
threat <i>n</i>	угроза
transfer <i>v</i>	передавать
treatment <i>n</i>	лечение, обращение
mandatory treatment	принудительное лечение
warn <i>v</i>	предупреждать, предостерегать

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1 threat	a сдерживание
2 estimate	b иметь отношение
3 deterring	c цифра
4 treatment	d разработка
5 substance	e потребление
6 abuse	f лечение
7 figure	g торговля наркотиками
8 relate	h приговор, наказание
9 addict	i угроза
10 consumption	j предостерегать
11 drug trafficking	k злоупотребление
12 warn	l наркоман
13 sentence	m оценивать
14 drafting	n пресечение
15 suppression	o вещество

6. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1 контроль над оборотом наркотиков	a in the fight against the global drug treatment
2 создание и ведение единого банка данных	b have a chronic history of offending
3 законодательство ... преду-	c these figures have nearly doubled

	сма­три­ва­ю­щее по­жи­з­нен­ное тю­ре­м­ное за­клю­че­ние	
4	пра­во­вое ре­гу­ли­ро­ва­ние, кон­троль и над­зор в борь­бе с не­за­кон­ным обо­ро­том нар­ко­ти­ков	d resist laundering money received from selling opiates of the Afghan origin
5	при­ну­ди­тель­ное ле­че­ние нар­ко­ма­нов	e preliminary investigation of drug-related crimes
6	У­прав­ле­ние от­ве­ча­ет за борь­бу с кон­тра­бан­дой нар­ко­ти­ков и рас­сле­до­ва­ния пре­ступ­ле­ний, свя­зан­ных с нар­ко­ти­ка­ми	f join in the fight against illicit drugs
7	эти циф­ры по­чти уд­во­и­лись	g monitoring the trafficking of drugs
8	про­ти­во­сто­ять от­мы­ва­нию де­нег, по­лу­чен­ных от про­да­жи опи­атов аф­ган­ско­го про­ис­хо­жде­ния	h the law also allows for the confiscation of property and money obtained by drug dealing as punitive measures
9	в борь­бе с гло­баль­ной нар­ко­уг­ро­зой	i new legislation aimed at deterring drug trafficking
10	при­со­еди­нить­ся к борь­бе про­тив нар­ко­ти­ков	j the Directorate is responsible for combating drug smuggling and investigating drug crimes
11	Фе­де­раль­ный пра­во­о­хра­ни­тель­ный ор­ган ис­пол­ни­тель­ной вла­сти, от­ве­ча­ю­щий за вы­ра­бот­ку го­су­дар­ствен­ной по­ли­ти­ки	k establishment and maintenance of a unified data bank
12	пре­д­ва­ри­тель­ное рас­сле­до­ва­ние пре­ступ­ле­ний, свя­зан­ных с нар­ко­ти­ка­ми	l mandatory treatment for drug addicts
13	не­од­но­крат­но со­вер­ша­ли пре­ступ­ле­ния	m the legislation ... stipulating life sentences
14	но­вое за­ко­но­да­тель­ство, на­це­лен­ное на сдер­жи­ва­ние не­за­кон­но­го обо­ро­та нар­ко­ти­ков	n Federal law enforcement agency of executive authority responsible for drafting state policy
15	в ка­че­стве кар­атель­ных мер за­кон так­же пре­дус­ма­три­ва­ет кон­фис­ка­цию иму­щес­тва и де­нег, по­лу­чен­ных от нар­ко­биз­не­са	o legal regulation, control and monitoring in combating drug trafficking

7. Match the antonyms.

1 allow	a produce
2 dependent	b impossibility
3 consume	c finish
4 employed	d illicit
5 launch	e establish
6 mandatory	f independent
7 licit	g irresponsible
8 possibility	h unemployed
9 responsible	i ban
10 dissolve	j optional

8. Read and translate the following words and word combinations.

a) There are 2.5 million drug addicts in Russia; according to; the International Narcotics Control Board; consumption of heroine; responsible for drafting state policy; annual report; these figures have nearly doubled; are registered; unemployed; chronic history of offending; commit a large number of crimes; to finance their addiction; crimes related to the sale of opiates; occur every year; monitoring in combating drug trafficking; detection, prevention, suppression, and preliminary investigation of drug-related crimes; combat drug trafficking; combating drug smuggling.

b) Правительство приступило к реализации “Государственной стратегии борьбы с наркотиками на период до 2020 года”; призывает все учреждения и органы управления всех уровней; принять участие в борьбе против незаконных наркотиков; новое законодательство направленно на сдерживание наркотрафика; предусматривающее пожизненное лишение свободы за распространение большого количества наркотиков; в качестве карательных мер; принудительное лечение наркоманов; в борьбе с потоком наркотиков; обсудить возможности сотрудничества; российский президент подчеркнул; конфисковать денежные средства, полученные в результате незаконных операций с наркотиками; противостоять отмыванию денег; полученных в результате продажи опиатов афганского происхождения; против легализации любого вида наркотиков, включая “легкие”.

9. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following:

1. Каждый год в России регистрируется 80000 наркоманов.
2. Россия занимает первое место в мире по потреблению героина.
3. В России насчитывается около 1,68 млн. потребителей опиатов.
4. Многие из них — безработные, неоднократно совершали и совершают преступления, чтобы финансировать свое пристрастие.
5. Федеральная служба Российской Федерации по контролю над оборотом наркотиков (ФСКН) являлась основным правоприменительным органом в области наркотиков.

6. 5 апреля 2016 года ФСКН была ликвидирована, а ее функции и полномочия были переданы в Главное Управления Министерства внутренних дел России по контролю над оборотом наркотиков (ГУКОН).

7. Правоприменительная и национальная политика России в области наркотиков:

- обеспечение контроля над оборотом наркотиков
- выявление, предупреждение, пресечение и предварительное расследование преступлений, связанных с наркотиками
- координация деятельности органов исполнительной власти по противодействию незаконному обороту наркотиков;
- создание и ведение единого банка данных по вопросам, касающимся оборота наркотиков

8. В июне 2012 правительство начало осуществлять государственную стратегию до 2020 года по борьбе с наркотиками.

9. Новое законодательство направлено на предотвращение незаконного оборота наркотиков и предусматривает пожизненное тюремное заключение за торговлю крупными партиями наркотиков.

10. Закон также предусматривает конфискацию имущества и денег, полученных от торговли наркотиками.

11. Обсудить возможность сотрудничества в решении проблемы, являющейся причиной 200000 смертей в год.

12. В то же время президент предостерег относительно легализации любого типа наркотиков, включая «легкие».

10. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 the application of a medical care or attention to a person
- 2 a declaration of an intention to punish or hurt
- 3 the action or an instance of seizing something by force or legal authority
- 4 inform (a person, etc) about a specific danger, hostile person, etc.
- 5 the punishment given by a law court
- 6 taking, sending or bringing goods secretly and illegally into or out of a country , especially without paying custom's duty
- 7 without a paid job but available to work

11. Choose the correct word / words.

1. The growing number of young people abusing **power / drugs** is a serious concern.

2. Many of them are unemployed, have a chronic history of offending and commit a large number of crimes to finance their **addiction / life**.

3. **Federal / local** agencies in Russia conduct investigations of drug trafficking.

4. Monitoring the trafficking of **goods / drugs** is the responsibility of Main Drugs Control Directorate of the Ministry of Internal Affairs of Russia (GUKON).

5. Law enforcement and national drug policy includes establishment and **maintenance / destroying** of a unified data bank on issues related to drug trafficking.

6. About 200 million **crimes / accidents** related to the sale of opiates to users occur every year in Russia.

7. The law also allows for the **buying / confiscation** of property and money obtained by drug dealing.

8. The law stipulates **sort / life** sentences for trafficking large quantities of drugs.

9. The introduction of punitive measures and mandatory **imprisonment / treatment** is allowed by the law.

10. In combating drug **flows / users**, Moscow welcomed 120 top anti-drug officials from around the world.

12. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

happen; started; fight; obtained; inquiries; creation; in accordance with; quantity; seizure; information; illicit.

1. There are 2.5 million drug addicts and more than 5.1 million drug users in Russia, according to the report by the International Narcotics Control Board.

2. There are 2.5 million drug addicts and more than 5.1 million drug users in Russia, according to the report by the International Narcotics Control Board.

3. Many of them are unemployed, have a chronic history of offending and commit a large number of crimes to finance their addiction.

4. About 200 million crimes related to the sale of opiates to users occur every year in Russia.

5. Federal agencies in Russia conduct investigations of drug trafficking.

6. One of the main tasks of law enforcement and national drug policy is coordination of enforcement authorities to combat drug trafficking.

7. In June 2012, the government launched the “State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020”.

8. Law enforcement and national drug policy also includes establishment and maintenance of a unified data bank on issues related to drug trafficking.

9. The law also allows for the confiscation of property and money obtained by drug dealing.

10. The Russian president stressed that it was necessary to more actively find, arrest and confiscate money assets received as a result of illegal operations with drugs.

13. Complete the chart.

Verb	Adjective	Noun
register		
	employed	
		abuser
offend		
	related	
		seizure

produce		
	maintained	
		enforcement
improve		
	reduced	
		development
confiscate		
	legalized	
		cooperation
threaten		
	warned	
		resistance

14. Read the text. Use the words at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Russia has the largest (0) **population** of injecting drug users (IDUs) in the world. (1) ... than a third have HIV. In some regions, the proportion is nearer to three-quarters. The (2) ... government addresses demand (3) ... and drug abuse (4) ... in the “State Counternarcotics Strategy.” At present, there exist only four state-run and 70 non — (5) ... organization (NGO) centers for rehabilitation of drug addicts. The few government-supported drug (6) ... (7) ... programs are

generally ineffective, with high rates of recidivism. The Russian Orthodox Church continues to operate (8) ... 40 faith-based (9) ... centers.

(0) populate

(1) Many

(2) Russia

(3) reduce

(4) prevent

(5) government

(6) addict

(7) treat

(8) approximate

(9) rehabilitate

15. Fill in: offending; the fight; young people; narcotics; addicts; crimes; addiction; drug trafficking; abusing drugs; laws; the problem; the report; illicit drugs; drug policy; illegal substances; large quantities of; drugs; property and money; drug dealing; mandatory treatment; laundering money. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 according to ...

2 drug ...

3 the growing number of ...

4 young people ...

5 chronic history of ...

6 commit a large number of ...

7 finance their ...

11 targeted on ...

12 total seizures of ...

13 synthetic narcotic ...

14 join in ...

15 the fight against ...

16 life sentences for trafficking ...

17 the confiscation of

8	conduct investigations of ...	18	money obtained by ...
9	National ...	19	punitive measures and ...
10	drug control ...	20	resist ...

16. Choose the correct form of the verb.

- The thief **must have waited** / **must wait** until the owner left the house.
- Police believe that the addict **must use** / **must have used** a new type of drug.
- Judging by his behaviour they decided that a boy **might be** / **might been** a drug addict.
- Ted's neighbours say that he must **charge** / **must have been charged** with supplying drugs and is waiting for trial.
- The amount of drugs found and his criminal record **could have been influenced** / **could have influenced** his penalty.
- A doctor says that the boy's death **could cause** / **could have been caused** by overdose.
- At the moment police **may be searching** / **might have been searched** a criminal.
- The traffic is stopped. There **must be** / **must have been** an accident.
- Police believe somebody **could have helped** / **should have helped** the prisoner to escape.
- Their neighbors **may see** / **might have seen a burglar**, and called the police.

17. Use the words and combinations in the box to complete the sentences.

drug officials; warned; measures; a large number of crimes; laundering money; is responsible; related to; 18–39; drug addicts; life sentences; punitive anti- the global drug threat; to join in the fight; NATO

- There are 2.5 million ... and more than 5.1 million drug users in Russia.
- Among the drug dependent population, approximately 2–2.5 million are between the ages of
- Many of them are unemployed, have a chronic history of offending and commit ... to finance their addiction.
- About 200 million crimes ... the sale of opiates to users occur every year in Russia.
- Like FSKN before, the Directorate ... for combating drug smuggling and investigating drug crimes.
- In June 2012, the government launched the “State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020” that calls all agencies and all levels of government ... against illicit drugs.
- An important development in implementing the Strategy in 2012 was the law stipulating ... for trafficking large quantities of drugs.
- The introduction of ... and mandatory treatment would allow Russian authorities to reduce the number of drug addicts in the country by half in three years.
- In combating drug flows, Moscow welcomed 120 top ... from around the world on June, 5–7, 2013.

10. The Russian president stressed that it was necessary to more actively find, arrest and confiscate money assets received as a result of illegal operations with drugs and to resist ... received from selling opiates of the Afghan origin.

11. The president ... against the legalization of any type of drugs, including “soft” ones.

12. He also supported the central coordinating role of the UN in the fight against

13. The Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and ... should fight the drug threat together.

18. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following:

1. **The growing** / number of / abusing / young / drugs / people / is / a serious concern.

2. **The majority** / of drug / old / are / between / 18–30 / addicts / years.

3. **Four** / agencies / trafficking / federal / conduct / in Russia / investigations / of drug.

4. **The law** / sentences / life / stipulates / for trafficking / large / of drugs / quantities.

5. **Previously** / the maximum / 20 / was / sentence / years.

6. **The law** / also / allows for / of property / the confiscation / and / money / by / drug / dealing / obtained.

7. **Moscow** / officials / 120 / top / welcomed / anti-drug / from / the world / around.

8. **The president** / the legalization / against / warned / of any type / , including / of drugs / “soft” ones.

19. Translate the sentences from the text (Reading 2), minding Gerund, Participle, and Infinitive.

1. There are an estimated 1.68 million opiate users in Russia.

2. Many of them are unemployed, have a chronic history of offending and commit a large number of crimes to finance their addiction.

3. One of main tasks of Russian Federal Drug Control Service was coordination of enforcement authorities to combat drug trafficking.

4. Like FSKN before, the Directorate is responsible for combating drug smuggling and investigating drug crimes.

5. The Strategy urges improvements in supply and demand reduction, and outlines new legislation aimed at deterring drug trafficking.

6. An important development in implementing the Strategy in 2012 was the law stipulating life sentences for trafficking large quantities of drugs.

7. The law also allows for the confiscation of property and money obtained by drug dealing.

8. In combating drug flows, Moscow welcomed 120 top anti-drug officials from around the world to discuss possibilities for cooperation in curbing an issue responsible for 200,000 deaths annually.

9. The Russian president stressed that it was necessary to more actively find, arrest and confiscate money assets received as a result of illegal operations with drugs and to resist laundering money received from selling opiates of Afghan origin.

10. At the same time, the president warned against the legalization of any type of drugs, including "soft" ones.

11. He also supported the central coordinating role of the UN in the fight against the global drug threat.

20. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. There are 2.5 million drug addicts and more than 5.1 million drug users in Russia, according to the report by

2. Every year 80,000 new drug addicts

3. Approximately 2-2.5 million of addicts are between the ages of

4. Drug addicts commit a large number of crimes to finance

5. The FSKN was the primary drug enforcement agency

6. The Directorate is responsible for combating drug smuggling and

7. In June 2012, the government launched the "State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020" that

8. The Strategy urges improvements in supply and demand reduction, and outlines new legislation aimed at

9. The new legislation is aimed at deterring drug trafficking and stipulating life sentences for

a. The law also allows for the confiscation of property and

b. In combating drug flows, Moscow welcomed 120 top anti-drug officials from around the world on June 5–7, 2013 to discuss possibilities for cooperation

c. The Russian president stressed that it was necessary to more actively find, arrest and confiscate money assets received as a result of illegal operations with drugs and to resist

d. The president warned against the legalization of

e. In his opinion, the Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and

Watching a video and speaking

21. Watch the video "Heroin Problem in Russia cannot be Solved in One — Two Years" and do task 22.

Before watching the video, learn or revise the following words and word combinations:

law enforcement	правоприменение
drug abuse	злоупотребление наркотиками
increase	увеличивать(ся)
increase 2 times	увеличиться в 2 раза
officially	официально
way	путь, способ

drug trafficking	торговля наркотиками
complicated	сложный
solve the problem	решить задачу
hide	прятаться
mountain	гора
cave	пещера
search for	искать
strategy	стратегия
policy	политика
international cooperation	международное сотрудничество
tackle	бороться; решать
tackle a problem	решить проблему
tackle laundering money	бороться с отмыванием денег
hard drugs	сильнодействующие наркотики

22. Choose the answer (A, B or C) which you think fits best according to the video.

- The conversation in the video is between
 - 2 drug addicts.
 - 2 reporters.
 - a reporter and a drug expert from Russia.
- The reporter says that in Russia
 - 80 people die from heroine every day and 30, 000 people die from heroine every year.
 - there are no heroine addicts.
 - people don't die from drugs.
- According to the Russian drug expert, drug abuse in the last 5 years
 - has decreased.
 - has increased 2 times officially and 5 times unofficially.
 - has neither increased, nor decreased.
- The drug expert says that to stop drug trafficking in Russia it's necessary
 - to arrest all drug dealers.
 - to make effective water control and effective law enforcement.
 - to treat drug addicts.
- According to the drug expert the drug problem in Russia
 - cannot be solved in 1 or 2 years and by 1 country only.
 - can be solve in 1 or 2 years.
 - can never be solved.
- Drug fighting operation in Afghanistan can last 5–15 years because
 - there is no national police.
 - NATO organization should solve it.
 - drug laboratories and drug terrorists are difficult to fight and search for as they are hiding under the ground, in the caves and the mountains.
- The strategy of the international anti-drug policy could include
 - closing all borders.
 - increasing police staff.

- c) international cooperation based on law enforcement cooperation, first of all Interpol; tackling money laundering; anti-drug policy in a wide aspect, including anti-tobacco and anti-alcohol policy.

23. In pairs, use the information from the video and the language in the box to act out dialogues for the following situations:

a) Foreign reporter asks you about drug situation in Russia

b) Tackling international drug trafficking

a		b	
What is ...?	• 2 (5) times • officially • unofficially • 80 people • 30,000 people • die from heroine • every day • every year • effective • water control • law enforcement	How can ... ?	• international cooperation • law enforcement • tackling • money laundering • economic basis for • drug trafficking • anti-drug policy • anti-tobacco • anti-alcohol
• drug situation in Russia • drug statistics in Russia • the way to solve the problem		• drug trafficking from Afghanistan • be solved • Interpol tackle international drug trafficking	

24. Match the questions on the text in the 1st column to the answers in the 2nd column.

1 How many drug addicts and drug users are there in Russia according to the UN International Narcotics Control Board report? 2 Is the number of people abusing drugs growing in Russia? 3 What do addicts do to finance their addiction? 4 What is the statistics associated with drug-related crimes in Russia? 5 What is the primary drug enforcement agency in Russia?	a Many of drug addicts are unemployed, have a chronic history of offending and commit a large number of crimes to finance their addiction. b The president warned against the legalization of any type of drugs, including "soft" ones. c Main Drugs Control Directorate of the Ministry of Internal Affairs of Russia is the primary drug enforcement agency in Russia. d In combating drug flows, Moscow welcomed 120 top anti-drug officials from around the world on June 5–7, 2013 to discuss possibilities for cooperation in curbing an issue responsible for an estimated 200,000 deaths annually. e The new legislation is aimed at deterring drug trafficking and stipulating life sentences for trafficking

6 What is the Directorate responsible for? 7 What is the purpose of the “State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020” launched in June 2012? 8 What is the new legislation aimed at? 9 Why did 120 top anti-drug officials from around the world gather in Moscow on June 5-7, 2013? 10 What did the Russian president stress in his speech? 11 What did the president warn against? 12 What is the role of the Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and NATO in connection with drug problem?	f g h i j k l	large quantities of drugs. The Russian president stressed that it was necessary to arrest and confiscate money assets received as a result of illegal operations with drugs and to resist laundering money received from selling opiates of the Afghan origin. About 200 million crimes related to the sale of opiates to users occur every year in Russia. The Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and NATO should fight the drug threat together. There are 2.5 million drug addicts and more than 5.1 million drug users in Russia, according to the report by the International Narcotics Control Board. Like FSKN before, the Directorate is responsible for combating drug smuggling and investigating drug crimes. Every year 80,000 new drug addicts are registered in Russia. In June 2012, the government launched the “State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020” that calls all agencies and all levels of government to join in the fight against illicit drugs and outline new legislation aimed at deterring drug trafficking.

25. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- The picture of drug problem in Russia
- Youth and drugs
- Drugs and crime
- Drug law enforcement agencies
- Law enforcement and national drug policy
- State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020
- 30th International Drug Enforcement Conference
- Initiatives of the Russian president
- Role of the Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and NATO in drug fighting

26. Speak on drugs and law enforcement in Russia.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. Russia ranks first in the world the consumption of
 - d) cannabis
 - e) heroin
 - f) tobacco
2. Most of drug addicts are unemployed and commit a large number of crimes to finance their
 - a) addiction
 - b) secondary
 - c) criminal
3. In June 2012, the government launched the “State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020” that calls all agencies and all levels of government to join in the ... against illicit drugs.
 - d) fight
 - e) conflict
 - f) activity
4. The law on drugs in Russia allows for ... of property and money obtained by drug dealing.
 - d) searching
 - e) buying
 - f) confiscation
5. Russian president warned against the ... of any type of drugs including “soft ones”.
 - a) investigation
 - b) legalization
 - c) producing

2. Fill in: origin, users, property, opiates, addicts, sentence, agencies, drugs, measures, laundering money.

- 1 drug ...
- 2 drug ...
- 3 drug enforcement ...
- 4 illicit ...
- 5 confiscation of ...
- 6 resist ...
- 7 selling ...
- 8 maximum ...
- 9 punitive ...
- 10 Afghan ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. The accident could cause / could have been caused by bad weather conditions.
2. Police believe that one of the drivers must take / must have taken drugs.
3. Information to be processed / to process is obtained during an investigation.

4. To search / to be searched a building an officer must have a warrant.
5. Using dogs to locate / to be located narcotics greatly assists law enforcement officers.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words from the box.

commit, million, illicit, enforcement, addicts

1. There are 2.5 million drug ... and more than 5.1 million drug users in Russia, according to the report by the International Narcotics Control Board.
2. Approximately 2–2.5 ... of drug addicts are between 18–39 years old.
3. Many of them are unemployed, have a chronic history of offending and ... a large number of crimes to finance their addiction.
4. The FSKN was the primary drug ... agency in Russia.
5. The “State Counternarcotics Strategy until 2020” calls all agencies and all levels of government to join in the fight against ... drugs.

5. Choose the correct answer.

1. Is the number of young people abusing drugs increasing or decreasing in Russia?
 - d) The number of young people abusing drugs is decreasing in Russia.
 - e) The number of young people abusing drugs is growing.
 - f) There is not exact statistics on this issue.
2. Which is the primary drug enforcement agency in Russia?
 - d) Parliament is the primary drug enforcement agency in Russia.
 - e) Federal Migration Service is the primary drug enforcement agency in Russia.
 - f) Main Drugs Control Directorate of the MIA is the primary drug enforcement agency in Russia.
3. What is the new legislation targeted on?
 - d) The Government's policy is targeted on punishing drug users
 - e) The new legislation is aimed at deterring drug trafficking and stipulating life sentences for trafficking large quantities of drugs.
 - f) The Government's policy is targeted on catching drug dealers
4. Why did 120 top anti-drug officials from around the world gather in Moscow on June 5–7, 2013?
 - d) The officials gathered to discuss possibilities for cooperation in combating drugs
 - e) The officials gathered to celebrate the Independence Day
 - f) The officials gathered to discuss economic questions
5. What is the role of the Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and NATO in connection with drug problem?
 - a) These organizations should send their representatives to Russia
 - b) The Collective Security Treaty Organization (CSTO) and NATO should fight the drug threat together
 - c) These organizations should help catch drug traffickers

Module IX

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

Part A

Lead-in

- You are going to read the text dealing with the problems of juvenile delinquency. Do you know the factors that may lead a teenager into juvenile delinquency and the police role with juveniles?

Reading

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Juvenile Delinquency Problems

Juvenile **delinquency**, also known as juvenile offending, or youth crime, is participation in illegal behavior by minors (juveniles) who fall under a statutory age limit. A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically under the age of 18 and commits an act that would be charged as a crime if he or she were an adult. Persons under 18 can also be charged and tried as adults, depending on the type of offence committed.

Family factors which may have an influence on offending include: the level of parental **supervision**, the way parents discipline a child, particularly harsh punishment, parental conflict or separation, criminal parents, parental **abuse** or **neglect**, and the quality of the parent-child relationship.

If children have low parental supervision they may have more likely to offend. When parents do not know where their children are, or who their friends are, children are more likely to truant from school, run away from home and have delinquent friends. A lack of supervision is also connected to poor relationship between children and parents. Children who are often in conflict with their parents may be less willing to discuss their activities with them.

Peer rejection in childhood is also a large predictor of juvenile delinquency. Children are rejected by **peers** for many reasons. This rejection affects the child's ability to be socialized properly, and often leads to anti-social groups.

Other factors that may lead **a teenager** into juvenile delinquency include poor or low socio-economic status, poor school performance and / or **failure**, hyperactivity, or attention deficit disorder.

The police role with juveniles is expended because they handle many noncriminal matters referred to as status offences, including running away, **curfew** violations, and truancy as well as non-delinquent juvenile matters such as neglect, abuse, and missing persons reports. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for handling the increasing number of juvenile cases.

Duties of special juvenile officers include taking **missing** children reports; investigating juvenile crimes; contacting and interviewing juveniles, their parents, school officials, and complainants regarding the circumstances of an offence;

maintaining juvenile records; and appearing in juvenile court. The juvenile officer is often selected and trained to relate youths, know much about relevant legal issues, and is sensitive to special needs of young offenders.

This officer is also an important link between the police and other community institutions, such as schools and other organizations serving people. The police must make three major decisions with regards to processing the juveniles:

- Whether to take the child into custody
- Whether to request that the child be detained following apprehension
- Whether to refer the child to court

Although young people commit many serious crimes, the juvenile function of the police work is concerned largely with order maintenance. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are minor infractions: breaking windows, hanging around the business district, disturbing the peace, and **shoplifting**. Here the function of the investigating officer is not so much to solve crimes as to handle complaints involving juveniles.

The officer seeks both to satisfy the complaint and to keep the youth from the future trouble. Giving this emphasis on settling cases within the community — instead of strictly enforcing the law — the police power to arrest is a weapon that can be used to deter juveniles from criminal activity and to encourage them to conform to the law.

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (A, B or C) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. A juvenile delinquent is a person who
 - a) is the age of 20 and commits a crime
 - b) is the age of 18 and does not commit any crime
 - c) is the age of 18 and commits a crime
2. Family factors which may have an influence on offending include:
 - a) peer rejection in childhood
 - b) the level of parental supervision
 - c) poor or low socio-economic status
3. A large predictor of juvenile delinquency
 - a) is peer rejection in childhood
 - b) is a good quality of the parent-child relationship
 - c) is poor or low socio-economic status
4. Other factors that may lead a teenager into juvenile delinquency include:
 - a) firm relationship between children and parents
 - b) high socio-economic status
 - c) poor school performance and / or failure
5. The police role with juveniles is expended because they handle
 - a) criminal matters referred to as status offences including running away
 - b) crimes committed by adults
 - c) noncriminal matters referred to as status offences including truancy
6. Duties of special juvenile officers include

- a) investigating juvenile crimes
 - b) hanging around the business district
 - c) keeping traffic order
7. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for
- a) maintaining law and order on the railway, air lines and water ways of the country
 - b) handling the increasing number of juvenile cases
 - c) handling the increasing number of traffic accidents
8. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are minor infractions:
- a) breaking windows, hanging around the business district, disturbing the peace, and shoplifting
 - b) kidnapping, murder, robbery
 - c) littering, killing bald eagles, tearing down historical houses

Study Skills

3. Learn the vocabulary

abuse <i>n, v</i>	злоупотребление; злоупотреблять, оскорблять
adult <i>n</i>	совершеннолетний
associate <i>v</i>	связывать, соединять(ся)
attention <i>n</i>	внимание
attention deficit disorder	синдром дефицита внимания
complaint <i>n</i>	жалоба, официальное обвинение
conform <i>v</i>	согласоваться, подчиняться
curfew <i>n</i>	комендантский час, временной режим
custody <i>n</i>	охрана, задержание
take into custody	взять под стражу
delinquency <i>n</i>	нарушение, правонарушение, делинквентность
juvenile delinquency	преступность несовершеннолетних
delinquent <i>a</i>	правонарушитель, делинквент (несовершеннолет.)
deter <i>v</i>	удерживать от совершения чего-либо
encourage <i>v</i>	поощрять, способствовать, подстрекать
expand <i>v</i>	расширять (ся)
handle <i>v</i>	рассматривать, осуществлять контроль
hang around <i>v</i>	бродить вокруг, шлаться, слоняться
harsh <i>a</i>	грубый
influence <i>n</i>	влияние
infraction <i>n</i>	нарушение
instead of <i>adv</i>	вместо
lack <i>n</i>	недостаток, отсутствие
link <i>v</i>	связь
maintain <i>v</i>	вести, поддерживать, возбуждать
neglect <i>n</i>	невыполнение, пренебрежение

offence <i>n</i>	правонарушение, преступление
status offence	правонарушение несовершеннолетних
offend <i>n</i>	оскорблять, нарушать
offend the law	нарушать закон
parental <i>a</i>	родительский
participation <i>n</i>	участие
peer <i>n</i>	сверстник
performance <i>n</i>	работа, достижение
poor <i>a</i>	бедный, плохой
predict <i>v</i>	предсказывать
process <i>v</i>	возбуждать дело, начинать процесс
quality <i>n</i>	качество
record <i>n</i>	дело, документ
refer <i>v</i>	направлять, передавать, относиться
regarding <i>a</i>	относящийся
rejection <i>n</i>	неприятие
relationship <i>n</i>	отношение
request <i>v</i>	просить, требовать
settle <i>v</i>	урегулировать
statutory <i>a</i>	установленный законом, законный
supervision <i>n</i>	надзор, наблюдение, контроль
truancy <i>n</i>	прогул (занятий в школе)

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	offend the law	a	нарушение
2	status offence	b	установленный законом
3	truancy	c	отношение
4	rejection	d	недостаток, отсутствие
5	attention deficit disorder	e	работа, достижение
6	delinquent	f	дело, документ
7	infraction	g	нарушать закон
8	relationship	h	прогул занятий в школе
9	take into custody	i	вести, поддерживать
10	statutory	j	неприятие
11	record	k	правонарушение несовершеннолетних
12	lack	l	несовершеннолетний правонарушитель
13	maintain	m	сверстник
14	peer	n	взять под стражу
15	performance	o	синдром дефицита времени

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	быть обвинённым и осуждённым	a	the level of parental supervision
2	дела, относимые к правонарушениям несовершеннолетних	b	run away from home
3	заниматься многими делами, не относящихся к уголовным	c	physical and monetary damage
4	уровень контроля со стороны родителей	d	particularly harsh punishment
5	недостаток контроля	e	poor school performance and failure
6	убегать из дома	f	parental abuse and neglect
7	плохие отношения между детьми и родителями	g	matters referred to as status offenses
8	особенно жестокое наказание	h	a lack of supervision
9	влиять на способность ребёнка	i	curfew violation
10	жестокое обращение и пренебрежение со стороны родителей	j	handle many noncriminal matters
11	плохие достижения и неудачи в школе	k	depending on the type of offence committed
12	в зависимости от типа совершенного преступления	l	handle complaints
13	материальный и денежный ущерб	m	be charged and tried
14	рассматривать жалобы	n	affect the child's ability
15	нарушение временного режима	o	poor relationships between children and parents

6. Match the antonyms.

1	harsh	a	adult
2	neglect	b	few
3	low	c	mild
4	delinquent	d	decrease
5	teenager	e	exclude
6	failure	f	law abiding
7	increase	g	take care of
8	include	h	enemy
9	friend	i	success
10	many	j	high

7. Translate the following words and word combinations.

a) particularly harsh punishment; participation in illegal behavior; the level of parental supervision; parental abuse and neglect; minor (juvenile); fall under a statutory age limit ; a lack of supervision; can be charged and tried as adults; they are much more likely to offend; children are more likely to truant from school; poor

relationships between children and parents; peer rejection in childhood; poor or low socio-economic status; poor school performance and / or failure; leads to anti-social peer groups; referred to as status offenses; curfew violations; non-delinquent juvenile matters; handling the increasing number of juvenile cases; taking missing children reports; complainants regarding the circumstances of an offense; maintaining juvenile records; appearing in juvenile court;

b) участие подростков в противозаконном поведении; конфликты и разлука родителей; способ воспитания дисциплины родителями у ребёнка; качество взаимоотношений между родителями и ребёнком; сообщения о пропавших людях; поддержание порядка; нарушение спокойствия; магазинная кража; отвечать на жалобу; удерживать молодого человека от неприятностей в будущем; урегулировать дела в сообществе; удерживать подростков от криминальной деятельности; подталкивать их (подростков) к подчинению законам; вопросы не относящиеся к делинквентному поведению подростков; нарушение временного режима; власть полицейского производить арест; школьная администрация.

8. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Если дети мало контролируются родителями, они, вероятнее всего, будут совершать правонарушения.

2. Отсутствие контроля также связано с плохими взаимоотношениями между детьми и родителями.

3. Большинство городских полицейских отделов имеют специальные полицейские подразделения и бюро по делам несовершеннолетних.

4. Неприятие воздействует на способность ребёнка как следует войти в коллектив.

5. Такой полицейский также является важным связующим звеном между полицией и другими общественными институтами такими, как школа.

6. Хотя молодые люди совершают много серьёзных преступлений, работа полиции по делам несовершеннолетних в основном касается поддержания порядка.

7. Полицейский старается, как ответить на жалобу, так и удержать молодого человека от неприятностей в будущем.

8. Многие преступления, совершаемые подростками, включая материальный и денежный ущерб, являются незначительными нарушениями.

9. Неприятие сверстникам в детстве также является предрасполагающим фактором преступности несовершеннолетних.

10. Полицейский по делам несовершеннолетних часто отбирается и обучается для того, чтобы устанавливать связь с подростками.

9. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 behavior, especially of young people, that is not in accordance with the law
- 2 a group of people of the same age
- 3 a regulation requiring people to remain in door between special hours, usually at night
- 4 unkind, cruel, or rude use; wrong use, misuse
- 5 (of a person) not yet traced or confirmed as alive but not known to be dead
- 6 a young person of between 13 and 19 years old
- 7 lack of success
- 8 keeping watch over, control
- 9 little attention or care
- 10 theft from a shop

10. Use the words / phrases in the box to make sentences with the following:

1. Family factors which may have an influence on offending include:
2. The police handle many noncriminal matters referred to as ...
3. When parents do not know where their children are, or who their friends are, children are more likely to ...
4. Other factors that may lead a teenager into juvenile delinquency include:
5. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are minor infractions:
6. Duties of special juvenile officers include:

breaking windows; the level of the parental supervision; poor school performance or failure; hanging around the business district; to truant from school; running away; non-delinquent juvenile matters; the way parents discipline a child; have delinquent friends; disturbing the peace; investigating juvenile crimes; appearing in juvenile court; hyperactivity; contacting and interviewing juveniles, their parents, school officials; poor or low socio-economic status; particularly harsh punishment; run away from home; parental abuse or neglect; missing persons reports; shoplifting; attention deficit disorder

11. Choose the correct words.

1. If children have **low / high** parental supervision they may have more likely to offend.
2. A lack of supervision is also connected to **poor / good** relationship between children and parents.
3. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for handling the **increasing / decreasing** number of juvenile cases.
4. The juvenile officer is often selected and trained **to relate / to punish** youths.

5. Although young people commit many **serious** / **minor** crimes, the juvenile function of the police work is concerned largely with **order maintenance** / **crime investigation**.

6. Peer rejection affects the child's **ability** / **disability** to be socialized properly, and often leads to anti-social groups.

7. Children who are often in conflicts with their parent may be **less** / **more** willing to discuss their activities with them.

8. The police role with juveniles is expended because they handle many **noncriminal** / **criminal** matters.

9. Juvenile delinquency is participation in illegal behavior by **minors** (**juveniles**) / **adults** who fall under a statutory age limit.

10. Persons under 18 can also be charged and tried as adults, **depending on** / **independently** the type of offence committed.

12. Find in the sentences synonyms to the following words.

control; cause; crime; teenagers; deficiency; administration; connection; violations; to obey the law; usually

1. A lack of supervision is also connected to poor relationship between children and parents.

2. Children are rejected by peers for many reasons.

3. The police role with juveniles is expended.

4. Family factor which may have an influence on offending includes the level of parental supervision.

5. Persons under 18 can also be charged and tried as adults, depending on the type of offence committed.

6. This officer is also as important link between the police and other community institutions.

7. The police power to arrest is a weapon that can be used to deter juveniles from criminal activity and to encourage them to conform to the law.

8. A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically under the age of 18.

9. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are minor infractions.

10. Duties of special juvenile officers include taking missing children reports; investigating juvenile crimes; contacting and interviewing juveniles, their parents, and school officials.

13. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
	known	
		participate
separation		
relationship		

		connect
	predictive	
	rejected	
reference		
		investigate
	selective	
sense		
		complain

14. Read the text. Use the words at the end of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Much has been said and **written** about causes of juvenile delinquency. One fact is clear: (1)... behavior is the result of multiple (2)... factors. The home, of course, is primary in causative factors. It is (3)... that the vast majority of juvenile delinquents come from (4)... homes. Of prime importance is the early (5)... of the potentially delinquent child. Two of the (6)... danger signals are habitual (7) ... from school and habitually running away from home. In their efforts to control and (8) ... delinquency the police are exposed to sociological, (9) socio -..., and biological theories. (10) ... officials believe there are three (11) ... factors in delinquent control: the home, the church and the school. It is in school that the early (12) ... of the problem child and the (13) ... of delinquency in the home structure becomes (14)

(0) **write**
(1) **delinquency**
(2) **condition**
(3) **know**
(4) **inadequacy**
(5) **discover**
(6) **reality**
(7) **truant**
(8) **prevention**
(9) **psychology**
(10) **to police**
(11) **majority**
(12) **detect**
(13) **recognize**
(14) **apparent**

15. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

parental; youths; units; illegal; rejection; to deter; order; matters; conflict; complaint;

- Juvenile delinquency is participation in ... behavior by minors who fall under a statutory age limit.
- If children have low ... supervision they are much more likely to offend.
- Children who are often in ... with their parents may be less willing to discuss their activities with them.
- Peer ... in childhood is also a large predictor of juvenile delinquency.
- The police role with juveniles is expanded because they handle many noncriminal

6. Most urban police departments have special police ... for handling the increasing number of juvenile cases.
7. The juvenile officer is often selected and trained to relate
8. Although young people commit many serious crimes, the juvenile function of police work is concerned largely with ... maintenance.
9. The officer seeks both to satisfy the ... and to keep the youth from the further trouble.
10. The police power to arrest is the weapon that can be used ... juveniles from criminal activity.

16. Choose the correct item

1. If children have low parental supervision they may have more likely **offending / to offend**.
2. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for **handling / to handle** the increasing number of juvenile cases.
3. Children who are often in conflict with their parents may be less willing **discussing / to discuss** their activities with them.
4. Duties of special juvenile officers include **taking / to take** missing children reports; **investigating / to investigate** juvenile crimes; **contacting / to contact** and **interviewing / to interview** juveniles, their parents etc.
5. When parents do not know where their children are, or who their friends are, children are more likely **truanting / to truant from** school, **running away / run away** from home.
6. The juvenile officer is often selected and trained **relating / to relate** youths.
7. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are minor infractions: **breaking / to break** windows, **hanging / to hang** around the business district.
8. The officer seeks **satisfying / to satisfy** the complaint and **keeping / to keep** the youth from the future trouble.
9. Although persons under 18 can also be charged and tried as adults, **depending / to depend** on the type of offence committed.
10. **Giving / to give** this emphasis on **settling / to set** cases within the community — instead of strictly **enforcing / to enforce** the law – the police power **arresting / to arrest** is a weapon that can be used **detering / to deter** juveniles from criminal activity and **encouraging / to encourage** them to conform to the law.

17. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically under the age of 18 and commits an act that would **be charged / charged** as a crime if he or she were an adult.
2. A lack of supervision **is connected / connects** to poor relationship between children and parents.
3. Peer rejection **is affected / affects** the child's ability to be socialized properly.
4. Children **are rejected / reject** by **peers** for many reasons.

5. The police role with juveniles **is expended / expends** because they handle many noncriminal matters referred to as status offences.

6. Police **are handled / handle** many noncriminal matters referred to as status offences.

7. The juvenile officer **is selected and trained / selects and trains** to relate youths.

8. Although young people **are committed / commit** many serious crimes, the juvenile function of the police work **is concerned / concerns** largely with order maintenance.

9. The officer **is sought / seeks** both to satisfy the complaint and to keep the youth from the future trouble.

10. Duties of special juvenile officers **are included / include** taking missing children reports; investigating juvenile crimes; contacting and interviewing juveniles and others.

18. Make up sentences (positive, negative, interrogative) from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Juvenile** / is / delinquency / by / participation / minors / behavior / illegal / in.

2. **Family** / may / an / on / have / offending / factors / influence.

3. **Parents** / the / where / known / not / their / are / do / children.

4. **Peer** / often / groups / rejection / to / leads / anti-social.

5. **Poor** / is / of / of / a / and / between / children / result / the, supervision / lack / parents / relationship.

6. **What** / may / delinquency / into / juvenile / factors / lead?

7. **Most** / bureaus / special / urban / departments / have / units / or, juvenile / police.

8. **Juvenile** / the / the / other / institutions / community / is / an / between / officer / link / police / important / and.

9. **Children** / conflict / in / are / parents / who / their / with / discuss / to / not / activities / with / do / want / them.

10. **Why** / role / the / expended / with / is / juveniles / police?

19. Fill in: investigating, fall under, may lead, known as, appearing, have, solve, rejected, maintaining, be charged, satisfy, commit, be concerned, deter, keep, truant, handle, runaway, do not know, contacting and interviewing. **Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.**

1 ... as juvenile offending

2 ... a statutory age limit

3 ... as a crime

4 ... low parental supervision

5 ... where their children are

6 ... by peers

11 ... juvenile crimes

12 ... Juveniles

13 ... a teenager into juvenile delinquency

14 ... in juvenile court

15 ... any serious crimes

16 ... largely with order maintenance

7 ... from school	17 ... the complaint
8 ... from home	18 ... crime
9 ... many noncriminal matters	19 ... youth from the further trouble
10 ... juvenile records	20 ... juveniles from criminal activity

20. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Juvenile delinquency, also known as juvenile offending, or youth crime, is...
2. If children have low parental supervision they may have more likely...
3. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are...
4. Duties of special juvenile officers include...
5. Family factors which may have an influence on offending include: ...
6. The juvenile officer is often selected and trained to relate youths, know much about relevant legal issues, and is sensitive to ...
7. Peer rejection in childhood is also a large predictor of ...
8. The function of the investigating officer is not so much to solve crimes as...
9. The officer seeks both to satisfy the complaint and keep the youth from...
10. A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically under the age of 18 and commits an act that would be charged as a crime if he or she were...

EVERYDAY PROFESSIONAL ENGLISH

21. Watch a video and be ready to do the tasks. Before watching the video, try to remember the following word combinations:

status offense	правонарушение несовершеннолетних
status offense research	исследования в области правонарушений несовершеннолетних
states and county status offense system	система по борьбе с правонарушениями несовершеннолетних на уровне штатов и округов
juvenile status offender	несовершеннолетний правонарушитель
status offender population	общее число несовершеннолетних правонарушителей
youth	молодёжь; молодой человек
run away	сбежать
truancy	прогул (школы)
violate curfew law	нарушение закона о временном режиме
possession of alcohol	наличие алкоголя
account for	объяснять, отвечать за
handle status offense cases	разбирать дела по правонарушениям несовершеннолетних
option	выбор, альтернатива
take out of home	забирать из дома

pose no threat	не представлять угрозы
negative outcome	негативные последствия
family tension	напряжённые семейные отношения
victimization	издевательство
likelihood	вероятность
juvenile justice	правосудие по делам несовершеннолетних
juvenile court	суд по делам несовершеннолетних
daily absentee rate	уровень прогуливающих школу ежедневно
warning sign	предупреждающий сигнал
head for	достигать
educational failure	неудачи в обучении
parental permission	разрешение родителей
throw out of home	выгонять из дома
face	сталкиваться
maltreatment	плохое обращение
substance abuse	реальное насилие
involvement in justice system	вовлечение в систему правосудия
mental health	психическое здоровье
alcohol is a drug of choice	предпочитать алкоголь
pervasiveness of alcohol	распространение алкоголя
fatal crash	ДТП со смертельным исходом
while impaired by alcohol	в состоянии, ухудшенным алкоголем
be alert	быть бдительным
underage drinking	пьянство несовершеннолетних
experience	опыт; испытывать
be caught up in a status offence system	привлекаться в систему по борьбе с нарушениями несовершеннолетних
more gender sensitive prevention diversion program	более деликатная гендерная система выведения несовершеннолетних из системы уголовной юстиции с передачей в суд по делам несовершеннолетних
intervene	вмешиваться, предотвращать
intervention	вмешательство

22. Read the statements (1–11) and the choices (a, b, c) attentively. Make sure that you understand them.

1. Juvenile status offenses are
 - a) criminal offenses
 - b) non-criminal offenses
 - c) administrative offenses
2. Status offenses are committed by
 - a) children and youth
 - b) men and women
 - c) adults

3. Status offenses committed by an adult are not considered
 - a) to be a crime
 - b) to be an action
 - c) to be a proceeding
4. Juvenile status offenses include
 - a) burglary and theft
 - b) running away and truancy
 - c) kidnapping and robbery
5. Truancy accounts for
 - a) the minority of status offense cases
 - b) some part of status offense cases
 - c) the majority of status offense cases
6. Dangers that youth face in the street are numerous, including
 - a) further victimization and maltreatment
 - b) running away without parental permission
 - c) parental attention and understanding
7. Alcohol is a drug of choice by
 - a) the vast majority of the adults in the United States
 - b) the vast majority of the population in the United States
 - c) the vast majority of the youth in the United States
8. Youth who run away often also
 - a) may have no problems with alcohol
 - b) may have no problems at school
 - c) truant from school
9. Girls account for
 - a) a small proportion of status offender population
 - b) an increasing proportion of status offender population
 - c) an imperceptible proportion of status offender population

23. Watch the video and do task 22.

24. Watch the video once more to make sure that your answers are correct.

- 25. a) Match the questions on the text to their answers**
b) Work in pairs. Ask your partner question from the right-hand column, complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: “Yes, you are right”; “I agree with you (but)”, “I don’t agree with you” etc.

1 What is juvenile delinquency?	a The police must make three major decisions with regards to processing the juveniles: • whether to take the child into custody • whether to request that the child be detained following

- apprehension
- whether to refer the child to court.
- 2 What is the definition of juvenile delinquent? **b** Other factors that may lead a teenager into juvenile delinquency include poor or low socio-economic status, poor school performance and / or failure, hyperactivity, or attention deficit disorder.
 - 3 What are family factors which may have an influence on juvenile offending? **c** They handle many noncriminal matters referred to as status offenses, including running away, curfew violations, and truancy as well as non-delinquent juvenile matters such as neglect, abuse, and missing persons reports.
 - 4 How does low parental supervision affect family relations? **d** A lack of supervision is also connected to poor relationships between children and parents.
 - 5 What is a large predictor of juvenile delinquency? **e** Although young people commit many serious crimes, the juvenile function of the police work is concerned largely with order maintenance.
 - 6 What are other factors leading to juvenile delinquency? **f** Juvenile delinquency, also known as juvenile offending, or youth crime, is participation in illegal behavior by minors (juveniles) who fall under a statutory age limit.
 - 7 What status offences do police deal with? **g** The juvenile officer is often selected and trained to relate youths, knows much about relevant legal issues, and is sensitive to special needs of young offenders.
 - 8 What are the duties of special police officers? **h** The function of the investigating officer is not so much to solve crimes as to handle complaints involving juveniles; to satisfy the complaint and to keep the child from the future trouble; to deter juveniles from criminal activity and to encourage them to conform to the law.
 - 9 How is the juvenile officer selected and trained? **i** Family factors which may have an influence on offending include: the level of parental supervision, the way parents discipline a child, particularly harsh

- 10 What major decisions must police j
make to process the juveniles?
- 11 What is the juvenile function of k
the police work largely concerned
with?
- 12 What is the function of the l
investigating officer dealing
with crimes and complaints
involving juveniles?

punishment, parental conflict or separation, criminal parents, parental abuse or neglect, and the quality of the parent-child relationship.

Peer rejection in childhood is also a large predictor of juvenile delinquency.

A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically under the age of 18 and commits an act that would be charged as a crime if he or she were an adult.

Duties of special juvenile officers include taking missing children reports; examining runaway cases; investigating juvenile crimes; contacting and interviewing juveniles, their parents, school officials, and complainants regarding the circumstances of an offense; maintaining juvenile records; and appearing in juvenile court.

26. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 30.

Cadet A: You are a correspondent interviewing a juvenile officer. Ask cadet B about his work and duties as a juvenile officer.

Cadet B: You are a juvenile officer. Answer the questions of cadet A, using the information from the text.

27. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Juvenile delinquency
- Family factors
- Peer rejection
- The police role with juveniles
- The juvenile function of the police work

28. Speak on the causes of juvenile delinquency and the role of the police in solving juvenile problems.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

1. Juvenile delinquency, also known as juvenile offending, or youth crime, is participation in ... by minors (juveniles).
 - a) legal behavior;
 - b) illegal behavior;
 - c) illegal trade;
2. Persons under 18 can also be charged and tried as..., depending on the type of offence committed.
 - a) adults;
 - b) adolescents;
 - c) children;
3. ... rejection in childhood is also a large predictor of juvenile delinquency.
 - a) Parental;
 - b) Peer;
 - c) Teacher's;
4. A lack of ... is also connected to poor relationship between children and parents.
 - a) activity;
 - b) contacts;
 - c) supervision;
5. The police power to arrest is a weapon that can be used to deter juveniles from the criminal activity.
 - a) to use force;
 - b) to search;
 - c) to arrest;

2. **Fill in:** officer; predictor; parental supervision; offending; the complaint; juvenile crimes; age limit; punishment; damage; infractions.

- 1 juvenile ...
- 2 statutory ...
- 3 the juvenile ...
- 4 minor ...
- 5 harsh ...
- 6 a large ...
- 7 to satisfy ...
- 8 the level of ...
- 9 physical and monetary ...
- 10 to investigate ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. Persons under 18 can also **be charged / be charging** and **tried / trying** as adults, depending on the type of offence committed.
2. Children who are often in conflict with their parents may be less willing **to discuss / discussing** their activities with them.
3. Children **are rejected / are rejecting** by peers for many reasons.
4. The Police handle many noncriminal matters **referring / referred** to as status offences, **including / included** running away, curfew violations, and truancy.
5. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for **handling / handled** the increasing number of juvenile cases.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words.

1. ... of the investigating officer is not so much to solve crimes as to handle complaints involving juveniles.
2. Duties of special juvenile officers include taking missing children reports; investigating ...; contacting and interviewing ... etc.
3. Family ... which may have ... on offending include: the level of parental supervision, the way parents discipline a child etc.
4. This officer is an important link between the police and other community institutions, such as ... and other organizations serving people.
5. Factors that may lead a teenager into ... include poor or low socio-economic status, poor school performance and / or failure.

5. Choose the correct answer (a, b, or c).

1. What family factors may have an influence on juvenile offending?
 - a) the level of parental supervision, particularly harsh punishment;
 - b) truancy from school, running away from home;
 - c) low socio-economic status, poor school performance;
1. What are children likely to do when parents do not know where their children are?
 - a) to take missing children reports;
 - b) to handle complaints involving juveniles;
 - c) to truant from school;
2. What is one of three decisions the police must make with regards to processing the juveniles?
 - a) whether to punish the child;
 - b) whether to set the child free;
 - c) whether to request that the child be detained following apprehension;
3. What noncriminal matters related to juveniles do the police handle?
 - a) shoplifting;
 - b) curfew violations;
 - c) drug trafficking;
4. What power can the police use to deter juveniles from criminal activity?
 - a) the police power to enforce the law strictly;
 - b) the police power to arrest;
 - c) the police power to use weapon

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

Lead-in

- You are going to read the text dealing with the problems of juvenile delinquency. Do you know who a juvenile delinquent is and the factors that may lead a teenager into juvenile delinquency?

Reading

1. Read the text and be ready to do task 2 after the text.

Juvenile **delinquency** refers to antisocial or illegal behavior by children or adolescents. A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically under the age of 18. Persons under 18 can be charged and tried as adults, depending on the type of offence committed. The laws are designed to provide treatment, rather than punishment for juvenile offenders. Juveniles know that much of the laws are written for adults therefore abuse the system.

Family structure and social environment may lead a child to delinquent behavior. Family is one of the significant factors to influence a child. Most delinquents come from problem families. Relationships within a family may be excessively difficult: the parents may be divorced; they may be violent or drink too much; they may themselves be criminals. The lack of parental **supervision** is an influence on juvenile crime rate.

Other identifiable causes of delinquent acts include **failure** in school, **peer** rejection in childhood, the increased availability of drugs and alcohol, and the growing incidence of child **abuse** and child **neglect**. Many young people see delinquency as their only escape from boredom, **poverty** and other problems.

Prevention of juvenile delinquency is an essential part of the crime prevention in society. Preventive work is better and cheaper than treatment. By engaging in lawful, socially useful activities, young persons can develop non-criminal attitudes. The successful prevention of juvenile delinquency requires efforts on the part of the entire society. Many steps should be taken by parents, schools, communities and police force put an end to juvenile delinquency. Parents should show an interest in their children and become involved their day to day lives. The Police are the agency with whom delinquent youths first come into contact. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for handling the increasing number of juvenile cases. Juvenile officers are charged with the detection, prosecution, and care of juvenile delinquents. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are minor infractions: breaking windows, hanging around the business district, disturbing the peace, and **shoplifting**. Here the function of the investigating officer is not so much to solve crimes as to handle complaints involving juveniles. The officer seeks both to satisfy the complaint and to keep the youth from the future trouble. The investigation period in juvenile cases is very specific. It is important for the Police take a firm position against vicious delinquents, clarify facts

and then make delinquents understand the social consequences of their crimes and the victim's suffering.

Multiple Choice

2. Choose the answer (a, b or c) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. A juvenile delinquent is a person who
 - a) is the age of 20 and commits a crime
 - b) is the age of 18 and does not commit any crime
 - c) is the age of 18 and commits a crime
2. Juvenile delinquency refers to antisocial or illegal behavior by
 - a) adults
 - b) children or adolescents
 - c) old people
3. Most delinquents come from
 - a) ordinary families
 - b) problem families
 - c) large families
4. Many young people see delinquency as their only escape from
 - a) boredom, poverty and other problems
 - b) drugs and alcohol
 - c) freedom and independence
5. The successful prevention of juvenile delinquency requires efforts on the part of
 - a) schools
 - b) police
 - c) the entire society
6. Parents should show
 - a) an interest in their children
 - b) indifference to their children
 - c) carelessness of their children
7. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for handling
 - a) maintaining law and order on the railway, air lines and water ways of the country
 - b) handling the increasing number of juvenile cases
 - c) handling the increasing number of traffic accidents
8. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are minor infractions:
 - a) breaking windows, hanging around the business district, disturbing the peace, and shoplifting
 - b) kidnapping, murder, robbery
 - c) littering, killing bald eagles, tearing down historical houses

Study Skills

3. Learn the vocabulary

abuse <i>n, v</i>	плохое, жестокое обращение; злоупотреблять
adolescent <i>n</i>	подросток
adult <i>n</i>	взрослый, совершеннолетний
availability <i>n</i>	наличие
behavior <i>n</i>	поведение
boredom <i>n</i>	скука
complaint <i>n</i>	жалоба, официальное обвинение
consequence <i>n</i>	последствие, результат
delinquency <i>n</i>	преступление, правонарушение
juvenile delinquency	преступность несовершеннолетних
delinquent <i>n</i>	несовершеннолетний правонарушитель
design <i>v</i>	предназначать
divorce <i>v</i>	разводиться
failure <i>n</i>	неудача, неуспех
handle <i>v</i>	заниматься, управлять, контролировать
hang around (about) <i>v</i>	бродить вокруг, шляться, слоняться
influence <i>n</i>	влияние
infraction <i>n</i>	нарушение
lack <i>n</i>	недостаток, отсутствие
neglect <i>n</i>	пренебрежение, игнорирование
offence <i>n</i>	правонарушение, преступление
parental <i>a</i>	родительский
peer <i>n</i>	сверстник
poverty <i>n</i>	бедность
rate <i>n</i>	уровень, величина
refer <i>v</i>	относиться, иметь отношение
rejection <i>n</i>	неприятие, отвержение
relationship <i>n</i>	отношение
seek <i>v</i>	добиваться, стремиться
suffer <i>v</i>	страдать
supervision <i>n</i>	надзор, контроль
treatment <i>n</i>	зд. перевоспитание
vicious <i>a</i>	порочный
violent <i>a</i>	жестокий

4. Match the English and Russian equivalents.

1	hang around	a	жалоба
2	neglect	b	нарушение
3	adolescent	c	сверстник
4	rejection	d	правонарушение
5	infraction	e	подросток
6	influence	f	жестокий
7	complaint	g	родительский
8	relationship	h	слоняться
9	peer	i	бедность
10	suffer	j	пренебрежение, игнорирование
11	supervision	k	неприятие, отвержение
12	poverty	l	надзор, контроль
13	violent	m	отношение
14	parental	n	страдать
15	offence	o	влияние

5. Match the Russian and English equivalents.

1	городские полицейские отделы	a	physical and monetary damage
2	уровень преступности несовершеннолетних	b	juvenile delinquency
3	успешная профилактика преступности несовершеннолетних	c	urban police departments
4	социальная среда	d	identifiable causes of delinquent acts
5	преступность несовершеннолетних	e	to provide treatment
6	социально полезная деятельность	f	social environment
7	опознаваемые причины преступных поступков	g	the lack of parental supervision
8	отвечать за выявление, обвинение и присмотр за несовершеннолетними правонарушителями	h	juvenile crime rate
9	социальные последствия преступлений	i	peer rejection
10	заниматься жалобами	j	child abuse and child neglect
11	отсутствие родительского контроля	k	the successful prevention of juvenile delinquency
12	обеспечивать перевоспитание	l	be charged with the detection, prosecution, and care of juvenile delinquents
13	материальный и денежный ущерб	m	to handle complaints
14	неприятие сверстниками	n	the social consequences of crimes

- 15 жестокое обращение и пренебрежительное отношение к детям o socially useful activities

6. Match the antonyms.

1	adult	a	wealth
2	availability	b	few
3	failure	c	decreasing
4	poverty	d	lack
5	to neglect	e	to appear
6	increasing	f	to take care of
7	many	g	adolescent
8	to escape	h	success

7. Translate the following words and word combinations.

a) to refer to antisocial or illegal behavior; on the part of the entire society; family structure; to be charged and tried as adults; juvenile offenders; to become involved children's day to day lives; first come into contact; to require efforts; many steps should be taken; to handle complaints involving juveniles; failure in school; peer rejection in childhood; the increased availability of drugs and alcohol; the growing incidence of child abuse and child neglect; the only escape from boredom, poverty and other problems; understand the social consequences of the crimes.

b) Многие шаги должны быть предприняты; в зависимости от вида совершённого преступления; оказывать влияние на уровень детской преступности; специальные подразделения или бюро по делам несовершеннолетних; нарушение спокойствия; чрезвычайно трудные; родители, школа, общественность и полиция; страдания потерпевших; твёрдая позиция: прояснять факты; заставить малолетних преступников понять; путём привлечения к законной, социально полезной деятельности.

8. Find in the text the English equivalents to the following.

1. Успешная профилактика преступности несовершеннолетних требует усилий со стороны всего общества.
2. Предупреждение преступности несовершеннолетних является неотъемлемой частью профилактики преступности в обществе.
3. Семья это один из существенных факторов, который влияет на ребёнка.
4. Многие молодые люди рассматривают преступность как единственное средство сбежать от скуки, бедности и других проблем.
5. Люди до 18 лет могут быть обвинены и осуждены как взрослые, в зависимости от вида совершённого преступления.
6. Офицеры по делам несовершеннолетних отвечают за выявление, выдвижение обвинения и присмотр за несовершеннолетними.
7. Функцией следователя является не столько раскрывать преступления, сколько заниматься жалобами касающиеся несовершеннолетних.

8. Полицейский стремится, как отвечать на жалобы, так и удерживать молодого человека от дальнейших неприятностей.

9. Профилактика лучше и дешевле, чем перевоспитание.

10. Законы предназначены для обеспечения перевоспитания, а не для наказания малолетних правонарушителей.

9. Match the words in bold from the text to their definitions.

- 1 behavior, especially of young people, that is not in accordance with the law
- 2 a group of people of the same age
- 3 unkind, cruel, or rude use; wrong use, misuse
- 4 lack of success
- 5 keeping watch over, control
- 6 little attention or care
- 7 theft from a shop
- 8 the state of being very poor

10. Use the words / phrases' in the box to make sentences with the following:

under the age of 18; excessively difficult; first come into contact; to ensure and end such juvenile delinquency; children or adolescents; abuse the system; to delinquent behavior; the social consequences of their crimes; minor infractions; very specific

1. A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically....
2. Family structure and social environment may lead a child...
3. Relationships within a family may be...
4. Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and monetary damage are ...
5. The Police are the agency with whom delinquent youths ...
6. The investigation period in juvenile cases is ...
7. Juvenile delinquency refers to antisocial or illegal behavior by
8. Many steps should be taken by parents, schools, communities and police force ...
9. Juveniles know that much of the laws are written for adults therefore ...
10. Police make delinquents understand ...

11. Choose the correct item.

1. Juvenile delinquency refers to **antisocial** / **social** or **illegal** / **legal** behavior by children or adolescents.
2. Family is one of the **significant** / **insignificant** factors to influence a child.
3. Most delinquents come from **problem** / **happy** families.
4. Preventive work is **better** / **worse** and **cheaper** / **more expensive** than treatment.

5. Persons under 18 can be charged and tried as **adults / adolescents**, depending on the type of offence committed.

6. The Police are the agency with whom delinquent youths **first / last** come into contact.

7. The function of the investigating officer is not so much to solve crimes as to handle complaints **involving / excluding** juveniles.

8. The laws are designed to provide treatment, rather than punishment for **juvenile / adult** offenders.

9. Parents should show an **interest / indifference** in their children.

10. Many young people see delinquency as their only escape from **boredom / fun, poverty / wealth** and other problems.

12. Match the underlined words in the sentences to their synonyms in the box.

the deficiency; individuals; control; important; crimes; community; reasons; teenagers; young people; run away; violations

1. The lack of parental supervision is an influence on juvenile crime rate.

2. Persons under 18 can be charged and tried as adults, depending on the type of offence committed.

3. Prevention of juvenile delinquency is an essential part of the crime prevention in society.

4. Other identifiable causes of delinquent acts include failure in school, peer rejection in childhood etc.

5. Many young people see delinquency as their only escape from boredom.

6. The Police are the agency with whom delinquent youths first come into contact.

7. Many offences committed by juveniles are minor infractions.

13. Complete the chart.

Noun	Adjective / Participle	Verb
	committed	
		know
prevention		
relationship		
		involve
	increasing	
	rejected	
activity		
		investigate
	detective	
interest		
		complain

14. Read the text. Use the words at the end of the lines to form a word that fits the gap in the line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

If (0) **children** have low parental supervision they may become offenders. When parents do not (1) ... where their children are, or who their friends are, children may (2)... away from home and have (3)... friends. A

(0) **child**
(1) **to know**
(2) **to run**
(3) **delinquency**

of lack supervision is also connected to poor relationship between children and (4).... Peer (5)... in

(4) **parent**
(5) **to reject**

childhood is also a large predictor of juvenile delinquency. Children are (6) ... by peers for many reasons. This rejection often (7) ... to anti-social groups. The factors that may lead a teenager into juvenile delinquency (8)... poor or low socio-economic status, poor school performance and (9) Family factors which may have an (10) ... on offending include: the level of parental (11) ..., the way parents discipline a child, parental conflict or (12) ..., criminal parents, parental ... or neglect.

(6) **reject**
(7) **to lead**
(8) **to include**
(9) **to fail**
(10) **influence**
(11) **supervise**
(12) **to separate**
(13) **to abuse**

15. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

treatment; social environment; punishment; a person; prosecution; efforts; lawful; solve crimes; agency; communities.

1. A juvenile delinquent is ... who is typically under the age of 18.
2. The laws are designed to provide treatment, rather than ... for juvenile offenders.
3. Preventive work is better and cheaper than
4. Many steps should be taken by parents, schools, ... and police force to ensure and end such juvenile delinquency.
5. By engaging in ..., socially useful activities, young persons can develop non-criminal attitudes.
6. The Police are the ... with whom delinquent youths first come into contact.
7. The function of the investigating officer is not so much to as to handle complaints involving juveniles.
8. The successful prevention of juvenile delinquency requires ... on the part of the entire society.
9. Family structure and may lead a child to delinquent behavior.
10. Juvenile officers are charged with the detection, ..., and care of juvenile delinquents.

16. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. Juvenile delinquency **refers / is referred** to antisocial or illegal behavior by children or adolescents.
2. Persons under 18 can **charged / be charged** and **try / tried** as adults.
3. The laws **design / are designed** to provide treatment, rather than punishment for juvenile offenders.
4. The successful prevention of juvenile delinquency **requires / is required** efforts on the part of the entire society.
5. Relationships within a family may be excessively difficult: the parents may **divorce / be divorced**.
6. Many steps should **take / be taken** by parents, schools, communities and police force to ensure and end such juvenile delinquency.
7. Parents should **show / be shown** an interest in their children and become involved their day to day lives.
8. The Police **take / are taken** a firm position against vicious delinquents.
9. Family structure and social environment may **lead / be led** a child to delinquent behavior.
10. By engaging in lawful, socially useful activities, young persons can **develop / be developed** non-criminal attitudes.

17. Make up sentences from the following words. Start with the word in bold.

1. **Family** / to / the / one / is / significant / child / a / influence / of / factors.
2. **Preventive** / is / cheaper / work / better / and / treatment / than.
3. **Most** / from / come / families / delinquents / problem.
4. **Relationships** / may / difficult / excessively / be / within / family / a.
5. **Most** / have / departments / police / bureaus, / or / urban / special / juvenile / units.
6. **Many** / committed / by / offences / are / juveniles / infractions / minor.
7. **The** / laws / treatment / to / designed / are / provide.
8. **The** / is / on / of / an / rate / crime / influence / juvenile / supervision / parental / lack.

18. Fill in: the agency with whom; be better and cheaper; take a firm position; be typically; by engaging in; can be charged and tried; hanging around; the increased availability; offences; be an essential part; handle complaints; be charged with; involve; the growing incidence; should be taken. ***Tere is an extra one you shouldn't use. Make sentences based on the text, using the phrases.***

1 ... under the age of 18	8 ...of drugs and alcohol
2 ... than treatment	9 ... delinquent youths first come into contact
3 ... as adults	10 ... the business district
4 ... by parents	11 ... against vicious delinquents

- 5 ... of the crime prevention in 12 ... physical and monetary damages society
- 6 ... the detection, prosecution, and 13 ... involving juveniles care of juvenile delinquents
- 7 ... of child abuse and child neglect 14 ... committed by juveniles

19. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. Family is one of the significant factors to ...
2. The laws are designed to provide treatment, rather than punishment for ...
3. Family structure and social environment may lead a child to ...
4. Most urban police departments have special units or juvenile bureaus for handling the increasing number ...
5. The successful prevention of juvenile delinquency requires efforts on the part ...
6. The investigation period in juvenile cases is ...
7. Juvenile officers are charged with the detection, prosecution, and care of ...
8. The officer seeks both to satisfy the complaint and to keep the youth from ...
9. Juveniles know that much of the laws are written for adults therefore ...
10. Most delinquents come from ...

20. a) Match the questions on the text to their answers

b) Work in pairs. Ask your partner question from the right-hand column, complete or correct the answer if necessary. Use the phrases: "Yes, you are right"; "I agree with you (but)", "I don't agree with you" etc.

1	What does juvenile delinquency refer to?	a	Relationships within a family may be excessively difficult: the parents may be divorced; they may be violent or drink too much; they may themselves be criminals.
2	Who is a juvenile delinquent?	b	It is very specific because it is important for the Police take a firm position against vicious delinquents, clarify facts and then make delinquents understand the social consequences of their crimes and the victim's suffering.
3	What may lead to delinquent behavior?	c	Parents should show an interest in their children and become involved in their day to day lives.
4	What relationships within a family may be excessively difficult?	d	Juvenile delinquency refers to antisocial or illegal behavior by children or adolescents.
5	What do other identifiable causes of delinquent acts include?	e	Many offences committed by juveniles that involve physical and

6	How can the society carry out prevention of juvenile delinquency?	f	monetary damage are minor infractions: breaking windows, hanging around the business district, disturbing the peace, and shoplifting. Family structure and social environment may lead a child to delinquent behavior.
7	Who should take steps to put an end to delinquency?	g	No, it is not. Here the function of the investigating officer is not so much to solve crimes as to handle complaints involving juveniles.
8	What are the duties of parents in prevention of delinquent behavior of their children?	h	The Police are the agency with whom delinquent youths first come into contact.
9	What is the agency who delinquent youths first come into contact with?	i	A juvenile delinquent is a person who is typically under the age of 18.
10	What are the duties of juvenile officers?	j	By engaging in lawful, socially useful activities, young persons can develop non-criminal attitudes.
11	What offences committed by juveniles are minor infractions?	k	Many steps should be taken by parents, schools, communities and police force to ensure and end such juvenile delinquency.
12	Is the main function of the investigating officer to solve crime in case of minor infractions caused by juveniles?	l	Juvenile officers are charged with the detection, prosecution, and care of juvenile delinquents.
13	Why is the investigation period in juvenile cases very specific?	m	Other identifiable causes of delinquent acts include failure in school, peer rejection in childhood, the increased availability of drugs and alcohol, and the growing incidence of child abuse and child neglect.

21. With a partner, act out the roles below based on Task 30.

Cadet A: You are a correspondent interviewing a juvenile officer. Ask cadet B about his work and duties as a juvenile officer.

Cadet B: You are a juvenile officer. Answer the questions of cadet A, using the information from the text.

22. Make notes under the following headings. Choose any item to speak on. Use your notes to give the summary of the text.

- Juvenile delinquency Family factors

- Other causes of juvenile delinquency
- Prevention of juvenile delinquency
- The police role with juveniles

23. Speak on the causes of juvenile delinquency and the role of the police in solving juvenile problems.

PROGRESS CHECK

1. Choose the correct item.

- Juvenile delinquency refers to antisocial or ... by children or adolescents.
 - legal behavior
 - illegal behavior
 - illegal trade
- Persons under 18 can also be charged and tried as..., depending on the type of offence committed.
 - adults
 - adolescents
 - children
- Most delinquents come from ... families.
 - harmonious
 - problem
 - united
- ... of juvenile delinquency is an essential part of the crime prevention in society.
 - Activity
 - Supervision
 - Prevention
- The investigation period in juvenile cases is very
 - unusual
 - interesting
 - specific

2. Fill in: school; windows; supervision; rate; activities; complaints; rejection; damage; environment; boredom.

- 1 social ...
- 2 parental ...
- 3 failure in ...
- 4 peer ...
- 5 escape from ...
- 6 to break ...
- 7 to handle ...
- 8 socially useful ...
- 9 physical and monetary ...
- 10 juvenile crime ...

3. Choose the correct form of the verb.

1. The laws **are designed / are designing** to provide treatment, rather than punishment for juvenile offenders.
2. The successful prevention of juvenile delinquency **requires / is required** efforts on the part of the entire society.
3. Many steps should **be taking / be taken** by parents, schools, communities and police force.
4. Parents should **be shown / show** an interest in their children.
5. Family structure and social environment may **lead / be led** a child to delinquent behavior.

4. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word / words.

1. Juvenile delinquency refers to antisocial or illegal behavior by children or adolescents.
2. ... is one of the significant factors to influence a child.
3. The ... of parental supervision is an influence on juvenile crime rate.
4. The Police are the ... with whom delinquent youths first come into contact.
5. Juvenile officers ... the detection, prosecution, and care of juvenile delinquents.

5. Choose the correct answer (A, B, or C).

1. How can persons under 18 be charged and tried as?
 - a) adolescents;
 - b) adults;
 - c) juveniles;
2. What should parents show in relation to their children?
 - a) an interest in their children;
 - b) an indifference to their children;
 - c) dissatisfaction with their children;
3. What is the agency with whom delinquent youths first come into contact with?
 - a) the courts
 - b) the corrections
 - c) the police
4. What can lead to juvenile delinquency?
 - a) difficult relationships within a family
 - b) socially useful activities
 - c) punishment of juvenile delinquents
5. What offences committed by juveniles are minor infractions?
 - a) murder
 - b) drug trafficking
 - c) shoplifting

LITERATURE

1. Boyle Ch., Chersan I. English for Law Enforcement. Macmillan Education, 2013.
2. Evans V., Dooley J., Smith D. Career Paths: Law. Express Publishing, 2013.
3. Gaines L.K., Miller R.L. Criminal Justice in Action. The Core. Second edition. Wadsworth, 2000, p. 448.
4. Taylor J., Dooley J. Career Paths English: Police. Express Publishing, 2011.
5. Федеральный закон от 7 февраля 2011 года № 3-ФЗ «О полиции».

NOTES

Учебное издание

LAW ENFORCEMENT IN RUSSIA AND ABROAD

ПРАВОПРИМЕНЕНИЕ В РОССИИ И ЗА РУБЕЖОМ

Учебное пособие

*Под общей редакцией
кандидата педагогических наук, доцента Н.А. Беломытцевой*

Редактор *Мамедова А.Х.*
Компьютерная вёрстка *Фролова А.В.*

Подписано в печать 15.05.2017. Формат 60×84 ¹/₁₆

Печать цифровая. Объем 29,5 п.л. Заказ № 3/17

Тираж 300 экз. 1-й завод 1–100 экз.

Отпечатано в Санкт-Петербургском университете МВД России
198206, Санкт-Петербург, ул. Летчика Пилютова, д. 1